



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

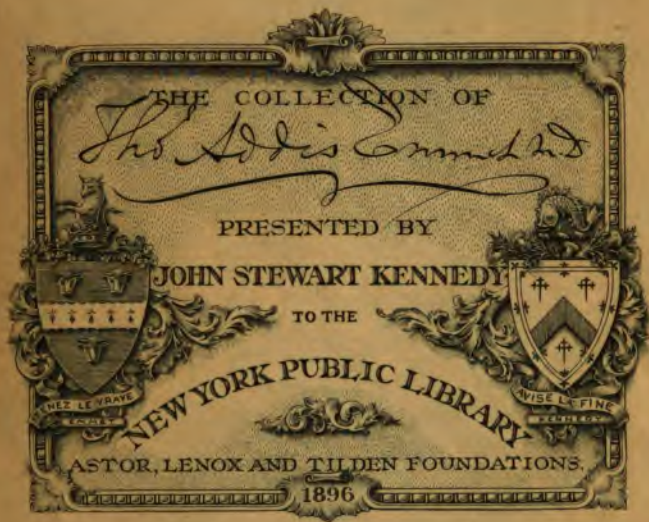
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>









Admission

935-66



**ADAM'S**  
**LATIN GRAMMAR,**  
**WITH SOME IMPROVEMENTS,**  
**AND THE**  
**FOLLOWING ADDITIONS:**  
**RULES FOR THE RIGHT PRONUNCIATION**  
**OF THE**  
**LATIN LANGUAGE;**  
**A**  
**METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE;**  
**A**  
**LIST OF LATIN AUTHORS**  
**ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE;**  
**TABLES,**  
**SHOWING THE VALUE OF THE VARIOUS COINS, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES,**  
**USED AMONG THE ROMANS.**

**BY BENJAMIN A. GOULD,**  
**MASTER OF THE PUBLIC LATIN-SCHOOL OF BOSTON.**

It must be remembered, that if the grammar be the first book put into the learner's hands, it should also be the last to leave them. *Pref. to Byttinger's Greek Gram.*



*This Edition is adopted by the University at Cambridge, Mass. and is recommended to the use of those who are preparing for that Seminary.*

**NEW YORK:**  
**WILLIAM KERR AND CO.**

**1842.**

# DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, TO WIT:

*District Clerk's Office.*

BE it remembered, That on the seventh day of July, A. D. 1825, and in the fiftieth year of the Independence of the United States of America, Cummings, Hilliard, & Co. of the said district, have deposited in this office the title of a book, the right whereof they claim as proprietors, in the words following, to wit:

"Adam's Latin Grammar, with some Improvements, and the following Additions: Rules for the right Pronunciation of the Latin Language; a Metrical Key to the Odes of Horace; a List of Latin Authors arranged according to the different Ages of Roman Literature; Tables, showing the Value of the various Coins, Weights, and Measures, used among the Romans. By Benjamin A. Gould, Master of the Public Latin-School of Boston."

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled, "An Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned;" and also to an Act, entitled, "An Act, supplementary to an Act, entitled, An Act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching, historical and other prints."

JOHN W. DAVIS,  
Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.



STEREOTYPED BY LYMAN THURSTON & CO.  
BOSTON.

## PREFACE.

THE experience of twenty-six years, and the united approbation of the most judicious instructors in our country, give ample testimony to the excellence of Adam's Latin Grammar. And it is worthy of remark, that, amidst the changes of almost every thing connected with education, this work has maintained its popularity throughout the country since the year 1799, when it was recommended by the University at Cambridge. But several typographical errors, which were adopted from that Edinburgh edition, from which the first American edition was copied, have been transmitted through subsequent editions to the present time with such scrupulous exactness, that they have now become canonized, and are received as authority. Besides these, other errors have been creeping in, till a thorough revision of the work has become necessary.

At the time this book was first compiled, the state of education in Scotland may have been such as to render the connexion of the Latin with the English necessary, in the manner they were blended by Dr. Adam; but that necessity does not exist in this country, where English grammar is separately taught from the more complete systems of Lowth and Murray. For this reason, and because what is not used in a manual becomes a hindrance, the portion pertaining exclusively to English grammar has been omitted in this edition; and some few additions and alterations have been made which were deemed important. But in all cases where it was practicable, the words of the original grammar have been preserved.

The following are some of the principal alterations in the present edition. The powers and sounds of the letters are explained—a few concise rules are given for the right

Pronunciation of Latin—the quantity of the penultimate vowel is marked in every word throughout the book, where it is not determined by being placed before another vowel, a double consonant, or two single ones. The rules for pronunciation are founded on the system of Walker; and are agreeable to the usage of the University at Cambridge. They are general, and perhaps may admit of some exceptions. But it is hoped they will do something towards bringing about a greater uniformity of pronunciation; an object greatly to be desired. For the vicious pronunciation, arising from an entire neglect of the subject in some schools, and from the whimsical peculiarities of others, affords no little trouble and vexation to the tutor, when all the varieties of it are brought together in collegiate recitations. Besides, it is all-important that a correct pronunciation should be adopted from the beginning. So strong is the force of habit, that it has been found almost impossible to correct the pronunciation of boys who have been allowed to pronounce incorrectly in the commencement of their studies. This is of much more importance than most persons imagine. All parents are not sensible, when they allow their children to learn their Latin grammar first at home, without attention to this subject, or to commence the study of Latin with persons avowedly unfit to carry them through the course proposed, that they are preparing years of labour for the instructor to whom they are ultimately destined. But it is nevertheless true, that years have been spent in correcting habits of corrupt pronunciation formed in a few months; and sometimes it has been found impossible to correct them altogether.

The article on Gender, which was very incomplete in the original, has been written anew, and remarks on it, which were scattered in different places, have been brought together. The English has been added to the Nouns and Verbs used as paradigms. A greater variety of Nouns of the third declension are declined as paradigms; and several defective, irregular, and compound words have also been declined. The lists of Defective Nouns have been carefully revised and corrected. In declining the Adjectives, all unnecessary repetition has been avoided,

and an example in *ns* added. The table of Numerat Adjectives has been somewhat enlarged by the addition of the higher numerical letters. A few additional observations on the Pronouns have been subjoined. A paradigm has been given, in each of the four conjugations, of a Verb displayed in all its parts, and with the corresponding English annexed to all. An example of a Verb in *io*, of the third conjugation, has been added to the paradigms. In giving the English, a little more precision has been attempted than is observed in the original; particularly in the *imperfect* and *future* of the Indicative. A Synopsis of all the Modes and Tenses is subjoined to each Voice. The Formation of the tenses, it is hoped, will be found more intelligible and practically useful than before. Some slight alterations have been made in the subsequent matter, in order to render more prominent certain portions which were thought confused and indistinct. To the Prosody has been added a Metrical Key, or explanation of the various metres and combinations of metres used by Horace, with an Index (after the plan of Dr. Carey) to all the Odes. The remarks, which stood at the end, upon English Versification, with the Latin rules of Prosody from Ruddiman, have been omitted as useless in that place. Instead of these are substituted a List of Latin Authors, arranged according to the golden, silver, and brazen ages of Roman literature; also Tables exhibiting the value of the Coins, Weights, and Measures, used by the Romans; with some Remarks on the method of computing Sesterces, and on the grammatical solution of expressions relating to them, which are drawn from the best treatises on these difficult subjects, and may assist young students to gain a more exact knowledge of them, than is to be derived from any other book in common use; and, lastly, Lyne's Rules for Construction, and for Position.

The editor hopes that this excellent compendium will be found to have derived some additional value, in a practical point of view, from the changes above-mentioned. The more he has examined the work, and compared it with other Latin Grammars, the higher it has risen in his estimation. There is contained in this little manual almost

every thing that is necessary for the student at school or at college ; while at the same time the volume is so small as to be convenient for use, even where an abridgment would be sufficient. This is an important consideration ; for no abridgment or compend should ever be put into the hands of a scholar, who is afterwards to use the original work. The force of first impressions, and of local associations, renders it almost impossible to use a different Grammar from that first learned, with the same readiness. The page, the situation on the page, the type, and other circumstances connected with it in the memory, all contribute to facilitate the turning to any rule or observation desired. And no small loss of time is occasioned by that confusion which results from having learned two or three Grammars of the same language. Even a *different paging* in different editions of the same Grammar should be carefully avoided, unless there be some good reason for the change.

THE EDITOR.

Boston, June, 1825.

# CONTENTS.

	Page
PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN . . . . .	9
Rules for the Accent and Sound of the Vowels . . . . .	10

## PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY, <i>which treats of Letters</i> . . . . .	11
Diphthongs . . . . .	13
Syllables . . . . .	13

## PART II.

ETYMOLOGY, <i>which treats of Words</i> . . . . .	14
Division of Words, or Parts of Speech	14
I. Noun or Substantive . . . . .	15
Latin Nouns . . . . .	16
Declension of Nouns . . . . .	16
Gender of Nouns . . . . .	17
First Declension . . . . .	20
Second Declension . . . . .	26
Third Declension . . . . .	35
Fourth Declension . . . . .	53
Fifth Declension . . . . .	56
Irregular Nouns . . . . .	56
Division of Nouns, according to their Signification and Derivation . . . . .	64
Adjective . . . . .	66
Numeral Adjectives . . . . .	74
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	78
II. Pronoun . . . . .	80
1. Simple Pronouns . . . . .	80
2. Compound Pronouns . . . . .	83
III. Verb . . . . .	86
Conjugations of Verbs . . . . .	88
First Conjugation . . . . .	93
Second Conjugation . . . . .	98
Third Conjugation . . . . .	103
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	111
Formation of the different Parts of Verbs . . . . .	116
Formation of the Tenses . . . . .	117
Signification of the different Tenses . . . . .	118
Verbs of the First Conjugation	121

	Page
Verbs of the Second Conjugation	125
— Third Conjugation	128
— Fourth Conjugation	138
Deponent and Common Verbs	139
Irregular Verbs . . . . .	143
Defective Verbs . . . . .	149
Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	150
Redundant Verbs . . . . .	151
Obsolete Conjugation . . . . .	153
Derivation and Composition of Verbs . . . . .	153
IV. Participle . . . . .	155
V. Adverb . . . . .	157
VI. Preposition . . . . .	161
VII. Interjection . . . . .	162
VIII. Conjunction . . . . .	163

## PART III.

SYNTAX, or CONSTRUCTION, <i>which treats of Sentences</i> . . . . .	165
Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound . . . . .	165
I. Simple Sentences . . . . .	166
Concord or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences . . . . .	166
Government of Words in Simple Sentences . . . . .	170
I. Government of Substantives	170
II. Government of Adjectives	172
III. Government of Verbs	178
1. Verbs governing One Case	178
2. Verbs governing Two Cases	184
Construction of Passive Verbs	188
— Impersonal Verbs	189
Construction of the Infinitive	191
Construction of Participles, &c.	192
— Gerunds	193
— Supines	195
— Adverbs	195
Government of Adverbs	197
Construction of Prepositions	198
— Interjections	203
— Circumstances	204
1. Price . . . . .	204
2. Manner and Cause . . . . .	204

	Page		Page
3. Place . . . . .	205	Quantity of Syllables . . . . .	254
4. Measure and Distance . . . . .	207	1. Quantity of First and Middle Syllable . . . . .	256
5. Time . . . . .	208	2. Quantity of Final Syllables . . . . .	261
II. Compound Sentences . . . . .	209	Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds . . . . .	265
Sentences are compounded by		Verse . . . . .	267
Relatives and Conjunctions . . . . .	209	The Measuring of Verses by Feet, or Scanning . . . . .	268
Construction of Relatives . . . . .	209	Different Kinds of Verse . . . . .	268
Conjunctions . . . . .	212	The Cæsura . . . . .	269
Comparatives . . . . .	216	Figures in Scanning . . . . .	272
The Ablative Absolute . . . . .	217	Figures of Diction . . . . .	275
		Different Kinds of Poems . . . . .	275
APPENDIX TO SYNTAX:		Combination of Verses in Poems . . . . .	276
Containing		Different Kinds of Verse in Horace, and their Combinations . . . . .	277
I. Various Signification and Construction of Verbs . . . . .	220	Index to the Odes of Horace . . . . .	280
II. Figurative Construction, or Figures of Syntax . . . . .	239		
III. Analysis and Translation . . . . .	240	APPENDIX.	
IV. Different Kinds of Style . . . . .	244	Punctuation, Capitals, &c. . . . .	282
V. Figures of Rhetoric . . . . .	245	Division of the Roman Months . . . . .	284
1. Figures of Words, or Tropes . . . . .	245	Different Ages of Roman Literature . . . . .	286
2. Repetition of Words . . . . .	249	Roman Coins . . . . .	289
3. Figures of Thought . . . . .	250	Computation of Money by Sesterces . . . . .	289
		Roman Measures . . . . .	290
PART IV.		Weights . . . . .	291
PROSODY, which treats of the		Additional Remarks on Roman Money . . . . .	291
Quantity of Syllables, of Accent, and Verse . . . . .	253	General Rules of Construction . . . . .	294
		Position of Words in Latin Composition . . . . .	297

## THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

---

It must be kept in mind, whilst applying the rules which follow, that *Accent* and *Quantity* are wholly distinct from each other, and must not be confounded; and also, that the *quantity* of the vowels in Latin is not supposed to be expressed by the *long* or the *short* sounds we give them in English. For, in that case, we should make short all vowels long by position; as we uniformly give the short sound to the first syllable of such words as the following; *vannus*, *pignus*, *penna*, *longus*, &c. In other words we give the *long* sound to vowels that are short in quantity; as in the first syllable of *fēro*, *tūli*, *dātum*, &c. all of which are short in quantity. Indeed, the sound of a vowel depends very much upon its situation in a word, and the place of the accent, as may be seen in the following words, and many others; *dēcus*, *rēgo*, *ēques*; in each of which we give the *long* sound to the first vowel, though short in quantity, but the *short* sound to the same vowels when the words become trisyllables; as, *dēcōris*, *rēgēre*, *ēquitis*;\* notwithstanding they remain short as before.

For these seeming inconsistencies we can only answer by saying, we know not how the Romans sounded these vowels under like circumstances; and as we probably never shall know, it seems most rational to give vowels in Latin the same sound we should give them in our own language when similarly situated. If we take, then, *the analogy of the English* for our guide, the way is plain, and leads, perhaps, to a result as satisfactory as could be obtained by a more intricate process.

---

\* This illustrates a pretty general rule, with respect to the sound of vowels, viz. that in words of two syllables, the first, being always accented, has the long sound before a single consonant; whereas in trisyllables, when the first is accented, it is generally pronounced with the *short* sound; as, *Cæsar*, *Cæsāris*.

## RULES FOR THE ACCENT.

I. In all words of two syllables, the first is accented, without regard to *quantity*; as, *hómo*, *béllum*, *érat*.

II. In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* be *long* in quantity, it is accented; if *short*, the antepenult is accented; as, *radícis*, *amicus*; *témpōris*, *cónsulis*.

Obs. In prose, when the penult is *common*, the antepenult receives the accent; but in poetry it is placed where the verse requires it.

## RULES FOR THE SOUND OF THE VOWEL.

I. Every vowel has either the *long* or the *short* sound which it has in English, except *a* in the end of a word of more than one syllable; where it is sounded broad, like *ah* in *Ramah*; as, *fama*, *penna*.

The diphthongs *æ* & *æ*, ending a syllable with the accent on it, are pronounced like the long English *e*; as, *Cæsar*, *Æta*, as if written *Ceesar*, *Eta*; and like short *e*, when they are followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as, *Dædālus*, *Ædīpus*, as if written *Deddālus*, *Eddīpus*.

II. In monosyllables, when the vowel is the *final letter*, it has the *long* sound; as, *da*, *me*, *si*, *do*, *tu*; but otherwise the *short* sound; as, *ac*, *sed*, *in*, *ob*, *huc*.

Obs. All terminations in *es*, and plural cases in *es*, both in monosyllables and polysyllables, are in England and in this country usually pronounced *long*; as, *es*, *pes*, *homīnes*; *nos*, *hos*, *popūlos*.

III. If the *penult* be *accented*, its vowel before another vowel, or a single consonant, is *long* in its sound; but before two consonants or the double consonant *x*, it has the *short* sound; as, *māter*, *fīdes*, *pietātis*; which are *long*: *tandem*, *longus*, *mundus*, *respondens*, *buxus*; which have the *short* sound.

IV. If the *antepenult* be accented, its vowel has the *short* sound; as, *átavis*, *édite*, *régibus*, *temporibus*.

Exc. 1. When *u* comes before a single consonant, and when any accented vowel comes before another vowel, it has the *long* sound; as, *júdices*, *consúlibus*; *océānus*, *pariētes*, *mulières*.

Exc. 2. When the vowel of the penult is *e* or *i* before another vowel, the antepenultimate vowel, except *i*, has the *long* sound; as, *dóceo*, *aggrédior*, *palátium*.

V. An accented vowel before a mute and a liquid has usually the *long* sound; as, *sácrā*, *muliebribus*, *patria*.

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF  
LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; words consist of one or more syllables; syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

### LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar, which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five : A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.\*

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; a, e, i, o, u, y. All the rest are consonants.

---

\* In English there is one letter more, viz. W.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel, as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes, Semi-vowels, and Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q, and g*; but *b, d, and g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*; because their sounds may be continued, whereas the sound of *p, t, and k*, cannot be prolonged.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c.* but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c.*

The double consonants are, *x, z*, and, according to some grammarians, *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, or gs*.

*c*, before *a, o, u*, is sounded hard like *k*: before *e, i, y, æ, œ*, soft like *s*.

*g*, before *a, o, u*, is sounded hard, as in the English words *gave, gone*; before *e, i*, and *y*, or another *g* followed by *e*, soft like *j*; as in *gemma, gigno, agger*.

In Latin, *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

*ch* have the power of *k*.

*h*, by some, is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

*ti*, before a vowel, and unaccented, have the sound of *si* or *ci*; as in *ratio, prudentia*.\*

Except in Greek words; as *asphaltion*; and when preceded by *s* or *x*, as, *istius, mixtio*; or in the beginning of words, as, *tiara*; or in infinitives formed by paragon, as *flectier, mittier*.

---

Pronounced *ra-she-o, pru-den-she-a*.

## DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui*, and *huic*, pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *æ*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as, *aetas*, or *ætās*, *oe* or *æ*; as, *poena*, or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately; thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

## SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as, *a*, *ad*, *hanc*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*; as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *āb-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *propier-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c.

Observe, a long syllable is marked with a horizontal line, [—]; as in *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent, [^]; as in *amāris*. A short syllable is marked with a curved line, [˘]; as in *omnibūs*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables and to verse will be treated of hereafter.

## WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds, significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words is called *Etymology* or *Analogy*.\*

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species*, or sort.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ēgo*, I; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdōceo*, I unteach; *ēgōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piētas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words are called *Parts of Speech*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; viz.

1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle*; declined:
2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction*; undeclined.†

---

\* All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives, Attributives, and Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home,*" the words *boy, lesson, school, home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent, reads, carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the, in, and, at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

† Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of wor

## NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.\*

## SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book.* }

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

*Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals: as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar, Rome.*

*Common names* stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*the* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words, which admit of different terminations, were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

\* The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

## LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers*.

There are three genders; *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

The cases are six; *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.\*)

There are two numbers; *Singular and Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions*.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *æ* diphthong; the second has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *ûs*; and the fifth has *ei*, in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

### GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.†

\* Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, or the king; *regis*, of a king, or of the king.

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cado*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *câsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *câsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

† Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thomæ*; *Anchises, Anchisæ*; *Pâris, Pari*; *Panthus, Panthu*; *Pallas, -antis, Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ô Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *ô Socrâtes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *ô Thais, Mysis, Pallas, -adis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duōdecim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a*.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>a king,</i>	Nom.	<i>kings,</i>
Gen. of	<i>a king,</i>	Gen. of	<i>kings,</i>
Dat. to or for	<i>a king,</i>	Dat. to or for	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>a king,</i>	Acc.	<i>kings,</i>
Voc. O	<i>king,</i>	Voc. O	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. with, from, in, by, a king.		Abl. with, from, in, by, kings.	

2. With the definite article, *the*.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>the king,</i>	Nom.	<i>the kings,</i>
Gen. of	<i>the king,</i>	Gen. of	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat. to or for	<i>the king,</i>	Dat. to or for	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>the king,</i>	Acc.	<i>the kings,</i>
Voc. O	<i>king,</i>	Voc. O	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. with, from, in, by, the king.		Abl. with, from, in, by, the kings	

## GENDER.

Things considered according to their kinds are either male, or female, or neither of the two; and on this distinction of the sexes did gender originally depend. Males were said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine gender*; and all other things of *neuter gender*; or, as the word implies, of *neither gender*.

But in Latin, although males are masculine, and females feminine, there are many nouns having no sex, which are said to be of different genders, chiefly from being joined with an adjective of one termination and not of another. Thus *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective of that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*. The gender of these nouns depends on their termination and different declension.

The gender, as depending on the sex, has been called *natural gender*; as termination and declension, *grammatical gender*.

Grammarians distinguish the genders by the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hec*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter

Nouns which are used to signify either the male or the female are said to be of the *common* gender; that is, are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense. Such nouns as are not found uniformly of the same grammatical gender, but sometimes of one gender and sometimes of another, are said to be of the *doubtful* gender.

The *common* gender differs from the *doubtful* in this, that, as the signification of the noun includes the two sexes, it is always put in the masculine when applied to a male, and in the feminine when applied to a female; as, *hic conjux*, a husband; *hæc conjux*, a wife; and is confined to the masculine and feminine gender. Whereas a noun of the *doubtful* gender, being so only by usage, and not in sense, may be either masculine or feminine; as, *hic finis*, or *hæc finis*; feminine or neuter; as, *hæc Præneste*, or *hoc Præneste*; or may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter; as, *penus*, *pecus*, and others.

### General Rules concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, *with reference to the sex*, either masculine or feminine; as, *hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hæc pārens*, a mother.\*

4. Nouns which are sometimes found in one gender and sometimes in another, without reference to the sense, are of the doubtful gender; as, *dies*, a day, either masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, either masculine or neuter.

---

\* The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adolescens,	} a young man or woman.	Cōmes, a companion.	Martyr, a martyr.
Juvenis,		Conjux, a husband or wife.	Miles, a soldier.
Affinis, a relation by marriage.		Conviva, a guest.	Mūnceps, a Burgess.
Antistes, a prelate.		Custos, a keeper.	Nemo, nobody.
Auctor, an author.		Dux, a leader.	Obses, a hostage.
Augur, a soothsayer.		Hæres, an heir.	Patruelis, a cousin german, by the father's side.
Canis, a dog or bitch.		Hostis, an enemy.	
Civis, a citizen.		Infans, an infant.	Præs, a surety.
Cliens, a client.		Interpres, an interpreter.	Princeps, a prince or princess.
		Judex, a judge.	

## OBSERVATIONS.

**OBS. 1.** *The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.*

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus *passer*, a sparrow, either male or female, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *āquīla*, an eagle, either male or female, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *femīna*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *femīna passer*, a female sparrow.

**OBS. 2.** *A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.*

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprilis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Africus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tibēris*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Jētna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sōracte*, a hill in Italy.

---

*Sacerdos*, a priest or priestess.

*Sus*, a swine.

*Vates*, a prophet.

*Testis*, a witness.

*Vindex*, an avenger.\*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leona*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only a masculine adjective; as, *advēna*, a stranger; *agricōla*, a husbandman; *asseccla*, an attendant; *accōla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *opēra*, slaves, or day labourers; *vigilia*, *excubie*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

---

\* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruius*, et *hæres*,  
*Affinis*, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,  
*Augur*, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,  
*Muniqueps*, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,  
*Custos*, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bosque*, *canisque*,  
*Interpresque*, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præ*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, -ādos, and *Odysseā*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Ænēis*, -idos, a poem of Virgil; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, -ōnis; *Pessinus*, -untis; *Hydrus*, -untis, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, -idis, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, -inis, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain: *hoc Cære*, *Reāle*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelidā Præneste*. Juvenal. iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*. Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *oleastri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cyltissus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, -ēris, the cork-tree; *siler*, -ēris, the osier; *rōbur*, -ōris, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -ēris, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *arbustum*, *quercetum*, *esculētum*, *salictum*, *fruticetum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow; also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum* or *mālum*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ebēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender: (the rest are Greek.)

### TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom. }	a.	Nom. }
Voc. }		Voc. }
Gen. }	e.	Gen. <i>arum</i> .
Dat. }		Acc. <i>as</i> .
Acc. <i>am</i> .		Dat. }
Abl. <i>a</i> .		Abl. }

## Penna, a pen, fem.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. penna,	a pen ;	N. pennæ,	pens ;
G. pennæ,	of a pen ;	G. pennārum,	of pens ;
D. pennæ,	to a pen ;	D. pennis,	to pens ;
A. pennam,	a pen ;	A. pennæ,	pens ;
V. penna,	O pen ;	V. pennæ,	O pens ;
A. pennā,	with a pen.	A. pennis,	with pens.

## In like manner decline,

Acerra, a censer	Athlēta, m. a wrestler.	Cāsa, a cottage.
Acta, the shore.	Aula, a hall.	Castānea, a chestnut.
Æra, a period of time.	Aura, a breeze.	Cātāpulta, an engine w cast darts.
Ærumna, toil.	Auriga, m. a charioteer.	Cātēna, a chain.
Agricōla, a husbandman.	Avia, a grandmother.	Cāterva, a body of men.
Ala, a wing.	Axilla, the arm-pit.	Cāthēdra, a chair, a pul pit.
Alāpa, a blow.	Balæna, a whale.	Cauda, the tail.
Alauda, a lark.	Barba, a beard.	Caula, a sheep-cote.
Alga, sea-weed.	Bellua, any large beast.	Causa, a cause.
Alūta, tanned leather.	Besſia, a beast.	Cāverna, a cavern.
Ambrōsia, the food of the gods.	Bēta, beet, an herb.	Cavilla, a banter.
Amīta, an aunt, the fa- ther's sister.	Bibliōpōla, a bookseller.	Cella, a cell.
Amphōra, a cask.	Bibliōthēca, a library.	Cera, wax.
Ampulla, a jug, plural, bombast.	Blatta, a moth.	Cērēmonia, a ceremony.
Amurca, the lees of oil.	Bractea, a thin leaf of gold.	Cervisia, ale, beer.
Ancilla, a handmaid.	Brassica, cauliflower.	Cerussa, white lead paint.
Anchōra, an anchor.	Brūma, winter solstice.	Cetra, a square target.
Anguilla, an eel.	Bucca, the hollow of the cheek.	Charta, paper.
Ansa, a handle.	Bulla, a bubble, a ball, or boss.	Chorda, a string.
Antenna, a sail-yard.	Byrsa, an ox-hide.	Cicāda, a kind of insect.
Antlia, a pump.	Caliga, a kind of shoe set with nails.	Cicōnia, a stork.
Aqua, water.	Caltha, marigold.	Cicūta, hemlock.
Aquīla, an eagle.	Calva, and calvaria, a skull.	Cināra, an artichoke.
Ara, an altar.	Cālumnia, slander.	Cista, a chest.
Arānea, a spider.	Cāmēna, a muse, a song.	Cisterna, a cistern.
Arca, a chest.	Cāmēra, a vault.	Cithāra, a harp.
Ardea, & -eōla, a heron.	Campāna, a bell.	Clava, a club.
Area, an open place.	Canna, a cane or reed.	Clepsydra, an hour glass.
Arēna, sand.	Candēla, a candle.	Cloaca, a sink.
Argilla, potters' earth.	Capra, a she-goat.	Cochlea, a snail.
Arista, an ear of corn.	Capsa, a coffer.	Cœna, a supper.
Arrha, an earnest penny.	Cārīna, the keel of a ship.	Cūlumba, a pigeon.
Arvina, fat.		Cūma, the hair.
Ascia, an axe.		Cūmœdia, a comedy

Concha, <i>a shell.</i>	Flamma, <i>a flame.</i>	Ira, <i>anger.</i>
Cōpia, <i>plenty.</i>	Fœmina, <i>a woman.</i>	Juba, <i>the mane.</i>
Cōpula, <i>a bond.</i>	Forma, <i>a form.</i>	Lacerna, <i>a riding-coat.</i>
Corrīgia, <i>a shoe-latchet.</i>	Formica, <i>an ant.</i>	Lacerta, <i>a lizard.</i>
Cōrōna, <i>a crown, a circ-</i>	Fossa, <i>a ditch.</i>	Lacinia, <i>a fringe.</i>
<i>le.</i>	Fovea, <i>a pit.</i>	Lacrȳma, <i>a tear.</i>
Cortina, <i>a cauldron.</i>	Frāmea, <i>a short spear.</i>	Lactuca, <i>lettuce.</i>
Costa, <i>a rib.</i>	Fūlica, <i>a sea-fowl.</i>	Lacūna, <i>a ditch.</i>
Coxa, <i>the haunch.</i>	Funda, <i>a sling.</i>	Lagēna, <i>a flagon.</i>
Crāpula, <i>a surfeit.</i>	Furca, <i>a fork.</i>	Lama, <i>a ditch.</i>
Crātera, <i>a cup.</i>	Fuscina, <i>a trident.</i>	Lamia, <i>a sorceress.</i>
Craticula, <i>a gridiron.</i>	Gālēa, <i>an helmet.</i>	Lamina, <i>a plate.</i>
Crēna, <i>a notch.</i>	Gallina, <i>a hen.</i>	Lana, <i>wool.</i>
Crēpida, <i>a slipper.</i>	Gangræna, <i>an eating</i>	Lancea, <i>a lance or spear</i>
Crēta, <i>chalk.</i>	Gaza, <i>a treasure.</i>	Lanista, <i>m. a fencing-</i>
Crista, <i>a crest.</i>	Gemma, <i>a gem.</i>	<i>master.</i>
Crūmēna, <i>a purse.</i>	Gēna, <i>the cheek.</i>	Larva, <i>a mask.</i>
Crusta, & -um, <i>a morsel.</i>	Gēnista, <i>broom.</i>	Laterna, <i>a lantern.</i>
Culcita, <i>a cushion.</i>	Gingiva, <i>the gum.</i>	Latrina, <i>a house of office.</i>
Culina, <i>a kitchen.</i>	Glārea, <i>gravel.</i>	Lectica, <i>a sedan or chair.</i>
Culpa, <i>a fault.</i>	Glēba, <i>a clod.</i>	Lēna, <i>a barod.</i>
Cūmēra, <i>a corn-basket.</i>	Gūla, <i>the gullet.</i>	Lepra, <i>the leprosy.</i>
Cūpa, <i>a tun.</i>	Gutta, <i>a drop.</i>	Libra, <i>a pound.</i>
Cūra, <i>care.</i>	Hābēna, <i>a rein.</i>	Ligula, <i>a latchet.</i>
Cūria, <i>a senate-house.</i>	Hāra, <i>a hog-sty.</i>	Lima, <i>a file.</i>
Currūca, <i>a hedge-spar-</i>	Hārūga, <i>a sacrifice.</i>	Linea, <i>a line.</i>
<i>row.</i>	Hasta, <i>a spear.</i>	Lingua, <i>the tongue.</i>
Cymba, <i>a boat.</i>	Hēdēra, <i>ivy.</i>	Lira, <i>a ridge or furrow.</i>
Dēcompēda, <i>a pole of ten</i>	Herba, <i>an herb.</i>	Litēra, <i>a letter.</i>
<i>feet.</i>	Herma, <i>v. -es, m. a stat-</i>	Lōcusta, <i>a locust.</i>
Dietā, <i>diet, food.</i>	<i>ue of Mercury.</i>	Lūcerna, <i>a light.</i>
Dūlābra, <i>an aze.</i>	Hernia, <i>a rupture.</i>	Lūpa, <i>the moon.</i>
Drachma, <i>a drachm, a</i>	Hilla, <i>a sausage.</i>	Luscīnia, <i>a nightingale.</i>
<i>weight, or coin.</i>	Hōra, <i>an hour.</i>	Lympha, <i>water.</i>
Epistōla, <i>a letter.</i>	Hostia, <i>a victim.</i>	Lyra, <i>a lyre.</i>
Esca, <i>a bait.</i>	Hydria, <i>a water-pot.</i>	Machina, <i>a machine.</i>
Fāba, <i>a bean.</i>	Jactūra, <i>loss.</i>	Macra, <i>a kneading-</i>
Fabūla, <i>a fable.</i>	Janua, <i>a gate.</i>	<i>trough.</i>
Fama, <i>rumor.</i>	Idea, <i>a form, an idea.</i>	Macula, <i>a stain.</i>
Farina, <i>meal.</i>	Idiōta, <i>m. an illiterate</i>	Mala, <i>the cheek-bone</i>
Fascia, <i>a bandage.</i>	<i>person.</i>	Mālācia, <i>a calm.</i>
Fāvilla, <i>embers.</i>	Ignōmīnia, <i>an affront.</i>	Malva, <i>a mallow.</i>
Fēnēstra, <i>a window.</i>	Illēcebra, <i>an allure-</i>	Mamma, <i>a pap.</i>
Fēra, <i>a wild beast.</i>	<i>ment.</i>	Mānīca, <i>a sleeve.</i>
Fērula, <i>a rod.</i>	Impensa, <i>expense.</i>	Mantica, <i>a wallet.</i>
Festūca, <i>the shoot of a</i>	Indigēna, <i>m. a native,</i>	Mappa, <i>a napkin.</i>
<i>tree.</i>	Inēdia, <i>hunger.</i>	Margarita, <i>a pearl.</i>
Fibra, <i>a fibre.</i>	Infūla, <i>a mitre.</i>	Marra, <i>a mattock.</i>
Fibula, <i>a clasp.</i>	Injūria, <i>a wrong.</i>	Massa, <i>a lump.</i>
Fidēlia, <i>an earthen ves-</i>	Ioōpia, <i>want.</i>	Materia, <i>matter, stuff,</i>
<i>sel.</i>	Instīta, <i>a fringe.</i>	<i>timber.</i>
Fimbria, <i>a fringe.</i>	Insūla, <i>an island.</i>	Matertēra, <i>the mother's</i>
Fiscina, <i>a bag or basket.</i>	Inūla, <i>elecampane, an</i>	<i>sister.</i>
Fistūca, <i>a rammer.</i>	<i>herb.</i>	Matta, <i>a mat or mattress.</i>
Fistula, <i>a pipe.</i>	Invidia, <i>envy.</i>	Mātula, <i>a chamber-pot.</i>

Médulla, <i>marrow.</i>	Pálinōdia, <i>a recantation.</i>	Pōlitia, <i>a policy.</i>
Membrána, <i>a thin skin, a film, parchment.</i>	Palla, <i>a large goren.</i>	Pompa, <i>a procession.</i>
Mémōria, <i>memory.</i>	Palma, <i>the palm.</i>	Pōpa, m. <i>a priest who slew the sacrifice</i>
Mensa, <i>a table.</i>	Palpebra, <i>the eye-lid.</i>	Pōpina, <i>a tavern.</i>
Mensūra, <i>a measure.</i>	Pápillá, <i>the nipple.</i>	Porta, <i>a gate.</i>
Merda, <i>dung.</i>	Pápūla, <i>a pimple.</i>	Præda, <i>plunder.</i>
Merga, <i>a pitchfork.</i>	Pārābōla, <i>comparing things together.</i>	Prærogátiva, sc. <i>tribus, or centuria, that voted first.</i>
Mérula, <i>a blackbird.</i>	Parma, <i>a shield.</i>	Pröcella, <i>a storm.</i>
Mēta, <i>a goal.</i>	Parra, <i>a jaw.</i>	Prōra, <i>the prow.</i>
Mētāphora, <i>a trope.</i>	Pātéra, <i>a goblet.</i>	Prōsa, <i>prose.</i>
Mica, <i>a crumb.</i>	Pausa, <i>a stop or pause.</i>	Prōsapia, <i>a race.</i>
Mitra, <i>a mitre.</i>	Pédica, <i>a fetter.</i>	Pruina, <i>hoar frost.</i>
Mōla, <i>a mill.</i>	Pēnūla, <i>a mantle.</i>	Prūna, <i>a burning coal</i>
Mōnēdūla, <i>a jackdaw.</i>	Pēnūria, <i>want.</i>	Pualtria, <i>a music girl</i>
Mōnēta, <i>money.</i>	Pēra, <i>a purse.</i>	Puella, <i>a girl.</i>
Mōra, <i>a delay.</i>	Perca, <i>a perch.</i>	Pugna, <i>a battle.</i>
Mulcta, or Multa, <i>a fine.</i>	Perfūga, m. <i>a deserter.</i>	Pulpá, <i>the pulp.</i>
Mūrēna, <i>a lamprey.</i>	Pergāmēna, sc. <i>charta, parchment.</i>	Papūla, <i>the apple of the eye.</i>
Mūria, <i>pickle, brine.</i>	Perna, <i>a gammon of bacon.</i>	Purpūra, <i>purple.</i>
Mūsa, <i>a muse.</i>	Persōna, <i>a mask.</i>	Pustūla, <i>a blister.</i>
Musca, <i>a fly.</i>	Pertica, <i>a pole.</i>	Pyra, <i>a funeral pile.</i>
Mustēla, <i>a weasel.</i>	Petra, <i>a rock.</i>	Quadra, & -um, <i>a square.</i>
Myrrha, <i>myrrh.</i>	Phālarica, <i>a long spear.</i>	Rābūla, m. <i>a wrangler.</i>
Myrica, <i>a tamarisk.</i>	Phāretra, <i>a quiver.</i>	Rāna, <i>a frog.</i>
Mysta, or -es, m. <i>a priest.</i>	Phāsiāna, sc. <i>avis, a pheasant.</i>	Rēpūlsa, <i>a refusal.</i>
Nassa, <i>a net.</i>	Phiaāla, <i>a vial.</i>	Rēsina, <i>resin.</i>
Nausea, <i>sea-sickness.</i>	Philōmēla, <i>a nightingale.</i>	Rhēda, <i>a chariot.</i>
Nauta, m. <i>a mariner.</i>	Phīl ra, <i>the linden tree, a leaf of paper.</i>	Rīma, <i>a chink.</i>
Nitēdūla, <i>a field-mouse.</i>	Phōca, <i>a sea calf.</i>	Ripa, <i>a bank.</i>
Nēnia, <i>a funeral-song.</i>	Pica, <i>a magpie.</i>	Rīxa, <i>a scold.</i>
Norma, <i>a rule.</i>	Pila, <i>a ball.</i>	Rōsa, <i>a rose.</i>
Nōvācūla, <i>a ruzor.</i>	Pila, <i>a pillar.</i>	Rōta, <i>a wheel.</i>
Nōverca, <i>a step-mother.</i>	Pincerna, m. <i>a butler.</i>	Ruga, <i>a wrinkle.</i>
Nympha, <i>a nymph.</i>	Pinna, <i>a fin, a wing.</i>	Ruīna, <i>a downfall.</i>
Occa, <i>an harrow.</i>	Pirāta, m. <i>a pirate.</i>	Runcina, <i>a saw or plane.</i>
Ocrea, <i>a boot.</i>	Piscina, <i>a fish-pond.</i>	Rūta, <i>rue.</i>
Oda, or -e, <i>an ode or song.</i>	Pituita, <i>phlegm.</i>	Sāburra, <i>ballast.</i>
Offa, <i>a morsel.</i>	Plācenta, <i>a cake.</i>	Sāga, <i>a sorceress.</i>
Olea, <i>an olive.</i>	Plāga, <i>a climate.</i>	Sāgina, <i>cramming.</i>
Olla, <i>a pot.</i>	Plāga, <i>a blow.</i>	Sāgitta, <i>an arrow.</i>
Ora, <i>a coast.</i>	Planta, <i>a plant.</i>	Sālebra, <i>a rugged way.</i>
Orbita, <i>a path.</i>	Plātēa, or Platēa, <i>a broad street.</i>	Sāliunca, <i>lavender.</i>
Orca, <i>a jar.</i>	Plūma, <i>a feather.</i>	Sāliua, <i>spittle.</i>
Orchestra, <i>the stage, or the place next it, where the nobles sat.</i>	Plūvia, <i>rain.</i>	Salpa, <i>stock-fish.</i>
Ostrea, <i>an oyster.</i>	Pōdagra, <i>the gout.</i>	Sambūca, <i>an harp, or engine of war.</i>
Pēnūla, <i>a riding-coat.</i>	Pōena, <i>a punishment.</i>	Sanctīmōnia, <i>devotion.</i>
Pāgina, <i>a page.</i>	Pōēta, m. <i>a poet.</i>	Sandāpila, <i>a tier.</i>
Pāla, <i>a shovel.</i>	Pōetria, <i>a poetess.</i>	Sanna, <i>a scoff.</i>
Pālēstra, <i>a wrestling, or place for it.</i>	Pōlenta, <i>malt.</i>	Sarcīna, <i>a burden.</i>
Pālea, <i>chaff.</i>		Sārissa, <i>a long spear.</i>

<b>Sătira</b> , a satire.	<b>Stătëra</b> , a balance.	<b>Trăgödia</b> , a tragedy.
<b>Saträpa</b> , or -es, m. a Persian governor.	<b>Stătua</b> , a statue.	<b>Trăgüla</b> , a javelin with a barbed head.
<b>Scala</b> , a ladder.	<b>Stella</b> , a star.	<b>Trahea</b> , a sledge or dray.
<b>Scandüla</b> , a lath to cover houses.	<b>Stipüla</b> , stubble.	<b>Trama</b> , the woof.
<b>Scäpha</b> , a boat.	<b>Stiria</b> , an icicle.	<b>Trochlea</b> , a pulley.
<b>Scäpula</b> , the shoulder.	<b>Stiva</b> , the plough tail.	<b>Trulla</b> , a trowel.
<b>Scëna</b> , a stage.	<b>Stöla</b> , a gown.	<b>Trütina</b> , a balance.
<b>Schëda</b> , a sheet or scroll.	<b>Strangüria</b> , the making of water with great pain.	<b>Tüba</b> , a trumpet.
<b>Schöla</b> , a school.	<b>Strëna</b> , a new year's gift.	<b>Tünica</b> , a waistcoat.
<b>Scintilla</b> , a spark.	<b>Strüma</b> , a botch.	<b>Turba</b> , a crowd.
<b>Scriblita</b> , a tart or wafer.	<b>Stüpa</b> , a tower.	<b>Turma</b> , a troop.
<b>Scroföla</b> , the king's evil.	<b>Sublica</b> , a pile.	<b>Ulna</b> , an ell.
<b>Scurra</b> , m. a buffoon.	<b>Sübucüla</b> , a shirt.	<b>Uläla</b> , an owl.
<b>Scütica</b> , a scourge.	<b>Sübüla</b> , an awl.	<b>Ulna</b> , sedge.
<b>Scytäla</b> , a kind of serpent, or a round staff.	<b>Succidia</b> , a flich of bacon.	<b>Umbra</b> , a shade.
<b>Sëlibra</b> , half a pound.	<b>Summa</b> , a sum, the whole.	<b>Unda</b> , a wave.
<b>Sëmihöra</b> , half an hour.	<b>Süperbia</b> , pride.	<b>Ungüla</b> , a nail, the hoof.
<b>Sëmila</b> , a path.	<b>Süra</b> , the calf of the leg.	<b>Upüpa</b> , the houppoo.
<b>Sententia</b> , an opinion.	<b>Sutrina</b> , sc. taberna, a shoemaker's shop.	<b>Urina</b> , urine.
<b>Sentina</b> , a sink.	<b>Sütüra</b> , a scum.	<b>Urna</b> , an urn.
<b>Sëra</b> , a lock.	<b>Sycöphanta</b> , m. a sharper.	<b>Urtica</b> , a nettle.
<b>Serra</b> , a saw.	<b>Sylläba</b> , a syllable.	<b>Uva</b> , a grape.
<b>Sesquihöra</b> , an hour and a half.	<b>Symböla</b> , a club, a shore of a reckoning.	<b>Vacca</b> , a cow.
<b>Sëta</b> , a bristle.	<b>Symphönia</b> , harmony.	<b>Vagina</b> , a scabbard.
<b>Sibylla</b> , a prophetess.	<b>Syngräpha</b> , a bill or bond.	<b>Vappa</b> , palled wine, a spendthrift.
<b>Sica</b> , a dagger.	<b>Taberna</b> , a shop.	<b>Vëna</b> , a vein.
<b>Siliqua</b> , a husk.	<b>Täbula</b> , a table.	<b>Vënia</b> , leave.
<b>Silva</b> , a wood.	<b>Tæda</b> , a torch.	<b>Vërna</b> , m. an home-born slave.
<b>Simia</b> , an ape.	<b>Tënia</b> , a ribbon.	<b>Verrüca</b> , a wart.
<b>Simila</b> , flour.	<b>Techna</b> , a trick or wile.	<b>Vësica</b> , the bladder.
<b>Sitüla</b> , a bucket.	<b>Tëgüla</b> , a tile.	<b>Vespa</b> , a wasp.
<b>Sücordia</b> , sloth.	<b>Tëla</b> , a web.	<b>Via</b> , a way.
<b>Sölea</b> , a shoe.	<b>Tërebra</b> , a wimble.	<b>Vicia</b> , a vetch or tare.
<b>Söphista</b> , & -es, m. a sophist.	<b>Tërra</b> , the earth.	<b>Victima</b> , a victim.
<b>Spëcûla</b> , a watch-tower.	<b>Tëssëra</b> , a dye.	<b>Victöria</b> , a conquest.
<b>Spëlunca</b> , a cave.	<b>Testa</b> , an earthen pot.	<b>Villa</b> , a country seat.
<b>Sphæra</b> , a sphere.	<b>Textrina</b> , a weaver's shop.	<b>Vindëmia</b> , vintage.
<b>Spica</b> , an ear of corn.	<b>Thëca</b> , a case.	<b>Vindicta</b> , vengeance: a rod laid on the head of slaves when freed.
<b>Spina</b> , the back bone.	<b>Tibia</b> , a pipe, the leg.	<b>Viöla</b> , a violet.
<b>Spira</b> , a wreath.	<b>Tilia</b> , the linden tree.	<b>Vipëra</b> , a viper.
<b>Sponda</b> , a bedstead.	<b>Tinea</b> , a moth.	<b>Virga</b> , a rod.
<b>Spongia</b> , a sponge.	<b>Tonetrina</b> , a barber's shop.	<b>Vita</b> , life.
<b>Sponsa</b> , a bride.		<b>Vitta</b> , a fillet.
<b>Sporta</b> , a basket.		<b>Viverra</b> , a ferret.
<b>Spüma</b> , foam.		<b>Völa</b> , the palm of the hand.
<b>Squäma</b> , a scale.		<b>Zöna</b> , a girdle, a zone.
<b>Squilla</b> , a prawn, or shrimp.		

## EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cômēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes, *talpa*, a mole; and *dūma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *ai*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulai*: and sometimes likewise in *as*, which form the compounds of *fāmilia* usually retain; as *māter-fāmilia*s, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-fāmilia*s; nom. plur. *matres-fāmilia*s, or *matres-fāmili-ūrum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns, have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us*, of the second declension:

*Anīma*, the soul, the life.      *Fīlia*, & *Nāta*, a daughter.

*Dea*, a goddess.      *Liberta*, a freed woman.

*Equa*, a mare.      *Mūla*, a she-mule.

*Famūla*, a female servant.

Thus *deābus*, *filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

## GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek-Nouns in *as* and *es*, are masculine; nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, *Æneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*, dat. *-æ*, acc. *-am*, or *-an*, voc. *-a*, abl. *â*. So *Bōreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind; *tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Ossa*, acc. *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined:

*Anchises*, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* *Anchīsēs*,

*Acc.* *Anchisen*,

*Gen.* *Anchīsæ*,

*Voc.* *Anchise*, or *-a*.

*Dat.* *Anchīsæ*,

*Abl.* *Anchise*, or *â*.

*Pēnēlope*, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

*Singular.*

*Nom.* *Pēnēlope*,

*Acc.* *Penelōpen*,

*Gen.* *Penelōpes*,

*Voc.* *Penelōpe*;

*Dat.* *Penelōpe*,

*Abl.* *Penelōpe*.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural. unless

when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.\*

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*; *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Persian; *geometra*, for *-tres*, a geometri-  
cian; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *epitōma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *grammatica*, for  
*ce*, grammar; *rhētorica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr*, *ir*, *ur*, *ūs*, *ūm*; *ūs*, *ōn*. (*os* and *on* are Greek terminations.)

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

### TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>er, ir, ur, us, um; os, on.</i>	Nom. }	<i>i</i> or <i>a</i> .
Gen.	<i>i.</i>	Voc. }	
Dat.	} <i>o.</i>	Gen.	<i>orum.</i>
Abl.		Dat.	} <i>is.</i>
Acc.	<i>um</i> , or like the nom.	Abl.	
Voc.	<i>e</i> , or like the nom.	Acc.	<i>os</i> , or <i>a</i> .

Gēner, *a son-in-law*, masc.

### Singular.

Nom.	gēner,		<i>a son-in-law,</i>
Gen.	genēri,	<i>of</i>	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
Dat.	genēro,	<i>to</i>	<i>a son-in-law,</i>
Acc.	genērum,		<i>a son-in-law,</i>
Voc.	genēr,	<i>O</i>	<i>son-in-law,</i>
Abl.	genēro,	<i>with, from, or by</i>	<i>a son-in-law.</i>

### Plural.

Nom.	genēri,		<i>sons-in-law,</i>
Gen.	generōrum,	<i>of</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
Dat.	genēris,	<i>to</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
Acc.	genēros,		<i>sons-in-law,</i>
Voc.	genēri,	<i>O</i>	<i>sons-in-law,</i>
Abl.	genēris,	<i>with, from, or by</i>	<i>sons-in-law.</i>

\* The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*. We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted; as, *Calicōlūm*, for *Calicolārum*; *Enēddūm*, for *-drum*.

After the same manner decline, *söcer*, -*ëri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, -*ëri*, a boy: So *furcifer*, a villain; *Lucifer*, the morning star; *aduller*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour-bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Iber*, -*ëri*; a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celliber*, -*ëri*: Also, *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *lëvir*, a brother-in-law; *semivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *sätur*, -*üri*, full, (of old, *satürus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

*Ager*, a field, masc.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. äger,	a field,	N. agri,	fields,
G. agri,	of a field,	G. agrorum,	of fields,
D. agro,	to a field,	D. agris,	to fields,
A. agrum,	a field,	A. agros,	fields,
V. ager,	O field,	V. agri,	O fields,
A. agro,	with a field,	A. agis,	with fields.

In like manner decline,

<i>Aper</i> , a wild boar.	<i>Cäper</i> , a he-goat.	<i>Fäber</i> , a workman.
<i>Arbiter</i> , & -tra, an arbitrator or judge.	<i>Cöläber</i> , & -bra, a serpent.	<i>Mägister</i> , a master.
<i>Auster</i> , the south wind.	<i>Culter</i> , the coulter of a plough, a knife.	<i>Minister</i> , a servant.
<i>Cancer</i> , a crab fish.		<i>Onäger</i> , a wild ass.
		<i>Scalper</i> , a lancet.

Also, *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Lber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libëri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mënaner*, *Teucer*, *Mëleäger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

*Döminus*, a lord, masc.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. döminus,	a lord,	N. dömini,	lords,
G. domini,	of a lord,	G. dominorum,	of lords,
D. domino,	to a lord,	D. dominis,	to lords,
A. domi un,	a lord,	A. dominos,	lords,
V. domine, —	O lord,	V. domini,	O lords,
A. domino,	with a lord.	A. dominis,	with lords.

## In like manner decline,

Abacus, a table or desk.	Chorus, a choir.	Digitus, a finger.
Acervus, a heap.	Cibus, meat.	Discus, a quoit.
Aculeus, a sting.	Cincinnus, a curl.	Divus, a god.
Agnus, a lamb.	Cinnus, a medley.	Dölus, deceit.
Ainus, f. an alder tree.	Cippus, a grave stone.	Dumus, a bush.
Alveus, the channel of a river.	Circinus, a pair of compasses.	Echinus, an urchin.
Angulus, a corner.	Circus, & circulus, a circle.	Elégus, an elegy.
Animus, the mind.	Cirrus, a tuft or curl.	Ephēbus, a youth.
Annus, a year.	Citrus, f. a citron tree.	Epilógus, a conclusion.
Annulus, a ring.	Clathrus, a grate.	Episcopus, an overseer,
Anus, a circle.	Clavus, a nail.	a bishop.
Architectus, a master-builder.	Clibanus, a portable oven.	Equuleus, an instrument of torture.
Argentarius, a banker.	Clivus, a hill.	Equus, an horse.
Arms, the shoulder of a beast; also of a man.	Clypeus, a round shield.	Erēbus, hell.
Asilus, a gad bee.	Cocceus, or -um, scarlet.	Eurus, the east wind
Asinus, & -a, an ass.	Cölaphus, a box on the ear.	Fagus, f. a beech tree
Autumnus, the autumn.	Condus, a butler.	Famulus, a man-servant.
Avunculus, the mother's brother.	Condylus, the knuckle.	Fävönius, the west wind.
Avus, a grandfather.	Congius, a gallon.	Fävus, an honeycomb.
Bajulus, a porter.	Consobrinus, a cousin-german by the mother's side.	Figulus, a potter.
Barrus, an elephant.	Contus, a long pole.	Fiscus, the exchequer.
Bolus, a morsel.	Conus, a cone.	Floccus, a lock of wool.
Bombus, a buzz.	Cöphinus, a basket.	Flävius, a river.
Cäballus, a pack-horse.	Cöquus, a cock.	Föcus, an hearth.
Cacäbus, a kettle.	Cornus, f. the cornel tree.	Fraxinus, f. an ash tree
Cächinnus, a loud laugh.	Corvus, a raven.	Früttillus, a dice-box.
Cädäceus, a wand.	Cörylus, f. a hazel tree.	Fäcus, a drove loc, paint.
Cäduus, a cask.	Cörymbus, a bunch of tiny berries.	Fämus, smoke.
Cälämus, a reed.	Cöryphæus, a ring-leader.	Fänambulus, a rope-dancer.
Cäläthus, a basket.	Cörytus, or -os, a bow.	Fundus, a farm.
Calceus, a shoe.	Cöthurnus, a buskin.	Fungus, a mushroom.
Callus, & -um, hard flesh.	Cübitus, a cubit.	Furnus, an oven.
Cäminus, a chimney.	Cücullus, a hood.	Fäsus, a spindle.
Campus, a plain.	Cücullus, or cüculus, a curkoo.	Gallus, a cock.
Cantharus, a cup or jug.	Culeus, a leathern bag.	Gerulus, a porter.
Carduus, a thistle.	Culmus, a stalk.	Gibbus, a swelling.
Carpus, the wrist.	Culullus, a pct or jug.	Gladius, a sword.
Carrus, & -um, a cart.	Cümulus, an heap.	Glöbus, a globe.
Caseus, cheese.	Cüneus, a wedge.	Gräbätus, a couch.
Cätälógus, a roll.	Cüniculus, a rabbit.	Gräculus, a jackdaw.
Cätinus, a platter.	Cyäthus, a cup or glass.	Grämus, a hillock.
Caurus, a west wind.	Cygnus, a swan.	Guttus, a cruet or vial.
Cedrus, f. a cedar tree.	Cylindrus, a roller.	Gyrus, a circle.
Cervus, a stag.	Dialógus, a discourse between two or more.	Hædus, a kid.
Cetus, a whale, pl. cete, n. indecl.		Hämus, a hook.
Chirurgus, a surgeon.		Häriölus, a diviner.
		Hërus, a master.
		Hesperus, the evening.
		Hinnuleus, a young hind or fawn.

Flinnūs, a mule.	Nævus, a spot.	Plūteus, a pent-house, a press for books.
Hircus, a goat.	Nārus, a dwarf.	Pōlus, the pole, heaven.
Hortus, a garden.	Nāsus, the nose.	Pontus, the sea.
Humērus, a shoulder.	Nervus, a string.	Pōpūlus, a people.
Hydrus, a water-serpent.	Nidus, a nest.	Pōpūlus, f. a popl'r tree
Internuntius, a go-between.	Nimbus, a cloud.	Porcus, a hog.
Isthmus, a neck of land between two seas.	Nodus, a knot.	Porrus, a leak.
Juncus, a bulrush.	Nōthus, a bastard.	Primipilus, the chief centurion.
Jūvenus, a bullock.	Nōtus, the south wind.	Privignus, a step-son.
Labyrinthus, a maze.	Nucleus, a kernel.	Prōcus, a suitor.
Lacertus, the arm.	Nūmerus, a number.	Prōmus, a buller.
Lanius, a butcher.	Nummus, a piece of money.	Prūnus, f. a plum-tree.
Laqueus, a noose.	Nuntius, a messenger.	Psittacus, a parrot.
Lectus, a couch.	Obolus, a farthing.	Pugnus, the fist.
Legatus, an ambassador.	Oceanus, the ocean.	Pullus, a chicken.
Léguleius, an ignorant lawyer, a pettifogger.	Oculus, the eye.	Pulvinus, a pillow.
Lēthargus, the letargy.	Orcus, hell.	Pūpillus, an orphan.
Limbus, a selvedge.	Ornus, f. a wild ash.	Pupus, a young child, a babe.
Līmus, slime.	Ostracismus, a voting with shells.	Pūteus, a well.
Lītus, a crooked staff.	Pædagōgus, a servant who attended boys.	Quālus & quāillus, a basket.
Lūcus, a sacred grove.	Pāgus, a canton or village.	Racēmus, a cluster of grapes.
Lumbricus, an earth-worm.	Palus, a stake.	Rādus, a ray.
Lumbus, the loin.	Pannus, cloth.	Ramus, a branch.
Lūpus, a wolf.	Pārāsitus, a flatterer.	Rēmus, an oar.
Lychnus, a lamp.	Pardus, a panther.	Rhombus, a turbot.
Māgus, a magician.	Pārōchus, an entertainer.	Rhuncus, a snorting.
Malleus, a mallet.	Patruus, the father's brother.	Rhythmus, metre, rhyme.
Mālus, the mast of a ship.	Patrōnus, a patron.	Riscus, a trunk.
Mālus, f. an apple tree.	Pēdicūlus, a louse.	Rivus, a rivulet.
Mannus, a little horse.	Pessūlus, a bolt.	Rōgus, a funeral pile.
Māthēmāticus, a mathematician. [drudge.	Pētāsus, a broad brimmed hat.	Saccus, a sack.
Mēdiastinus, a slave, a	Phārus, or -os, a watch-tower.	Sarcōphāgus, a stone in which dead bodies were inclosed.
Mēdicus, a physician.	Philōsōphus, a lover of wisdom.	Satyrus, a satyr, a kind of demi-god.
Mendicus, a beggar.	Phœbus, (poet.) the sun.	Scalmus, a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hung. [or shank.
Mergus, a cormorant.	Phyſicus, an inquirer into nature.	Scāpus, a stalk, a shaft
Milvus, a kite.	Picus, a wood-pecker.	Scārus, the scar, a fish.
Mimus, a mimic.	Pileus, a hat.	Scirpus, a rush.
Mōdius, a bushel.	Pilus, a hair.	Sciūrus, a squirrel.
Mōdus, a manner	Pīrus, f. a pear tree.	Scōpūlus, a rock.
Mæchus, an adulterer.	Plāgiarius, a plagiarist, a man stealer; or one who steals from others' books.	Scōpus, a mark.
Mōrus, f. a mulberry tree.	Plānus, a vagrant, a beggar.	Scrūpūlus, a doubt, or scruple.
Mācus, the filth of the nose, snot.		Scrūpus, a little stone
Mullus, a mullet fish.		Seyphus, a bowl.
Mulus, & -a, a mule.		
Mārus, a wall.		
Muscus, moss.		
Myrtus, f. a myrtle-tree.		

<b>Servus</b> , a slave.	<b>Talus</b> , the ankle, a die.	<b>Truncus</b> , the trunk.
<b>Sestertius</b> , two pounds and a half; a sesterce, a Roman coin.	<b>Taurus</b> , a bull.	<b>Tûbus</b> , a tube or pipe.
<b>Sicarius</b> , an assassin.	<b>Taxus</b> , f. the yew tree.	<b>Tûmulus</b> , a hillock.
<b>Simius</b> , & -a, an ape.	<b>Terminus</b> , a bound.	<b>Turdus</b> , a thrush.
<b>Sirius</b> , the dog-star.	<b>Thâlâmus</b> , a marriage bed-chamber.	<b>Typus</b> , a figure or type.
<b>Soccus</b> , a kind of shoe.	<b>Thêolôgus</b> , a divine.	<b>Tyrannus</b> , a tyrant.
<b>Somnus</b> , sleep.	<b>Thêsaurus</b> , a treasure.	<b>Ulmus</b> , f. an elm tree.
<b>Sônus</b> , a sound.	<b>Thôlus</b> , the roof of a temple.	<b>Umbilicus</b> , the navel.
<b>Spârus</b> , a spear.	<b>Thrônus</b> , a royal seat.	<b>Uncus</b> , a hook.
<b>Sponsus</b> , a bridegroom.	<b>Thyâsus</b> , a chorus in honour of Bacchus.	<b>Urceus</b> , a pitcher.
<b>Stîmulus</b> , a sting, a spur.	<b>Thyrus</b> , a spear wrapt with ivy.	<b>Ursus</b> , a bear.
<b>Stônâchus</b> , the stomach.	<b>Titâlus</b> , a title.	<b>Urus</b> , a buffalo.
<b>Strâpus</b> , a thong, a strap.	<b>Tômus</b> , a volume.	<b>Uterus</b> , the womb.
<b>Stylus</b> , a style, or iron pen to write with on wazen tables.	<b>Tônus</b> , a note in music.	<b>Vallus</b> , a stake.
<b>Sûbulcus</b> , a swineherd.	<b>Tôphus</b> , a gravel stone.	<b>Vênêficus</b> , a sorcerer.
<b>Succus</b> , juice.	<b>Tornus</b> , a turner's wheel.	<b>Ventus</b> , the wind.
<b>Sulcus</b> , a furrow.	<b>Tôrus</b> , a couch.	<b>Vicus</b> , a village, a street.
<b>Surculus</b> , a young twig.	<b>Tribûlus</b> , a thistle.	<b>Villicus</b> , & -a, an overseer of a farm.
<b>Sûsurrus</b> , a whisper.	<b>Triumphus</b> , a triumph.	<b>Villus</b> , shaggy hair.
	<b>Trochus</b> , a top.	<b>Vitellus</b> , the yolk of an egg.

## Regnum, a kingdom, neut.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. regnum,	a kingdom,	N. regna,	kingdoms,
G. regni,	of a kingdom,	G. regnôrum,	of kingdoms,
D. regno,	to a kingdom,	D. regnis,	to kingdoms,
A. regnum,	a kingdom,	A. regna,	kingdoms,
V. regnum,	O kingdom,	V. regna,	O kingdoms,
A. regno,	with a kingdom.	A. regnis,	with kingdoms.

## In like manner decline,

<b>Acêtum</b> , vinegar.	<b>Argentum</b> , silver.	<b>Biennium</b> , two years.
<b>Acônîtum</b> , wolf's bane, a poisonous plant.	<b>Armentum</b> , a herd.	<b>Brâchium</b> , an arm.
<b>Adâgium</b> , a proverb.	<b>Arvum</b> , & -us, a field.	<b>Bûtyrum</b> , butter.
<b>Admînicûlum</b> , a prop.	<b>Astrum</b> , a star.	<b>Cælum</b> , a graving tool.
<b>Adytum</b> , the most secret part of a temple.	<b>Asylum</b> , a sanctuary.	<b>Cémentum</b> , materials for building.
<b>Album</b> , a register.	<b>Atrium</b> , a court or hall.	<b>Cânistrum</b> , a basket.
<b>Allium</b> , garlick.	<b>Aulæum</b> , tapestry.	<b>Câpistrum</b> , a halter or muzzle.
<b>Armentum</b> , a thong.	<b>Aurum</b> , gold.	<b>Castrum</b> , a castle.
<b>Amâletum</b> , a charm.	<b>Auxilium</b> , assistance.	<b>Centrum</b> , the centre.
<b>Anêthum</b> , anise.	<b>Aviârium</b> , a cage.	<b>Cêrebrum</b> , the brain.
<b>Anticum</b> , a fore-door.	<b>Balsânum</b> , baln.	<b>Chîrogrâphum</b> , a hand writing.
<b>Antrum</b> , a cave.	<b>Bârâthrum</b> , an abyss.	<b>Cilium</b> , the eyelashes.
<b>Apium</b> , pursley.	<b>Basium</b> , a kiss.	
	<b>Bellum</b> , war.	
	<b>Biduum</b> , two days.	

Citrum, <i>citron-wood.</i>	Everriculum, <i>a drag-</i>	Justitium, <i>a vacation.</i>
Classicum, <i>a trumpet.</i>	net.	Labium, <i>the lip.</i>
Cælum, <i>pl. -i, heaven.</i>	Exemplum, <i>an example.</i>	Lardum, <i>lard.</i>
Cænum, <i>mire, dirt.</i>	Exitium, <i>destruction.</i>	Lasānum, <i>a cramber</i>
Conloquium, <i>a confer-</i>	Exordium, <i>a beginning.</i>	pot.
ence.	Fanum, <i>a temple.</i>	Libum, <i>a sweet cake.</i>
Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Fascinum, <i>witchcraft.</i>	Licium, <i>the roof.</i>
Commōdum, <i>advantage.</i>	Fastigium, <i>the top.</i>	Lignum, <i>wood.</i>
Confinium, <i>a bound or</i>	Ferculum, <i>a dish of</i>	Lilium, <i>a lily.</i>
limit.	meat.	Linteum, <i>a sheet.</i>
Congiārium, <i>a largess.</i>	Ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	Linum, <i>lin.</i>
Conviciū, <i>a reproach.</i>	Filum, <i>a thread.</i>	Lorum, <i>a tumg.</i>
Corium, <i>a hide.</i>	Flabellum, <i>a fan.</i>	Lucrum, <i>gain.</i>
Costum, <i>spikenard.</i>	Flagrum & Flāgellum, <i>a whip.</i>	Ludibrium, <i>a laughing-</i>
Crēmum, <i>a dry stick.</i>		stock.
Crēpusculum, <i>the twi-</i>	Flammeum, <i>a veil.</i>	Lustrum, <i>hey.</i>
light.	Fœnum, <i>hay.</i>	Luteum, <i>a yolk, wood,</i>
Cribrum, <i>a sieve.</i>	Folium, <i>a leaf.</i>	the yolk of an egg.
Cubiculum, <i>a bed-cham-</i>	Fōrum, <i>a market-place.</i>	Lutum, <i>clay.</i>
ber.	Frāgum, <i>a strawberry.</i>	Macellum, <i>the shambles.</i>
Cumīnum, <i>cumin, an</i>	Frētum, <i>a narrow sea.</i>	Manubrium, <i>a hilt or</i>
herb.	Frumentum, <i>corn.</i>	handle.
Cymbalum, <i>a cymbal.</i>	Frustum, <i>a bit or piece.</i>	Matrimonium, <i>marriage.</i>
Damnum, <i>loss.</i>	Fulcrum, <i>a prop.</i>	Mausolæum, <i>any sum-</i>
Delubrum, <i>a temple.</i>	Furtum, <i>theft.</i>	ptuous monument.
Dēmensum, <i>an allow-</i>	Granārium, <i>a granary.</i>	Membrum, <i>a member.</i>
ance of meat.	Granum, <i>a grain.</i>	Mendacium, <i>a lie.</i>
Detrimentum, <i>damage.</i>	Graphium, <i>a pencil.</i>	Mentum, <i>the chin.</i>
Diārium, <i>a day's wages.</i>	Grēnium, <i>the bosom.</i>	Mētallum, <i>metal, a mine.</i>
Dilaculum, <i>the dawning</i>	Gymnāsium, <i>a place of</i>	Milium, <i>millet, a kind</i>
of day.	exercise.	of grain.
Dium, (poet.) <i>the open</i>	Gynæcēum, <i>the women's</i>	Minium, <i>vermillion.</i>
air.	apartment.	Mōmentum, <i>weight, im-</i>
Dolium, <i>a cask.</i>	Gypsum, <i>plaster.</i>	portance.
Domicilium, <i>an abode.</i>	Haustrum, <i>a bucket.</i>	Monopolium, <i>the sole</i>
Dōnum, <i>a gift.</i>	Hellēbōrum, & -us, <i>hel-</i>	right of selling any
Dorsum, <i>the back.</i>	lebre, <i>a plant.</i>	thing.
Effūgium, <i>an escape.</i>	Hōrōlōgium, <i>any thing</i>	Monstrum, <i>a monster,</i>
Electrum, <i>amber.</i>	that tells the hours.	any thing against the
Elémentum, <i>an element,</i>	Idolum, <i>an image.</i> [em.]	common course of na-
a letter.	Idyllium, <i>a pastoral po-</i>	ture.
Elōgium, <i>a brief saying,</i>	Imperium, <i>command.</i>	Mortarium, <i>a mortar.</i>
a testimonial in one's	Inceptum, <i>an enterprise.</i>	Musæum, <i>a study or li-</i>
praise.	Indiciū, <i>a discovery.</i>	brary.
Emolumentum, <i>profit.</i>	Indusium, <i>a shirt.</i>	Mustum, <i>new wine.</i>
Emplastrum, <i>a plaster.</i>	Ingēnium, <i>wit, genius.</i>	Mysterium, <i>a mystery, a</i>
Empōrium, <i>a mart or</i>	Initium, <i>a beginning.</i>	thing not easily com-
market-town.	Intervallum, <i>distance be-</i>	prehended.
Ephippium, <i>a saddle.</i>	tween.	Nasturtium, <i>cresses.</i>
Epitaphium, <i>an inscrip-</i>	Judiciū, <i>judgment.</i>	Naulum, <i>freight.</i>
tion on a tomb.	Jūgulum, <i>the throat.</i>	Naufraġium, <i>shipwreck.</i>
Ergastulum, <i>a work-</i>	Jūgum, <i>a yoke, the</i>	Nēgōtium, <i>a thing, busi-</i>
house.	ridge of a hill.	ness.
Ervum, <i>vetches.</i>	Jurgium, <i>a quarrel.</i>	Nitrum, <i>nitre.</i>
Essēdum, <i>a chariot.</i>	Jussum, <i>an order.</i>	Obsēquium, <i>compliances</i>

Odiū, <i>hatred.</i>	Prejudiciū, <i>a fore-judging.</i>	Sālinū, <i>a salt-cellar.</i>
Omasū, <i>the paunch.</i>	Preliū, <i>a bottle.</i>	Salsamentū, <i>salt meat.</i>
Omentū, <i>the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.</i>	Præmiū, <i>a reward.</i>	Sālū, <i>the sea.</i>
Oppidū, <i>a town.</i>	Præsidīū, <i>a defence, a garrison.</i>	Sandalīū, <i>a slipper.</i>
Opprobriū, <i>a reproach.</i>	Prandīū, <i>a dinner.</i>	Sarcūlū, <i>a weeding-hook, a spade.</i>
Opsōniū, <i>fish or any thing eaten with bread.</i>	Prātū, <i>a meadow.</i>	Sarmentū, <i>a twig.</i>
Orgānū, <i>any instrument.</i>	Prēlū, <i>a press.</i>	Sātisdatū, <i>a bond of security.</i>
Osculū, <i>a kiss; pl. the lips.</i>	Prētiū, <i>a price.</i>	Saxū, <i>a large stone.</i>
Ostium, <i>the door.</i>	Primordiū, <i>a beginning.</i>	Scalprū, <i>dim. Scapellū, a knife.</i>
Ostrū, <i>purple.</i>	Privilegiū, <i>a private law or special right.</i>	Scamniū, <i>dim. Scabellū, a bench or form.</i>
Otiū, <i>repose.</i>	Probruū, <i>a disgrace.</i>	Sceptra, <i>a sceptre, a mace.</i>
Ovū, <i>an egg.</i>	Prōdigiū, <i>a prodigy, any thing preternatural.</i>	Scitū, <i>a decree.</i>
Pabulū, <i>fodder.</i>	Prōmissū, <i>a promise.</i>	Scortū, <i>a harlot.</i>
Pactū, <i>an agreement.</i>	Prōpositū, <i>purpose.</i>	Seriniū, <i>a coffer.</i>
Pālātium, <i>a pulace.</i>	Prōpugnaculū, <i>a bulwark.</i>	Scriptū, <i>a writing.</i>
Pālātū, <i>the palate.</i>	Prōverbium, <i>an old saying.</i>	Scrāpūlū, <i>a scruple, a certain weight.</i>
Paludamentū, <i>a general's robe.</i>	Pulpitū, <i>a pulpit.</i>	Scūtū, <i>a shield.</i>
Panāriū, <i>a bread-basket.</i>	Ramentū, <i>a chip or shaving.</i>	Sēcūlū, <i>an age.</i>
Pātibulū, <i>a gibbet.</i>	Rastrū, <i>pl. -i &amp; -a, a rake.</i>	Sēmināriū, <i>a nursery.</i>
Pensū, <i>a task.</i>	Rēfūgiū, <i>a shelter.</i>	Sēnaculū, <i>a senate-house.</i>
Peplū, <i>a woman's robe.</i>	Rēmēdiū, <i>a cure.</i>	Sēnatūs consultū, <i>a decree of the senate.</i>
Perjūriū, <i>perjury, taking a false oath.</i>	Rēmūlū, <i>a tow-berge.</i>	Sēricū, <i>silk.</i>
Perpendiculū, <i>a straight line upwards or downwards.</i>	Rēpagulū, <i>a bar.</i>	Servitiū, <i>slavery.</i>
Pētoritū, <i>a waggon.</i>	Rēpudiū, <i>a divorce.</i>	Serpyllū, <i>wild thyme.</i>
Pīlentū, <i>a chariot.</i>	Responsum, <i>an answer.</i>	Sertū, <i>a garland.</i>
Pilū, <i>a javelin.</i>	Rētinaculū, <i>a cable.</i>	Sērū, <i>whey.</i>
Pistillū, <i>the pestle of a mortar.</i>	Rostrū, <i>the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.</i>	Sestertiū, <i>a thousand sesterii.</i>
Pisū, <i>pease.</i>	Rādimentū, <i>pl. -a, the first principles of any art.</i>	Sevū, <i>tallow.</i>
Plaustrū, <i>a waggon.</i>	Rutrum, <i>a pick-axe.</i>	Signū, <i>a sign, a standard.</i>
Plectrū, <i>a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.</i>	Sabbātū, <i>the sabbath.</i>	Sigillū, <i>a seal.</i>
Plumbū, <i>lead.</i>	Sābulū, <i>gravel.</i>	Silicerniū, <i>a funeral supper, an old man.</i>
Pōmāriū, <i>an orchard.</i>	Sacchārum, <i>sugar.</i>	Sinū, <i>a milk-pail.</i>
Pōmēriū, <i>a void space on each side of a town wall.</i>	Sācellū, <i>a chapel.</i>	Sistrū, <i>a timbrel.</i>
Pōmū, <i>an apple.</i>	Sācerdotiū, <i>the priest-hood.</i>	Sōdalitū, <i>a company a corporation.</i>
Posticū, <i>a back door.</i>	Sacrāmentū, <i>a military sacrifice.</i>	Sōlāriū, <i>a sun-dial.</i>
Postliminiū, <i>a return to one's own country.</i>	Sacrificiū, <i>a sacrifice.</i>	Sōlatiū, <i>comfort.</i>
Prædiū, <i>a farm.</i>	Sacrilegiū, <i>stealing sacred things.</i>	Sōliū, <i>a throne.</i>
	Sāgū, <i>soldier's cloak.</i>	Sōlū, <i>the ground.</i>
	Sālāriū, <i>a salary.</i>	Somniū, <i>a dream.</i>
		Spātiū, <i>a space.</i>
		Spectaculū, <i>a show apparition.</i>
		Spectrū, <i>a phantom or apparition.</i>

<b>Spēculum</b> , a looking-glass.	<b>Summārium</b> , an abridgment.	<b>Triennium</b> , three years.
<b>Spēlæum</b> , a den.	<b>Supercilium</b> , the brow.	<b>Tripudium</b> , a dancing.
<b>Spicilēgium</b> , a gleaning.	<b>Supercilium</b> , the pride.	<b>Trivium</b> , a place where three ways meet.
<b>Spiculum</b> , a dart.	<b>Suspīrium</b> , a sigh.	<b>Tropæum</b> , a trophy, a token of victory.
<b>Spiraculum</b> , a breathing hole.	<b>Symbolum</b> , a sign or token.	<b>Tugurium</b> , a cottage.
<b>Spolium</b> , spoil.	<b>Sympōsium</b> , & -on, a banquet.	<b>Tympanum</b> , a drum.
<b>Spūtum</b> , spittle.	<b>Tabernaculum</b> , a tent.	<b>Vaccinium</b> , a berry.
<b>Stābulum</b> , a stable.	<b>Tabulatum</b> , a story.	<b>Vādīmōnium</b> , bail; a promise to appear in court.
<b>Stadium</b> , a furlong.	<b>Tabum</b> , black gore.	<b>Vādun</b> , a ford, the sea.
<b>Stagnum</b> , a pond.	<b>Tadium</b> , weariness.	<b>Vallum</b> , a rampart.
<b>Stannum</b> , tin.	<b>Talentum</b> , a talent.	<b>Velum</b> , a veil, a sail.
<b>Sterquilinium</b> , a dung-hill.	<b>Tectum</b> , the roof, a house.	<b>Venabulum</b> , a hunting-pole.
<b>Stipendium</b> , pay.	<b>Telum</b> , a weapon.	<b>Vēnenum</b> , poison.
<b>Strāgulum</b> , a blanket.	<b>Templum</b> , a church.	<b>Ventilabrum</b> , a fan.
<b>Strāum</b> , a couch.	<b>Tergum</b> , the back.	<b>Verbum</b> , a word.
<b>Strigmentum</b> , a scraping.	<b>Testimōnium</b> , an evidence.	<b>Vestibulum</b> , a porch.
<b>Stūdium</b> , desire, study.	<b>Theatrum</b> , a theatre.	<b>Vestigium</b> , the print of the foot.
<b>Stuprum</b> , debauchery.	<b>Thūribulum</b> , a censer, a vessel to burn incense in.	<b>Vexillum</b> , a banner.
<b>Suāvium</b> , a kiss.	<b>Tintianabulum</b> , a little bell.	<b>Viaticum</b> , money, or provisions for a journey.
<b>Subsellium</b> , a bench.	<b>Tirōcinium</b> , an apprenticeship.	<b>Vinculum</b> , a chain.
<b>Subsidium</b> , help.	<b>Tormentum</b> , an engine, a torment.	<b>Vinum</b> , wine.
<b>Sūrbānum</b> , a house near the town.	<b>Toxicum</b> , poison.	<b>Vitium</b> , vice, a fault.
<b>Sūrbium</b> , the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls.	<b>Tributum</b> , tax, or custom.	<b>Vitrum</b> , glass.
<b>Sūdarium</b> , a handkerchief.	<b>Triclinium</b> , a dining-room.	<b>Vivarium</b> , a place to keep beasts in, a warren or fish-pond.
<b>Suffragium</b> , a vote.	<b>Triduum</b> , three days.	<b>Vocabulum</b> , a name or word.
<b>Suggestum</b> , & -us, ūs, a place raised above others.		<b>Votum</b> , a vow.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine; *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*;

<b>Abyssus</b> , a bottomless pit.	<b>Carbāsus</b> , a sail.	<b>Erēmus</b> , a desert.
<b>Antidōtus</b> , a preservative against poison.	<b>Dialectus</b> , a dialect or manner of speech.	<b>Mēthōdus</b> , a method.
<b>Arctos</b> , the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.	<b>Diāmetros</b> , the diameter of a circle.	<b>Pēriōdus</b> , a period.
	<b>Diphthongus</b> , a diphthong.	<b>Pērimetros</b> , the circumference.
		<b>Phārus</b> , a watch-tower.
		<b>Sŷnōdus</b> , an assembly.

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine, (See *Observations on Gender*, page 20.); as,

Améthystus, an amethyst.	Sapphirus, a sapphire.	Byssus, fine flax or linen.
Chrysolithus, a chrysolite.	Topazius, a topaz.	Costus, costmary.
Chrysóphrassus, a land of topaz.	Biblus, Pápyrus,	{ an Egyptian reed, of which paper was made.
Chrystallus, crystal.		
Leucóchrysus, a jacinth.		Crócus, saffron.
		Hyssopus, hyssop.
		Nardus, spikenard.

Other names of jewels are generally masculine ; as, *beryllus*, the beryl ; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle ; *pyropus*, a ruby ; *smaragdus*, an emerald ; And also names of plants ; as, *asparágus*, asparagus or sparrowgrass ; *ellebórus*, ellebore ; *raphánus*, radish or colewort ; *intýbus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine :

Atómus, an atom.	Barbítus, a harp.	Græsus, a green fig.
Balánuş, the fruit of the palm tree, ointment.	Cámelus, a camel.	Pénus, a store-house.
	Cólus, a distaff.	Pháselus, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison ; *péláguş*, the sea ; are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative ; as, *Hörátius*, *Höráti* ; *Virgílius*, *Virgíli* ; *Georgíus*, *Georgi*, names of men : *Lárius*, *Lári* ; *Míncius*, *Mínci* ; names of lakes. *Fílius*, a son, also has *fíli* ; *gënius*, one's guardian angel, *geni* ; and *deus*, a god, has *deus* in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dëi* and *dëis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e* ; as, *tábellárius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier, *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Délius*, *Délie* ; *Tírynthius*, *Tírynthie*, and these possessives, *Laértius*, *Laértie* ; *Sáturñius*, *Saturnie* ; &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative ; as, *fluvíus*, *Latínuş*, for *fluvie*, *Latíne*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely ; thus, *Audi tu*, *pópúluş*, for *pópúle*. Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us* ; as *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evander*, or *Écandre*. So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. ; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puère*, from *puérus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets for the sake of quantity ; as, *tugúri*, for *tuguri* ; *ingéní*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deim*, *libérum*, *fabrárum*, *duímvírúm*, &c., for *deórum*, *liberórum*, &c. ; and in poetry, *Teucrám*, *Graíum*, *Argivúm*, *Dánaúm*, *Pélasgúm*, &c. for *Teucrórum*, &c.

#### GREEK NOUNS.

Os and on are Greek terminations ; as, *Alphëos*, a river in Greece ; *Ilion*, the city Troy ; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins ; *Alphëus*, *Ilíum*, which are declined like *domínus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *eus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphei* or *Orphi*. So *Thestus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atao*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-ōnis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodōri*. Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus*, or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, genitive plural *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A, i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

#### TERMINATIONS.

##### Singular.

Nom. *a, e, i, &c.*  
Gen. *is.*  
Dat. *i.*  
Acc. *em*, or like the nom.  
Voc. like the nom.  
Abl. *e, or i.*

##### Plural.

Nom. }  
Acc. } *es, a, or ia.*  
Voc. }  
Gen. } *um, or ium.*  
Dat. }  
Abl. } *ibus.*

#### Sermo, a speech, masc.

##### Singular.

N. sermo, a speech,  
G. sermōnis, of a speech,  
D. sermōni, to a speech,  
A. sermōnem, a speech,  
V. sermo, O speech,  
A. sermōne, with a speech.

##### Plural.

N. sermōnes, speeches,  
G. sermōnum, of speeches,  
D. sermonibus, to speeches,  
A. sermōnes, speeches,  
V. sermōnes, O speeches,  
A. sermonibus, with speeches

**Rūpes, a rock, fem.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
N. rūpes,		a rock,	N. rūpes,		rocks,
G. rupis,	of	a rock,	G. rupium,	of	rocks,
D. rupi,	to	a rock,	D. rupibus,	to	rocks,
A. rupem,		a rock,	A. rupes,		rocks,
V. rupe,	O	rock,	V. rupe,	O	rocks,
A. rupe,	with	a rock.	A. rupibus,	with	rocks.

**Lāpis, a stone, masc.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. lāpis,		a stone,	N. lāpides,		stones,
G. lapidis,	of	a stone,	G. lapidum,	of	stones,
D. lapidi,	to	a stone,	D. lapidibus,	to	stones,
A. lapidem,		a stone,	A. lapides,		stones,
V. lapis,	O	stone,	V. lapides,	O	stones,
A. lapide,	with	a stone.	A. lapidibus,	with	stones.

**Cāput, a head, neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. cāput,		a head,	N. cāpita,		heads,
G. capitis,	of	a head,	G. capitum,	of	heads,
D. capiti,	to	a head,	D. capitibus,	to	heads,
A. caput,		a head,	A. cāpita,		heads,
V. caput,	O	head,	V. cāpita,	O	heads,
A. capite,	with	a head.	A. capitibus,	with	heads.

**Sedile, a seat, neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. sēdile,		a seat,	N. sedilia,		seats,
G. sedilis,	of	a seat,	G. sedilium,	of	seats,
D. sedili,	to	a seat,	D. sedilibus,	to	seats,
A. sedile,		a seat,	A. sedilia,		seats,
V. sedile,	O	seat,	V. sedilia,	O	seats,
A. sedili,	with	a seat.	A. sedilibus,	with	seats.

**Iter, a journey, neut.**

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. iter,		a journey,	N. itinēra,		journeys,
G. itinēris,	of	a journey,	G. itinērum,	of	journeys,
D. itinēri,	to	a journey,	D. itinēribus,	to	journeys,
A. iter,		a journey,	A. itinēra,		journeys,
V. iter,	O	journey,	V. itinēra,	O	journeys,
A. itinēre,	with	a journey.	A. itinēribus,	with	journeys.

**Opus, a work, neut.****Singular.****Plural.**

N. <i>ōpus</i> ,	<i>a work</i> ,	N. <i>ōpēra</i> ,	<i>works</i> ,
G. <i>opēris</i> ,	<i>of a work</i> ,	G. <i>opērum</i> ,	<i>of works</i> ,
D. <i>opēri</i> ,	<i>to a work</i> ,	D. <i>opēribus</i> ,	<i>to works</i> ,
A. <i>opus</i> ,	<i>a work</i> ,	A. <i>opēra</i> ,	<i>works</i> ,
V. <i>opus</i> ,	<i>O work</i> ,	V. <i>opēra</i> ,	<i>O works</i> ,
A. <i>opēre</i> ,	<i>with a work</i> .	A. <i>opēribus</i> ,	<i>with works</i> .

**Pārens, a parent, common gender.****Singular.****Plural.**

N. <i>pārens</i> ,	<i>a parent</i> ,	N. <i>pārentes</i> ,	<i>parents</i> ,
G. <i>parentis</i> ,	<i>of a parent</i> ,	G. <i>parentū</i> ,*	<i>of parents</i> ,
D. <i>parenti</i> ,	<i>to a parent</i> ,	D. <i>parentibus</i> ,	<i>to parents</i> ,
A. <i>parentem</i> ,	<i>a parent</i> ,	A. <i>parentes</i> ,	<i>parents</i> ,
V. <i>parens</i> ,	<i>O parent</i> ,	V. <i>parentes</i> ,	<i>O parents</i> ,
A. <i>parente</i> ,	<i>with a parent</i> .	A. <i>parentibus</i> .	<i>with parents</i> .

**OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.****A, E, I, and Y.****1. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.**

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma*, *diademātis*, a crown.

**Dogma, an opinion, neut.****Singular.****Plural.**

N. *dogma*,  
G. *dogmātis*,  
D. *dogmāti*,  
A. *dogma*,  
V. *dogma*,  
A. *dogmate*.

N. *dogmata*,  
G. *dogmatum*,  
D. *dogmatibus*,  
A. *dogmata*,  
V. *dogmata*,  
A. *dogmatibus*.

*Enigma*, a riddle.

*Apōphthegma*, a short, pithy saying.

*Arōma*, sweet spices.

*Axiōma*, a plain truth.

*Diplōma*, a charter.

*Epigramma*, an inscription.

*Nūmisma*, a coin.

*Phasma*, an apparition.

*Poēma*, a poem.

*Schēma*, a schema, or figure.

*Sōphisma*, a deceitful argument.

*Stemma*, a pedigree.

*Stigma*, a mark or brand, a disgrace.

*Stratagēma*, an artful contrivance.

*Thēma*, a theme, a subject to write or speak on.

*Tōreuma*, a carved vessel.

\* Nouns in *ns* and *as* form their genitive plural in *ium* and *um*, but often admit a syncope of the *i*.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte*, *retis*, a net. So,  
*Ancile*, a shield. *Crīnale*, a pin for the *Navāle*, a dock or plac  
*Aplustre*, the flag of a hair. *for shipping.*  
*ship.* *Cūbjle*, a couch. *Ovile*, a sheep fold.  
*Campestre*, a pair of *Equile*, a stable for hors- *Præsepe*, a stall · a bee-  
*drawers.* *es.* *hive.*  
*Cochleare*, a spoon. *Lāqueare*, a coiled roof. *Sēcale*, rye.  
*Conclāve*, a room. *Mantile*, a towel. *Suile*, a sow-cote.  
*Mōnile*, a necklace. *Tibiale*, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gumīni*, gum; *zingibēri*, gin ger; but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as, *hydrōmēli*, *hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *mōly*, *molyos*, an herb; *mysy*, *-yos* vitriol.

## O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*, *us*,

*Sermo*, *sermōnis*, speech; *draco*, *dracōnis*, a dragon. So,

<i>Agaso</i> , a horse-keeper.	<i>Curio</i> , the chief of a ward	<i>Pēro</i> , a kind of shoe.
<i>Aquilo</i> , the north wind.	or <i>curia</i> .	<i>Præco</i> , a common crier.
<i>Arrhābo</i> , an earnest-pen-ny, a pledge.	<i>Equiso</i> , a groom or ost-ler.	<i>Prædo</i> , a robber.
<i>Balatro</i> , a pitiful fellow.	<i>Erro</i> , a wanderer.	<i>Pulmo</i> , the lungs.
<i>Bambālio</i> , a stutterer.	<i>Fullo</i> , a fuller of cloth.	<i>Pasio</i> , a little child.
<i>Bāro</i> , a blockhead.	<i>Helluo</i> , a glutton.	<i>Salmo</i> , a salmon.
<i>Bubo</i> , an owl.	<i>Histrio</i> , a player.	<i>Sannio</i> , a buffoon
<i>Bufo</i> , a toad.	<i>Iatro</i> , a robber.	<i>Sāpo</i> , soap.
<i>Calo</i> , a soldier's slave.	<i>Lēno</i> , a pimp.	<i>Siphō</i> , a pipe or tube.
<i>Capo</i> , a capon.	<i>Lūdio</i> , & <i>-ius</i> , a player.	<i>Spādo</i> , an eunuch.
<i>Carbo</i> , a coal.	<i>Lurco</i> , a glutton. [chant.	<i>Stolo</i> , a shoot or scion.
<i>Caupo</i> , an inn-keeper.	<i>Mango</i> , a slave-mor- person.	<i>Strābo</i> , a goggle-eye.
<i>Cerdo</i> , a cobbler, or one who follows a mean trade.	<i>Mirmillo</i> , a fencer.	<i>Tēmo</i> , the pole or draught-tree.
<i>Ciniffo</i> , a frizzler of hair.	<i>Mūrio</i> , a fool.	<i>Tiro</i> , a raw soldier.
<i>Crabro</i> , a wasp, or hornet.	<i>Mucro</i> , the point of a weapon.	<i>Umbo</i> , the boss of a shield.
	<i>Malio</i> , a multerer.	<i>Upflio</i> , a shepherd.
	<i>Nēbūlo</i> , a knave.	<i>Vōlo</i> , a volunteer.
	<i>Pavo</i> , a peacock.	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rātio*, *ratiōnis*, reason. So,

<i>Captio</i> , a quirk.	<i>Opīnio</i> , an opinion.	<i>Quæstio</i> , an inquiry.
<i>Cautio</i> , caution, care.	<i>Optio</i> , a choice.	<i>Rēbellio</i> , rebellion.
<i>Concio</i> , an assembly a speech.	<i>Oratio</i> , a speech.	<i>Rēgio</i> , a country.
<i>Cessio</i> , a yielding.	<i>Pensio</i> , a payment.	<i>Rēlatio</i> , a telling.
<i>Dietio</i> , a word.	<i>Perduellio</i> , treason.	<i>Rēligio</i> , religion.
<i>Dedītio</i> , a surrender.	<i>Portio</i> , a part.	<i>Rēmīssio</i> , a slackening.
<i>Lectio</i> , a lesson.	<i>Pōtio</i> , drink.	<i>Sanctio</i> , a confirmation.
<i>Lēgio</i> , a legion, a body of men.	<i>Prōditio</i> , treachery.	<i>Sectio</i> , the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods.
<i>Mentio</i> , mention.	<i>Proscriptio</i> , a proscrip- tion, ordering citizens to be slain, and confis- cating their effects.	<i>Sēditio</i> , a mutiny
<i>Nōtio</i> , a notion or idea.		<i>Sessio</i> , a sitting.

Statio, a station.	ring.	Vacatio, freedom from
Suspicio, mistrust.	Usucapio, the enjoyment	labour, &c.
Titillatio, a tickling.	of a thing by p. scrip-	Visio, an apparition.
Translatio, a transfer-	tion.	

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine ; as,

Curculio, the throat-pipe,	Scipio, a staff.	Unio, a pearl.
the weasand.	Scorpio, a scorpion.	Vespertilio, a bat.
Papilio, a butterfly.	Septentrio, the north.	Ternio, the number three.
Pagio, a dagger.	Stellio, a lizard.	Quaternio, — four.
Pusio, a little child.	Titio, a firebrand.	Senio, — six.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, are feminine, and have the genitive in *is* ; as, *arundo, arundinis*, a reed ; *imago, imaginis*, an image.

*Arundo, a reed, fem.*

*Singular.*

N. *arundo*,  
G. *arundinis*,  
D. *arundini*,  
A. *arundinem*,  
V. *arundo*,  
A. *arundine*.

*Plural.*

N. *arundines*,  
G. *arundinum*,  
D. *arundinibus*,  
A. *arundines*,  
V. *arundines*,  
A. *arundinibus*.

So,

<i>Ærugo, rust (of brass.)</i>	<i>Hirundo, a swallow.</i>	<i>Sartago, a frying-pan</i>
<i>Caligo, darkness.</i>	<i>Intercapædo, a space be-</i>	<i>Scaturigo, a spring.</i>
<i>Cartilago, a gristle.</i>	<i>tween.</i>	<i>Testudo, a tortoise.</i>
<i>Cræpido, a creak, bank.</i>	<i>Lanugo, down.</i>	<i>Torpædo, a numbness.</i>
<i>Farrago, a mixture.</i>	<i>Lentigo, a pimple.</i>	<i>Uligo, the natural mois-</i>
<i>Ferrugo, rust (of iron.)</i>	<i>Origo, an origin.</i>	<i>ture of the earth.</i>
<i>Formido, fear.</i>	<i>Porrigo, scurf, or scales</i>	<i>Valætudo, health.</i>
<i>Fuligo, soot.</i>	<i>in the head ; dandruff.</i>	<i>Vertigo, a dizziness.</i>
<i>Grando, hail.</i>	<i>Præpago, a lineage.</i>	<i>Virgo, a virgin.</i>
<i>Hirudo, a horse-leech.</i>	<i>Rubigo, rust, mildew.</i>	<i>Vorago, a gulf.</i>

But the following are masculine :

Cardo, -inis, a hinge.	Margo, -inis, the brink of a river ;
Cûdo, -onis, a leather cap.	also feminine.
Harpago, -onis, a drag.	Ordo, -inis, order.
Ligo, -onis, a spade.	Tendo, -inis, a tendon.
	Udo, -onis, a linen or woollen sock.

*Cûpido*, desire, is often masc. with the poets ; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis* :

Apollo, -inis, the god Apollo.	Nemo, -inis, m. or f. no body.
Homo, -inis, a man, or woman.	Turbo, -inis, m. a whirlwind.

*Câro*, flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Anitnis*. *Nerio*, *Nerîenis*, the wife of the god Mars ; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *onis*.

**Exc. 4.** Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ūs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so *echo*, *-ūs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, *-ūs*, the name of a ship; *hālo*, *-ōnis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

*Dido, Dido*, the name of a woman, fem.

*Sing.*

*Nom.* *Dido*,

*Gen.* *Didōnis* or *Didūs*,

*Dat.* *Didōni* or *Didō*,

*Acc.* *Didōnem* or *Didō*,

*Voc.* *Dido*,

*Abt.* *Didōne* or *Didō*.

### C, D, L.

**3.** Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

*Animal*, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, *-ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halecis*, a kind of pickle. So,

*Cervical*, a bolster. *Minerval*, entry-money. *Pūteal*, a well-cover.

*Cūbital*, a cushion. *Mīnūtal*, minced meat. *Vectigal*, a tax.

Except, *Consul*, *-ūlis*, m. a consul. *Mūgil*, *-īlis*, m. a mullet-fish.

*Fel*, *fellis*, n. gall. *Sal*, *sālis*, m. or n. salt.

*Lac*, *lactis*, n. milk. *Sāles*, *-ium*, pl. m. witty sayings.

*Mel*, *mellis*, n. honey. *Sol*, *sōlis*, m. the sun.

*D* is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

### N.

**4.** Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

*Canon*, *-ōnis*, a rule. *Lien*, *-ēnis*, the milt. *Ren*, *rēnis*, the reins.

*Dæmon*, *-ōnis*, a spirit. *Pæan*, *ānis*, a song. *Splen*, *-ēnis*, the spleen.

*Delphin*, *-īnis*, a dolphin. *Phyσιognōmon*, *-ōnis*, one who guesses at the dis-

*Gnōmon*, *-ōnis*, the cock who guesses at the dis-

of a dial. positions of men from

*Hymen*, *-ēnis*, the god of the face.

marriage.

**Exc. 1.** Nouns in *men*, are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as, *flūmen*, *flūminis*, a river. So,

*Abdōmen*, the paunch. *Discrīmen*, a difference. *Omen*, a presage.

*Acūmen*, sharpness. *Exāmen*, a swarm of bees. *Pūtāmen*, a nut-shell.

*Agmen*, an army on march. *Fōrāmen*, a hole. *Sagmen*, vervain, an herb.

*Alūmen*, alum. *Germen*, a sprout. *Sēmen*, a seed.

*Bitūmen*, a kind of clay. *Grāmen*, grass. *Spēcīmen*, a proof.

*Cācūmen*, the top. *Lēgūmen*, all kinds of pulse. *Stāmen*, the warp.

*Carīmen*, a song, a poem. *Lūmen*, light. *Subtēmen*, the woof.

*Cognōmen*, a sir-name. *Nūmen*, a name. *Tegmen*, a covering

*Cōlūmen*, a support. *Nūmen*, a name. *Vīmen*, a twig.

*Crīmen*, a crime. *Nūmen*, the Deity. *Vōlūmen*, a folding

The following nouns are likewise neuter;

Gluten, -inis, *glue*.

Inguen, -inis, *the groin*.

Unguen, -inis, *ointment*.

Pollen, -inis, *fine flour*.

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *ecten*, a comb; *tūbicen*, a trumpeter; *tibicen*, a piper; and *oscen*, or *oscinis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine; *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen; *ādon*, -ōnis, a nightingale; *halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the king's fisher; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laomedon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *chamaleon*, *Phaethon*, *Chāron*, &c.

### AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

Calcar, a spur, neut.

*Singular.*  
Nom. calcar,  
Gen. calcāris,  
Dat. calcāri,  
Acc. calcar,  
Voc. calcar,  
Abl. calcāri.\*

*Plural.*  
Nom. calcāria,  
Gen. calcārium,  
Dat. calcaribus,  
Acc. calcāria,  
Voc. calcāria,  
Abl. calcaribus.

So,

Guttur, -āris, *the throat*.

Jubar, -āris, *a sun-beam*.

Lacunar, -āris, *a ceiling*.

Murmur, -āris, *a noise*.

Except, Ebur, -ōris, n. *ivory*.

Far, farris, n. *corn*.

Femur, -ōris, n. *the thigh*.

Furfur, -ūris, m. *bran*.

Fur, fūris, m. *a thief*.

Hepar, -ātis, or -ātos, n.  
*the liver*.

Nectar, -āris, *drink of the gods*.

Pulvinar, -āris, *a pillow*.

Sulphur, -ūris, *sulphur*.

Jecur, -ōris, or jecinōris, n. *the liver*.

Rūbur, -ōris, n. *strength*.

Sālar, -āris, m. *a trout*.

Turtur, -ūris, m. *a turtle-dove*.

Vultur, -ūris, m. *a vulture*.

### ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Anser, ansēris, a goose or gander; agger, -ēris, a rampart; aer, -ēris, the air; carcer, -ēris, a prison; asser, -ēris, and assis, -is, a plank; dolor, -ōris, pain; color, -ōris, a colour. So,

Actor, a doer, a plead-  
*er*.

tended the magis-  
*trates*.

Crēditor, he that trusts  
*or lends*.

Livor, paleness, malice.  
Nidor, a strong smell.

Cruor, gore.

Odor, and -os, a smell.

Dēbitor, a debtor.

Olor, a swan.

Fætor, an ill smell.

Pædor, filth.

Hōnor, honour.

Pastor, a shepherd.

Lector, a reader.

Prætor, a commander.

Lictor, an officer among  
*the Romans, who at-*  
*Rūbor, blushing.*

Rāmōr, a report.

Sāpor, a taste.

Sartor, a cobbler or tailor.

Sātor, a sower, a father.

Sōpor, sleep.

Splendor, brightness.

Sponsor, a surety.

Squalor, filthiness.

Stūpor, dulness.

Sūtor, a sewer.

\* See Exc. in Abl. Sing. page 51. Neuter nouns in *ur* have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, and the Nom. Plur. in *a*.

Tēpor, *warmth.*Tonsor, *a barber.*Vāpor, *a vapour.*Terror, *dread.*Tutor, *a guardian.*Venator, *a hunter.*Tīmor, *fear.**Rhētor*, a rhetorician, has *rhetōris*; *castor*, a beaver, -ōris.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Accr, -ēris, *a maple tree.*Marmor, -ōris, *marble.*Ador, -ōris, *fine wheat.*Pāpāver, -ēris, *poppy.*Æquor, -ōris, *a plain, the sea.*Pīper, -ēris, *pepper.*Cādāver, -ēris, *a dead carcass.*Spinūter, -ēris, *a clasp.*Cīcer, -ēris, *vetches.*Tuber, -ēris, *a swelling.*Cor, cordis, *the heart.*Uber, -ēris, *a pap, or fatness.*Iter, itinēris, *a journey.*Ver, vēris, *the spring.**Arbor*, -ōris, a tree, is fem. *Tuber*, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc., but when put for the tree, is fem.Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris*, in the genitive; as, hic *imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber*, *Octōber*, &c.Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly; *pāter*, *patris*, a father; *frāter*, -tris, a brother; *accipiter*, -tris, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crāteris*; *sōter*, -ēris, a saviour; *lāter*, a tile, *latēris*; *Jūptter*, the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jūvis*; *linter*, -tris, a little boat, is masc. or femin.

## AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; *as*,*Ætas*, an age, fem.

Singular.

Nom. *ætās*,Gen. *ætātis*,Dat. *ætāti*,Acc. *ætātem*,Voc. *ætās*,Abl. *ætāte*.

Plural.

Nom. *ætātes*,Gen. *ætātūm*,\*Dat. *ætātibus*,Acc. *ætātes*,Voc. *ætātes*,Abl. *ætātibus*.

So,

*Æstās*, the summer.*Sīmultās*, a feud, a*Vērītās*, truth.*Piētās*, piety.*grudge.**Voluntās*, will.*Pōtestās*, power.*Tempestās*, a time, a*Vōluptās*, pleasure.*Prōbītās*, probity. [*gust.**tempest.**Anās*, a duck, has *ānā-**Sātīētās*, a glut or dis-*Ubertas*, fertility.*tis.*Exc. 1. *As*, *assis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts. *Mas*, *māris*, m. a male.*Vas*, *vādis*, m. a surety.*Vas*, *vāsis*, n. a vessel.Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; *as*, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *sems*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. *as*,

\* See note, page 37.

*gigas, gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas, -antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas, -antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *ādis*, or *ādos*; as, *lampas, lampādis*, or *lampādos*, a lamp; *drōmas, -ādis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcādis*, or *-ādos*. Those that are neuter have *ātis*; as, *bācēras, -ātis*, an herb; *artocreas, -ātis*, a pie.

## E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *i*; as,

*rūpes, rupis*, a rock; *nūbes, nubis*, a cloud. ♀ So,

<i>Ædes, or -is</i> , a temple;	<i>Lues, a plague.</i>	<i>Sēpes, a hedge.</i>
plur. <i>a house.</i>	<i>Mōles, a heap.</i>	<i>Sobōles, an offspring.</i>
<i>Cautes, a rugged rock.</i>	<i>Nātes, the buttock.</i>	<i>Strāges, a slaughter.</i>
<i>Clādes, an overthrow,</i>	<i>Pālumbes, m. or f. a</i>	<i>Strues, a heap.</i>
<i>destruction.</i>	<i>pigeon.</i>	<i>Sūdes, a stake.</i>
<i>Crātes, a hurdle.</i>	<i>Prōles, an offspring.</i>	<i>Tabes, a consumption.</i>
<i>Fāmes, hunger.</i>	<i>Pūbes, youth.</i>	<i>Vulpes, a fox.</i>
<i>Fīdes, a fiddle.</i>		

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales, -itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes, -itis</i> , a vine-branch.
<i>Ames, -itis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Paries, -itis</i> , a wall.
<i>Aries, -ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes, pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes, bēsis</i> , two thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes, -itis</i> , a footman.
<i>Cespes, -itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples, -itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Eques, -itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præses, -idis</i> , a president.
<i>Fūmes, -itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles, -itis</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Gurges, -itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stipes, -itis</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Hæres, -ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes, -itis</i> , an olive-bough.
<i>Indiges, -ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trames, -itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres, -ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Veles, -itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes, -itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vates, vatis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Mīles, -itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres, verriis</i> , a boar-pig.
<i>Obses, -idis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales, miles, hæres, interpres, obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Abies, -ētis</i> , a fir-tree.	<i>Rēquies, -ētis</i> ; or <i>requiæ</i> , (of the
<i>Ceres, -ēris</i> , the goddess of corn.	<i>fifth declension) rest.</i>
<i>Mercēs, -ēdis</i> , a reward, hire.	<i>Sēges, -ētis</i> , growing corn.
<i>Mergēs, -itis</i> , a handful of corn.	<i>Tēges, -ētis</i> , a mat or coverlet.
<i>Quies, -ētis</i> , rest.	<i>Tūdes, -is, or -itis</i> , a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives:

Ales, -itis, *swift*.  
 Bipes, -ēdis, *two-footed*.  
 Quadrupes, -ēdis, *four-footed*.  
 Dæses, -idis, *slothful*.  
 Dives, -itis, *rich*.  
 Hæbes, -ētis, *dull*.  
 Perpes, -ētis, *perpetual*.

Præpes, -ētis, *swift-winged*.  
 Ræses, -idis, *idle*.  
 Sospes, -itis, *safe*.  
 Sûperstes, -itis, *surviving*.  
 Tères, -ētis, *round and long, smooth*.  
 Lûcuples, -ētis, *rich*.  
 Mansues, -ētis, *gentle*.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as hic *Acinaces*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, hoc *Cæcæthes*, an evil custom; *hippômânes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pândæces*, the herb all-heal; *népenthæces*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have -ētis in the genitive; as, hic *magnes*, *magnētis*, a load-stone; *tâpes*, -ētis, tapestry; *lêbes*, -ētis, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either -ētis, or *is*; as, *Dâres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension. *Achilles* has *Achillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achilleus*. So *Ulysses*, *Péricles*, *Verres*, *Aristôtêles*, &c.

### IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

*auris*, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

<i>Apis</i> , a bee.	<i>Messis</i> , a harvest or	<i>Pestis</i> , a plague.
<i>Bilis</i> , the gall, anger.	<i>crop</i> .	<i>Râtis</i> , a raft.
<i>Classis</i> , a fleet.	<i>Nâris</i> , the nostril.	<i>Rûdis</i> , a rod.
<i>Felis</i> , a cat.	<i>Neptis</i> , a niece.	<i>Vallis</i> , a valley.
<i>Fûris</i> , a door; oftener	<i>Ovis</i> , a sheep.	<i>Vestis</i> , a garment.
, plur. <i>fores</i> , -ium.	<i>Pellis</i> , a skin.	<i>Vitis</i> , a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

<i>Axis</i> , axis, an axle-tree.	<i>Ensis</i> , a sword.	<i>Patruêlis</i> , a cousin-german.
<i>Aquâlis</i> , a water-pot, an ewer.	<i>Fascis</i> , a bundle.	<i>Piscis</i> , a fish.
<i>Callis</i> , a beaten road.	<i>Fêcialis</i> , a herald.	<i>Postis</i> , a post.
<i>Caulis</i> , the stalk of an herb.	<i>Follis</i> , a pair of bellows.	<i>Sôdalis</i> , a companion.
<i>Collis</i> , a hill.	<i>Fustis</i> , a staff.	<i>Torris</i> , a fire-brand.
<i>Cenchris</i> , a kind of serpent.	<i>Mensis</i> , a month.	<i>Unguis</i> , the nail.
	<i>Mûgilis</i> , or -il, a mullet-fish.	<i>Vectis</i> , a lever.
	<i>Orbis</i> , a circle, the world.	<i>Vermis</i> , a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pânis*, bread; *crtînis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fânis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *îdis*; as, *týrannis*, *týrannîdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

<i>Cinis</i> , -ēris, <i>ashes</i> .	<i>Pūbis</i> , or <i>pūbes</i> , -is, or <i>oftener</i> , -ēris, <i>marriageable</i> .
<i>Cūcūmis</i> , -is, or -ēris, <i>a cucumber</i> .	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ēris, <i>dust</i> .
<i>Dis</i> , dītis, <i>the god of riches</i> ; or <i>rich</i> , an adj.	<i>Quiris</i> , -itis, <i>a Roman</i> .
<i>Glis</i> , gliris, <i>a dormouse, a rat</i> .	<i>Samnis</i> , -itis, <i>a Samnite</i> .
<i>Impūbis</i> , or <i>impūbes</i> , -is, or -ēris, <i>not marriageable</i> .	<i>Sanguis</i> , -inis, <i>blood</i> .
<i>Lāpis</i> , -īdis, <i>a stone</i> .	<i>Sēmis</i> , -issis, <i>the half of any thing</i> .
	<i>Vōmis</i> , or -er, -ēris, <i>a ploughshare</i> .

*Pulvis*, and *cinis*, are sometimes feminine. *Sēmis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pūbis* and *impūbis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibuscaulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves. *Virg. Æn.* xii. 413. *Impūbe corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pūbes*, -is, f.) of youth. *Horat. Epod.* 5. 13. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

<i>Amnis</i> , <i>a river</i> .	<i>Finis</i> , <i>the end</i> ; <i>finēs</i> , <i>the boundaries of a field or territories</i> , is always <i>masc.</i>
<i>Anguis</i> , <i>a snake</i> .	<i>Scrōbis</i> , or <i>scriōbs</i> , <i>a ditch</i> .
<i>Cānalis</i> , <i>a conduit-pipe</i> .	<i>Torquis</i> , <i>a chain</i> .
<i>Clūnis</i> , <i>the buttock</i> .	
<i>Corbis</i> , <i>a basket</i> .	

Exc. 4. These feminines have *īdis*: *Cassis*, -īdis, *a helmet*; *cuspis*, -īdis, *the point of a spear*; *capis*, -īdis, *a kind of cup*; *prōmulsis*, -īdis, *a kind of drink, metheglin*. *Lis*, *strife*, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hērēsis*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, *a heresy*; so, *bāsis*, f. *the foot of a pillar*; *phrasis*, *a phrase*; *phthisis*, *a consumption*; *poēsis*, *poetry*; *metrōpōlis*, *a chief city*, &c. Some have *īdis*, or *īdos*; as, *Pāris*, -īdis, or -īdos, *the name of a man*; *aspis*, -īdis, f. *an asp*; *ēphēmēris*, -īdis, f. *a day-book*; *iris*, -īdis, f. *the rainbow*; *pyxis*, -īdis, f. *a box*. So *Ēgis*, *the shield of Pallas*; *canthāris*, *a sort of fly*; *pērsicēlis*, *a garter*; *proboscis*, *an elephant's trunk*; *pyrāmis*, *a pyramid*; and *tigris*, *a tiger*, -īdis, *seldom tigris*: all fem. Part have *īdis*, as, *Psōphis*, -īdis, *the name of a city*: others have *inis*; as, *Eleusis*, *inis*, *the name of a city*; and some have *entis*; as, *Stmois*, *Simoētis*, *the name of a river*. *Chāris*, *one of the Graces*, has *Charītis*.

## OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,

*nēpos*, -ōtis, *a grandchild*; *sācerdos*, -ōtis, *a priest*, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

<i>Arbos</i> , or -or, -ōris, <i>a tree</i> .	<i>Eos</i> , eōis, <i>the morning</i> .
<i>Cos</i> , cōtis, <i>a whetstone</i> .	<i>Glos</i> , glōris, <i>the husband's sister</i> , or <i>brother's wife</i> .
<i>Dos</i> , dōtis, <i>a dowry</i> .	

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

*Flos, flōris, a flower.*  
*Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, honour.*  
*Lābos, or -or, -ōris, labour.*  
*Lēpos, or -or, -ōris, wit.*  
*Mos, mōris, a custom.*  
*Ros, rōris, dew.*

*Custos, -ōdis, a keeper; also fem.*  
*Hēros, herōis, a hero.*  
*Mīnos, -ōis, a king of Crete.*  
*Tros, Trōis, a Trojan.*  
*Boa, būvis, m. or f. an ox or cow.*

Exc. 3. *Os, ossis, a bone; and ōs, ōris, the mouth, are neuter.*

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*, as *heros, -ōis, a hero, or great man*: So *Mīnos, a king of Crete; Tros, a Trojan; thos, a kind of wolf*

### US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris*; as,

*pectus, pectōris, the breast; tempus, tempōris, time.* So,

<i>Corpus, a body.</i>	<i>Frigus, cold.</i>	<i>Pēnus, provisions.</i>
<i>Dēcus, honour.</i>	<i>Littus, a shore.</i>	<i>Pignus, a pledge.</i>
<i>Dēdēcus, disgrace.</i>	<i>Nēmus, a grove.</i>	<i>Stercus, dung.</i>
<i>Facinus, a great action.</i>	<i>Pēcus, cattle.</i>	<i>Tergus, a hide.</i>
<i>Fōnus, usury.</i>		

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*:

<i>Acus, chaff.</i>	<i>Mānus, a gift, or office.</i>	<i>Scēlus, a crime.</i>
<i>Fānus, a funeral.</i>	<i>Olus, pot-herbs.</i>	<i>Sidus, a star.</i>
<i>Fōdus, a covenant.</i>	<i>Onus, a burden.</i>	<i>Vellus, a fleece of wool.</i>
<i>Gēnus, a kind, or kindred.</i>	<i>Opus, a work.</i>	<i>Viscus, an entrail.</i>
<i>Glōmus, a clew.</i>	<i>Pondus, a weight.</i>	<i>Ulcus, a bile.</i>
<i>Lātus, the side.</i>	<i>Rādus, rubbish.</i>	<i>Vulnus, a wound.</i>

Thus *acēris, funēris, &c.* *Glōmus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

<i>Incus, -ūdis, an anvil.</i>	<i>Jūventus, -ūtis, youth.</i>
<i>Pālus, -ūdis, a pool or morass.</i>	<i>Sālus, -ūtis, safety.</i>
<i>Pēcus, -ūdis, a sheep.</i>	<i>Sēnectus, -ūtis, old age.</i>
<i>Subscus, -ūdis, a dove-tail.</i>	<i>Servītus, -ūtis, slavery.</i>
<i>Tellus, -ūris, the earth, or goddess of the earth.</i>	<i>Virtus, -ūtis, virtue.</i>
	<i>Intercus, -ūtis, an hydropsy.</i>

*Intercus* is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *aris* in the genitive; as,

<i>Crus, crūris, the leg.</i>	<i>Rus, rūris, the country.</i>
<i>Jus, juris, law or right; also broth.</i>	<i>Thus, thāris, frankincense.</i>
<i>Pus, pūris, the corrupt matter of any sore.</i>	<i>So Mus, mūris, masc. a mouse.</i>

*Ligus*, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*; *lēpus*, masc. a hare, *lepōris*; *sus* masc. or fem. a swine, *suīs*; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruīs*.

*Œdipus*, the name of a man, has *Œdipōdis*; sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdipi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripōdis*; but *lāgōpus*, *-ōdis*, a kind of bird, or, the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trapēzus*, *Trapēzuntis*; *Opus*, *Opuntis*; Hierichus, *-untis*, *Jericho*.

## YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *ysis*, or *yos*; as,

*Hæc chēlys*, *chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp; *Cāpys*, *Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man; sometimes they have *ydis*, or *ydos*; as, *hæc chlām̃ys*, *chlām̃ydis*, or *chlām̃ydos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *gnis* or *gnos*; as, *Trachys*, *Trachynis*, or *Trachynos*, the name of a town.

## ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs*, and *aus*, are,

*Æs*, *æris*, n. *brass*, or *money*.  
*Fraus*, *fraudis*, f. *fraud*.

*Laus*, *laudis*, f. *praise*.  
*Præs*, *prædis*, m. or f. *a surety*.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphēi*, and that into *Orphēi*.

## S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

*Trabs*, *trābis*, a beam; *scobs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems*, *hiēm̃is*, winter; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation; *stips*, *stīpis*, alms; *pars*, *partis*, a part; *sors*, *sortis*, a lot; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

*Chālybs*, *-ybis*, *steel*.  
*Dens*, *-tis*, *a tooth*.  
*Fons*, *-tis*, *a well*.  
*Gryps*, *gr̃yphis*, *a griffin*.  
*Hydrops*, *-ōpis*, *th: dropsy*.

*Mērops*, *-ōpis*, *a woodpecker*.  
*Mons*, *-tis*, *a mountain*.  
*Pons*, *-tis*, *a bridge*.  
*Seps*, *sēpis*, *a kind of serpent*; but  
*Seps*, *sēpis*, *a hedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine:

*Adeps*, *ad̃pis*, *fatness*.  
*Rūdēns*, *-tis*, *a cable*.  
*Scrobs*, *scrōbis*, *a ditch*.

*Serpens*, *-tis*, *a serpent*.  
*Stirps*, *stirpis*, *the root of a tree*.  
*Stirps*, *an offspring*, always fem.

*Antmans*, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3 Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps*, *for̃c̃pis*,

a pair of tongs; *princeps*, -*ipis*, a prince or princess; *particeps*, -*cipis*, a partaker; so likewise *caelebs*, *calibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cipitis*; as, *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong; *anceps*, *ancipitis*, doubtful; *biceps*, -*cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucepis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

*Frons*, *frondis*, the leaf of a tree.  
*Glans*, *glandis*, an acorn.

*Juglans*, -*dis*, a walnut.  
*Lens*, *lendis*, a nit.

So *libripens*, *libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens*, -*dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concor*, *concordis*, agreeing; *discor*, disagreeing; *vecor*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *ec* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens*, *euntis*; *quiens*, *quicuntis*; *rēdiens*, *redeuntis*; *nequiens*, *nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birthplace of Hercules, has *Ti rynthis*.

### T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput*, *capitis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput*, *sincipitis*, the forehead; and *occiput*, -*itis*, the hind-head.

### X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as *lux*, *lucis*, light.

Vox the voice, fem.

#### Singular.

Nom. *vox*,  
Gen. *vōcis*,  
Dat. *vōci*,  
Acc. *vōcem*,  
Voc. *vox*,  
Abl. *vōce*.

#### Plural.

Nom. *vōces*,  
Gen. *vōcum*,  
Dat. *vōcibus*,  
Acc. *vōces*,  
Voc. *voces*,  
Abl. *vōcibus*.

So,

Appendix, -*icis*, an addition; dim. -*icūla*.  
Cēlox, -*icis*, a pinnace.  
Cervix, -*icis*, the neck.  
Cicatrix, -*icis*, a scar.  
Cornix, -*icis*, a crow.  
Cōturnix, -*icis*, a quail.  
Coxendix, -*icis*, the hip.

Crux, *crūcis*, a cross.  
Fæx, -*cis*, dregs.  
Falx, -*cis*, a scythe.  
Fax, -*ācis*, a torch.  
Filix, -*icis*, a fern.  
Lanx, -*cis*, a plate.  
Lōdix, -*icis*, a sheet.  
Mēretrix, -*icis*, a courtesan.

Merx, -*cis*, merchandise.  
Nutrix, -*icis*, a nurse.  
Nux, *nūcis*, a nut.  
Pax, -*ācis*, peace.  
Pix, *pīcis*, pitch.  
Radix, -*icis*, a root.  
Sālix, -*icis*, a willow.  
Vibix, or -*ex*, *icis*, the mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax*, -*ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cōrax*, -*ācis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -*icis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine

<b>Apex</b> , the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	<b>Cimex</b> , a bug.	<b>Pūdex</b> , the breech.
<b>Artifex</b> , an artist.	<b>Cūdex</b> , a book.	<b>Pontifex</b> , a chief priest.
<b>Carnifex</b> , an executioner.	<b>Cūlex</b> , a gnat, a midge.	<b>Pulex</b> , a flea.
<b>Candex</b> , the trunk of a tree.	<b>Frūtēx</b> , a shrub.	<b>Ramēx</b> , a rupture.
	<b>Index</b> , an informer.	<b>Sōrex</b> , a rat.
	<b>Lātēx</b> , any liquor.	<b>Vertēx</b> , the crown of the head.
	<b>Mūrex</b> , a shell-fish, purple.	<b>Vortex</b> , a whirlpool.

**Vervēx**, a wether sheep, has *vervēcis*; **fanīsex**, a mower of hay, *fanīsticis*; **rēsex**, m. -*ēcis*, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

<b>Cālix</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a cup.	<b>Oryx</b> , - <i>ygis</i> , a wild goat.
<b>Cālyx</b> , - <i>ycis</i> , the bud of a flower.	<b>Phōnix</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a bird so called.
<b>Coccyx</b> , - <i>ygis</i> , or <i>ycis</i> , a cuckoo.	<b>Trādūx</b> , - <i>ūcis</i> , a graft or offset of a vine; also fem.
<b>Fornix</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a vault.	

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

<b>Fornax</b> , - <i>acis</i> , a furnace.	<b>Smilax</b> , - <i>acis</i> , the herb rope-weed.
<b>Pānax</b> , - <i>acis</i> , the herb all-heal.	<b>Carex</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a sedge.
<b>Climax</b> , - <i>acis</i> , a ladder.	<b>Sūpellex</b> , supellectilis, household furniture.
<b>Forfex</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a pair of scissors.	
<b>Hālex</b> , - <i>ēcis</i> , a herring.	

**Exc. 2.** A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

<b>Calx</b> , - <i>cis</i> , the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but <i>calx, lime</i> , is always fem.	<b>Limax</b> , - <i>acis</i> , a snail.
<b>Cortex</b> , - <i>icis</i> , the bark of a tree.	<b>Obex</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a bolt or bar.
<b>Hystrix</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a porcupine.	<b>Perdix</b> , <i>icis</i> , a partridge.
<b>Imbrex</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a gutter or roof tile.	<b>Pūmēx</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a pumice stone.
<b>Lynx</b> , - <i>cis</i> , an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.	<b>Rūmēx</b> , - <i>icis</i> , sorrel, an herb.
	<b>Sandix</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a purple colour.
	<b>Sīlex</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a flint.
	<b>Vārix</b> , - <i>icis</i> , a swollen vein.

**Exc. 3.** The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

<b>Aquīlex</b> , - <i>ēgis</i> , a well-maker.	<b>Phālanx</b> , - <i>angis</i> , f. a phalanx.
<b>Conjūnx</b> , or - <i>ux</i> , - <i>ūgis</i> , a husband or wife.	<b>Rēmēx</b> , - <i>igis</i> , a rower.
<b>Frux</b> (not used), <i>frūgis</i> , f. corn.	<b>Rēx</b> , <i>rēgis</i> , a king.
<b>Grex</b> , <i>grēgis</i> , m. or f. a flock.	<b>Nix</b> , <i>nivis</i> , f. snow.
<b>Lēx</b> , <i>lēgis</i> , f. a law.	<b>Nox</b> , <i>noctis</i> , f. night.
	<b>Sēnex</b> , <i>sēnis</i> , & - <i>icis</i> , (an adj.) old.

**Exc. 4.** Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and manner of declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ōnyx*, masc. or fem. *onychis*, a precious stone; and so *sardōnyx*; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx*, -*ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix*, -*igis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styx*, -*ygis*, f. a river in hell; *Hylax*, -*ctis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrax*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

#### DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriēte leōni ex ore excipere prēdam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion. Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Virg. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esuriēti* and *pedi*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR

**Exc. 1** The following nouns have the accusative in *im*:

Amussis, f. a mason's rule.	Ravis, f. hoarseness
Baris, f. the beam of a plough.	Sināpis, f. mustard.
Cannābis, f. hemp.	Sītis, f. thirst.
Cūcūmis, m. a cucumber.	Tussis, f. a cough
Gummi, f. gum.	Vis, f. strength.
Mēphitis, f. a damp or strong smell.	

To these add proper names, 1. of cities and other places; *ās*, *Hispanis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia;—2. of rivers; *ās*, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Batis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain; *so*, *Albis*, *Arāris*, *Athēsis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. of gods; *ās*, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Ostris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tibērim* or *-in*, &c.

**Exc. 2.** Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; *as*,

Aquālis, m. a waterpot.	Pelvis, f. a basin.	Sēcūris, f. an axe.
Clāvis, f. a key.	Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.	Sēmentis, f. a sowing.
Cūtis, f. the skin.	Restis, f. a rope.	Strigīlia, f. a horse-comb.
Febris, f. a fever.		Turris, f. a tower.
Nāvis, f. a ship.		

Thus *navem* or *navim*; *puppem* or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vītim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

**Exc. 3.** Greek nouns form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*; *as*, *lampas*, *lampādis* or *lampādos*, *lampādem* or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem* or *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*; *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pana*, *æthera*, *delphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*; *as*, *Pāris*, *Parīdis* or *Parīdos*, *Parim* or *Parin*, sometimes *Parīdem*, never *Parīda*.—So, *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; *as*, *Elis*, *Elīdis* or *Elīdos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem* or *ȳda*, not *ȳm* or *ȳn* in the accusative; *as*, *chlām̄ys*, *ȳdem* or *ȳda*, not *chlām̄yn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; *as*, *metamorpōsis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, *metamor-*; *hēsim* or *-in*, a change. *Tēthys*, *-yos* or *-yis*, *Telhym* or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *ous*, have the accusative in *ea*; *as* *Thēseus*, *Thēsea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydoa*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sēdile*, *sedili*; *animāl*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

*Far*, *farre*, *corn*

*Hēpar*, -āte, *the liver*.

*Jūbar*, -āre, *a sun beam*.

*Nectar*, -āre, *drink of the gods*.

*Par*, *pāre*, *a match, a pair*.

*Sal*, *sāle*, or -i, m. or n. *salt*.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; but *cannābis*, *Bālis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope, and *cūlis*, the skin, have *e* only.\*

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bīpennis*, -i, a halbert; *mōlāris*, -i, a millstone; *quadrirēmis*, -i, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, -i; *Dēcember*, -bri, &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have *e* only; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *us*; as,

*Adōlescens*, *a young man*.

*Infans*, *an infant*.

*Princeps*, *a prince*.

*Sēnex*, *an old man*.

*Torrens*, *a brook*.

*Vigil*, *a watchman*.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermōnes*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinerā*; but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcāria*.

\* Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis*, *supellex*, *vectis*, *pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugilis*; so *rus*, *occiput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitāt Carthagine* or *Carthagīni*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *præstis*, *fustis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *estāti*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ovi*; &c.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or either *e* or *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e* only, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedilī*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vādium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitalium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens*, *vātes*, *pūnis*, *jūvēnis*, and *cānis*. Horace, however, has *parentium*. Od. iii. 4, 23.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

*Arx*, *arcis*, f. a castle.  
*Caro*, *carnis*, f. flesh.  
*Cohors*, -tis, f. a company.  
*Cor*, *cordis*, n. the heart.  
*Cos*, *cōtis*, f. a hone or whetstone.  
*Dos*, *dōtis*, f. a dowry.  
*Faux*, *faucis*, f. the jaws.  
*Glis*, *gliris*, m. a rat.  
*Lar*, *lāris*, m. a household god.

*Linter*, -tris, m. or f. a little boat.  
*Lis*, *litis*, f. strife.  
*Mus*, *mūris*, m. a mouse.  
*Nix*, *nīvis*, f. snow.  
*Nox*, *noctis*, f. the night.  
*Os*, *ossis*, n. a bone.  
*Quīris*, -itis, a Roman.  
*Samnis*, -itis, m. or f. a Samnite.  
*Uter*, *utris*, m. a bottle.

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*: as, *septunz*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bessium*.

*Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*; and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Micēdo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *monocēros*, an unicorn; *lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian; *Macedōnum*, *Arōbum*, *Æthiōpum*, *monocerōtum*, *lynacum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammātōn*, an epigram; *metamorphōsis*, -ium, or -eōn.

Obs. 1. Nouns, which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *cēlites*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cēlitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cales*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnālia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnaliūm* and *Saturnaliōrum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *im*; as, *nocentim* for *nocentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cēlituum*, for *cēlitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncope* and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poëma*, a poem, *poemātis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemātum*, of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or, when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troādis* or *Troādos*, a Trojan woman.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem* or *lampāda*; *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *herōas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiōpas*, &c.

## GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

*Lampas*, a lamp, f. *lampāais* or *-ādos*, *-ādi*, *-ādem* or *-āda*, *-as*, *-āde*. Plur. *-ādes*, *-ādum*, *-ādibus*, *-ādes* or *-ādas*, *-ādes*, *-ādibus*.

*Troas*, f. *Troādis* or *dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-as*, *-de*. Plur. *Troādes*, *dum*, *-dibus* or *-si* or *-sin*, *-des* or *-das*, *-des*, *-dibus*.

*Tros*, m. *Trois*, *Troi*, *Troem* or *-a*, *Tros*, *Troe*, &c.

*Phyllis*, f. *Phyllidis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-i* or *-is*, *-de*.

*Pāris*, m. *Pārihis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *dem* or *Parim* or *-in*, *-i*, *-de*.

*Chlāmys*, f. *chlām̄ydis* or *-ȳdos*, *-ȳdi*, *-ȳdem* or *ȳda*, *-ys*, *-ȳde*, &c.

*Cāpys*, m. *Cap̄yis* or *-ȳos*, *-yi*, *-ym* or *-yn*, *-y*, *-ye* or *-y*.

*Mētāmorphōsis*, f. *-is* or *-ios*, or *-eos*, *-i*, *im* or *in*, *-i*, *-i*, &c.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

## TERMINATIONS.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom.	} <i>us, or u,</i>	Nom.	} <i>us, or ua,</i>	
Voc.		Acc.		
Gen.	<i>ûs,</i>	Voc.		
Dat.	<i>ui,</i>	Gen.		<i>uum,</i>
Acc.	<i>um,</i>	Dat.		} <i>ibus.</i>
Abl.	<i>u</i>	Abl.		

## Fructus, fruit, masc.

## Singular.

N. fructus,	fruit,
G. fructûs,	of fruit,
D. fructui,	to fruit,
A. fructum,	fruit,
V. fructus,	O fruit,
A. fructu,	with fruit.

## Plural.

N. fructus,	fruits,
G. fructuum,	of fruits,
D. fructibus,	to fruits,
A. fructus,	fruits,
V. fructus,	O fruits,
A. fructibus,	with fruits.

## Cornu, a horn, neut.

## Singular.

N. cornu,	a horn,
G. cornu,	of a horn,
D. cornu,	to a horn,
A. cornu,	a horn,
V. cornu,	O horn,
A. cornu,	with a horn.

## Plural.

N. cornua,	horns,
G. cornuum,	of horns,
D. cornibus,	to horns,
A. cornua,	horns,
V. cornua,	O horns,
A. cornibus,	with horns.

## In like manner decline,

Aditus, an access.  
 Anfractus, a winding.  
 Auditus, the sense of hearing.  
 Cantus, a singing, or song.  
 Casus, a fall, an accident, or chance.  
 Cæstus, a gauntlet.  
 Cestus, a marriage-girdle.  
 Cætus, an assembly.  
 Cultus, worship, dress.  
 Currus, a chariot.  
 Cursus, a race.  
 Decessus, a departure.  
 Eventus, an event.  
 Exercitus, an army.  
 Exitus, an issue.  
 Fastus, pride.  
 Flatus, a blast.  
 Flētus, weeping.  
 Fluctus, a wave.  
 Fœtus, an offspring.  
 Gêlu, ice.  
 Gēmītus, a groan.  
 Grādus, a step, a degree.  
 Gustus, the taste.  
 Hābītus, a habit, the state of mind or body.

Halitus, breath.  
 Haustus, a draught.  
 Ictus, a stroke.  
 Impētus, an attack.  
 Incessus, a stately gait.  
 Luctus, grief.  
 Luxus, luxury, riot.  
 Mētus, fear.  
 Missus, a throw; a turn or heat in races.  
 Mōtus, a motion.  
 Nexus, servitude for debt.  
 Nūrus, f. a daughter-in-law.  
 Nūtus, a nod.  
 Obtātus, a look.  
 Odōrātus, the sense of smelling.  
 Passus, a pace. [nence.  
 Principātus, pre-emi-  
 Prōcessus, a progress.  
 Progressus, an advancement.  
 Prospectus, a view.  
 Prōventus, an increase, revenue.  
 Quēsus, gain.  
 Questus, a complaint.  
 Rēdītus, a return, an income

Rictus, a grinning.  
 Risus, laughter.  
 Ritus, a rite, a ceremony.  
 Ructus, a belching.  
 Saltus, a leap, a forest.  
 Sēnātus, the senate, the supreme council among the Romans.  
 Sensus, a sense, feeling, meaning.  
 Sexus, a sex.  
 Sinus, a bosom.  
 Singultus, a sob, the hiccup.  
 Sītus, a situation.  
 Stātus, a posture.  
 Socrus, f. a mother-in-law.  
 Spiritus, a breathing, spirit.  
 Successus, success.  
 Sumptus, expense.  
 Tactus, the touch.  
 Tōnitrū, thunder.  
 Transītus, a passage.  
 Tumultus, an uproar.  
 Venātus, hunting.  
 Visus, the sight.  
 Victus, food.  
 Vultus, the countenance.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine.

Acus, a needle.	Ficus, a fig.	Porticus, a gallery.
Anus, an old woman.	Mānus, the hand.	Spēcus, a den.
Dōlus, a house.	Pēnus, a store house.	Tribus, a tribe.

*Penus* and *specus* are sometimes masculine. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*, having one hand; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Quercus*, an oak, has *quercōrum*, and *-uum*, in the gen. pl. *Versus* has *versi*, *versōrum*, *versis*, as well as its regular cases. *Sendtus* has also *-dti*, in the gen.

*Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dōmus, a house, fem.

Singular.

Plural.

N. domus,	a house,	N. domus,	houses,
G. domūs, or -mi, of	a house,	G. domōrum, or -uum, of	houses,
D. domui, or -mo, to	a house,	D. domibus,	to houses,
A. domum,	a house,	A. domos, or -us,	houses,
V. domus,	O house,	V. domus,	O houses,
A. domo,	with a house.	A. domibus,	with houses.

*Note.* *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as *meminēris domi*. Terent. Eun. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ūbus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, a needle.	Lācus, a lake.	Spēcus, a den.
Arcus, a bow.	Partus, a birth.	Tribus, a tribe.
Artus, a joint.	Portus, a harbour.	Vēru, a spit.
Genu, the knee.		

*Portus*, *genu*, and *veru* have likewise *ūbus*; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. *JESUS*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.\*

\*Nouns of the fourth declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructus*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructūbus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructūbus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impētū*, for *impetui*. Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usū sibi*, for *usui*. Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currūm*, for *currūum*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

TERMINATIONS.			
Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	} <i>es</i> ,	Nom.	} <i>es</i> ,
Voc.		Acc.	
Gen.	} <i>ei</i> ,	Voc.	} <i>erum</i> ,
Dat.		Gen.	
Acc.	<i>em</i> ,	Dat.	} <i>ebus</i> .
Abl.	<i>e</i> .	Abl.	

*Res*, a thing, fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>res</i> ,	<i>a thing</i> ,	N. <i>res</i> ,	<i>things</i> ,
G. <i>rēi</i> ,	<i>of a thing</i> ,	G. <i>rērum</i> ,	<i>of things</i> ,
D. <i>rēi</i> ,	<i>to a thing</i> ,	D. <i>rēbus</i> ,	<i>to things</i> ,
A. <i>rem</i> ,	<i>a thing</i> ,	A. <i>res</i> ,	<i>things</i> ,
V. <i>res</i> ,	<i>O thing</i> ,	V. <i>res</i> ,	<i>O things</i> ,
A. <i>re</i> ,	<i>with a thing</i> .	A. <i>rēbus</i> ,	<i>with things</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Acies</i> , the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.	<i>Inglūvies</i> , gluttony.	<i>Scābies</i> , the scab, or itch.
<i>Cāries</i> , rottenness.	<i>Mācies</i> , leanness.	<i>Sēries</i> , an order, or row.
<i>Cæsāries</i> , the hair.	<i>Māteries</i> , matter.	<i>Spēcies</i> , an appearance.
<i>Fācies</i> , the face.	<i>Pernīcies</i> , destruction.	<i>Sūperfīcies</i> , the surface.
<i>Glācies</i> , ice.	<i>Prōlūvies</i> , a looseness.	<i>Tempēries</i> , temperateness.
	<i>Rābies</i> , madness.	
	<i>Sānies</i> , gore.	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e*; as, *fide*, for *fidēi*. Ov. M. 3. 341.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four; *abies*, a fir tree; *aries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension. *Requies* is of the third and fifth declension.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

## I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

*Heterogeneous Nouns.*

Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes.

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Avernus, a lake in Campania, <i>hell.</i>	Mænālus, a hill in Arcadia.
Dindȳmus, a hill in Phrygia.	Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.
Ismārus, a hill in Thrace.	Tænārus, a promontory in Laconia.
Massicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.	Tartārus, <i>hell.</i>
	Tāyġētus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna, Avernōrum; Dindȳma, -ōrum, &c.* These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga*, or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

*Jocus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *lōcus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in a discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

*Carbāsus*, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergāma*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

*Cælum*, pl. *cæli*, heaven; *Elȳsium*, pl. *Elysis*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter a fīdus;*

*Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*. m-  
ch are nei-

6. *Neuter in the singular and feminine in the plural called*

*Delicium*, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *epŭlum*, a banquet, pl. *epŭla*; *balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*. N  
Some nou

*Heteroclites.*

Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; —, *vas*, *vāsis*, a vessel, pl. *vāsa*, *vasōrum*; *jūgĕrum*, *jūgĕri*, an acre, pl. *jūgĕra*, *jūgĕrum*, *jūgeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jūgĕris*, and *jūgĕre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jūgus*, or *juger*.

In double nouns, both nouns are declined when combined in the nominative case; as,

**Respublica, a commonwealth, fem.****Singular.**

N. *respublica*,  
 G. *reipublicæ*,  
 D. *reipublicæ*,  
 A. *reipublicam*,  
 V. *respublica*,  
 A. *republicâ*.

**Plural.**

N. *respublicæ*,  
 G. *rerumpublicarum*,  
 D. *rebuspublicis*,  
 A. *respublicas*,  
 V. *respublicæ*,  
 A. *rebuspublicis*.

**Jusjurandum, an oath, neut.****Singular.**

N. *jusjurandum*,  
 G. *jurisjurandi*,  
 D. *jurijurando*,  
 A. *jusjurandum*,  
 V. *jusjurandum*,  
 A. *jurejurando*.

**Plural.**

N. *jurajuranda*,  
 G. *jurumjurandorum*,\*  
 D. *juribusjurandis*,  
 A. *jurajuranda*,  
 V. *jurajuranda*,  
 A. *juribusjurandis*.

If a nominative is combined with some other case, then the nominative only is declined; as,

**Paterfamilias, a master of a family, masc.**

N. *paterfamilias*,  
 G. *patrisfamilias*,  
 D. *patrifamilias*,  
 A. *patremfamilias*,  
 V. *paterfamilias*,  
 A. *patrefamilias*.

*Cæsar*.

*Cæsaries, the*

*Facies, the face*

*Glacies, ice.* ns are both of the second and third declension; as,

Except <i>d</i> the plur	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Orpheus,	ei,	eo,	{ eum, or eoa, }	—	eo; 2d Declen.
	eos,	ei,	ea,	eu,	—; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Œdipus,	i,	o,	um,	—	o; 2d Declen.
	ōdis,	ōdi,	ōdem,	u,	ōde; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Achilleus,	ei,	eo,	—	eu,	eo; 2d Declen.
Achilles,	{ lis, or lēos, }	li,	{ lem, or len, }	{ les, or le, }	le; 3d Declen.

\* The Gen. Dat. and Abl. plural are not used.

Some nouns are of peculiar declension.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Jupiter,	N. vis,	N. vires,
G. Jovis,	G. vis,	G. virium,
D. Jovi,	D. —	D. viribus,
A. Jovem,	A. vim,	A. vires,
V. Jupiter,	V. vis,	V. vires,
A. Jove.	A. vi.	A. viribus.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. bos,	N. boves,
G. bovis,	G. boum,
D. hovi,	D. bobus, or bubus,
A. bovem,	A. boves,
V. bos,	V. boves,
A. bove.	A. bobus, or bubus.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable, and therefore called *apłōta*; \* as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *sīnūpi*, mustard;

*māne*, the morning; as, *clarum manc.* Pers. *A. mane ad vespēram.* Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cepe*, an onion; *gausāpe*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination. Pers. *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. Mart. *O magnum Græcōrum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks. *Infīdus est compositum ex in et fīdus*; *infīdus* is compounded of *in* and *fīdus*.

To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoplōta*; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative sing.;

*dicis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dicis gratiā*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *infīcias*, and *incīta*, or *incītas*, in the acc. plural; thus, *ire infīcias*, to deny; *ad incītas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus; *ingrātiis*, in the ablative plural, in spite of one: and these ablatives singular; *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergō*, for the sake; as, *ergō illius*. Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compēdc*, f. with a fetter; *casse*, m. with a net; Plur. *am*, *bāges*, *-ibus*; *compēdes*, *-ium*, *-ibus*; *casses*, *-ium*.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called

\* From πρ αἰς, a case, and α privative; gen. *aplotōtrum*

*diptōta*; as, *nēcesse*, or *-um*, necessity; *vōlūpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town;

*air* the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular: *vesper*, m. *ves pēre*, or *-ēri*, the evening; *siremps*, *sirempse*, the same, all alike; in the nom. and abl. sing.: *spontis*, f. *sponte*, of its own accord; *impētis*, m. *impēta*, force; *verbēris*, n. *verbēre*, a stripe; in the gen. and abl. sing.: *veprem*, m. *vepre*, a briar; in the acc. and abl. sing.: the last two entire in the plur.; *vepres*, -um, or -ium, &c.; *verbēra*, *verbērum*, *verberibus*, &c. *repetundārum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētie*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriæ*, *infērias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēcī*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire; *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c.

*Fēmīnis*, genit. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing. *fēmīni*, and -e; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *fēmīna*. *Mica*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *fur*, and nouns of the fifth declension; except *res*, *dies*, and perhaps *species*, entire.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters; *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cācoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks; which wants the singular.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative; and therefore are called *tetraptōta*:

*Vicis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pecūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditīōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, of help. Of these *pecūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *ditīōnis* wants it altogether; *vicis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis*, in the plural, generally signifies wealth or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta*;

Thus, *fax*, *fax*, *fel*, *glos*, *lubes*, *lux*, *os*, (the mouth;) *paz*, *piz*, *proles*, *pus*, *ros*, *sobōles*, and *sol*, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātias*, i. e. *satiētās*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the genit. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in *Number* there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c.; as, *justītia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley;

*argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trīticum*, wheat; *hordum*, barley; *āvēna*, oats; *iūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

<i>Aër</i> , <i>aëris</i> , the air.	<i>Nemo</i> , -inis, c. g. no body.
<i>Æther</i> , -ëris, the sky.	<i>Pénus</i> , -i, or -ūs, d. g. all manner of provisions.
<i>Fīmus</i> , -i, dung.	<i>Pontus</i> , -i, the sea.
<i>Hespérus</i> , -i, the evening-star.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ëris, dust.
<i>Līmus</i> , -i, slime.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -inis, blood.
<i>Méridies</i> , -iei, mid-day.	<i>Sópor</i> , -ōris, sleep.
<i>Mundus</i> , -i, a woman's ornaments.	<i>Viscus</i> , -i, bird-lime.
<i>Muscus</i> , -i, moss.	

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

<i>Argilla</i> , -æ, potter's earth.	<i>Sālus</i> , -utis, safety.
<i>Fāma</i> , -æ, fame.	<i>Sītis</i> , -is, thirst.
<i>Hūmus</i> , -i, the ground.	<i>Sūpellex</i> , -ctilis, household furniture.
<i>Lues</i> , -is, a plague.	<i>Tabes</i> , -is, a consumption.
<i>Plebs</i> , plēbis, the common people.	<i>Tellus</i> , -ūris, the earth.
<i>Pūbes</i> , -is, the youth.	<i>Vespēra</i> , -æ, the evening.
<i>Quies</i> , -ētis, rest.	

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

<i>Album</i> , -i, a list of names.	<i>Lātum</i> , -i, clay.
<i>Dilacūlum</i> , -i, the dawning of day.	<i>Nihil</i> , nihīlum, or nil, nothing.
<i>Ebur</i> , -ōris, ivory.	<i>Pēlagus</i> , -i, the sea.
<i>Ġēlu</i> , indecl. frost.	<i>Pēnum</i> , -i, and <i>penus</i> , -ōris, all kinds of provisions.
<i>Hilum</i> , -i, the black speck of a bean, a trifle.	<i>Sal</i> , sālis, salt.
<i>Iustitium</i> , -i, a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.	<i>Sēnium</i> , -i, old age.
<i>Lēthum</i> , -i, death.	<i>Ver</i> , vēris, the spring.
	<i>Virus</i> , -i, poison.

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

<i>Apollināres</i> , -ium, games in honour of Apollo.	<i>Olympia</i> , -ōrum, the Olympic games.
<i>Bacchanālia</i> , -ium, and -iōrum, the feasts of Bacchus.	<i>Syracusæ</i> , -ārum, Syracuse.
<i>Bacōlica</i> , -ōrum, a book of pastorals.	<i>Hierosolŷma</i> , -ōrum, Jerusalem ; or <i>Hierosolŷma</i> , -æ, of the first declension.

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

<i>Cancelli</i> , lattices or windows, made with cross-bars like a net ; a rail or balustrade round any place ; bounds or limits.	<i>Fasti</i> , -ōrum or <i>fastus</i> , -num, calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.
<i>Cani</i> , grey hairs.	<i>Fines</i> , -ium, the borders of a county, or a country.
<i>Casses</i> , -ium, a hunter's net.	<i>Fōri</i> , the gangways of a ship ; seats in the circus ; or the cells of a beehive.
<i>Cēlères</i> , -um, the light-horse	
<i>Cōdicilli</i> , writings.	
<i>Druides</i> , -um, the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.	
<i>Fasces</i> , -ium, a bundle of rods, car-	

Furfures, -um, <i>scabs in the head.</i>	Mīnōres, -um, <i>successors.</i>
Infēri, <i>the gods below.</i>	Natāles, -ium, <i>parentage.</i>
Lēmūres, -um, <i>hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.</i>	Postēri, <i>posterity.</i>
Libēri, <i>children.</i>	Prōcēres, -um, <i>the nobles.</i>
Majōres, -um, <i>ancestors.</i>	Pūgillāres, -ium, <i>writing-tables.</i>
Manes, -ium, <i>spirits of the dead.</i>	Sentes, -ium, <i>thorns.</i>
	Sūpēri, -ōm, & -ōrum, <i>the gods above</i>

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, -ium, <i>the Alps.</i>	Fēriæ, <i>holidays.</i>	Officiæ, <i>cheats.</i>
Angustiæ, <i>difficulties.</i>	Gades, -ium, <i>Cadiz.</i>	Opēres, <i>workmen.</i>
Apinæ, <i>gergones.</i>	Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>	Parietinæ, <i>ruinous walls.</i>
Argutiæ, <i>quirks, witticisms.</i>	Hyades, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>	Partes, -ium, <i>a party.</i>
Bigæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>	Induciæ, <i>a truce.</i>	Phalære, <i>trappings.</i>
Trigæ, —by three.	Induviæ, <i>clothes to put on.</i>	Plagæ, <i>nets.</i>
Quadrigæ, —by four.	Ineptiæ, <i>silly stories.</i>	Pleides, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>
Braccæ, <i>breeches.</i>	Insidiæ, <i>snare.</i>	Præstigiæ, <i>enchantments.</i>
Branchiæ, <i>the gills of a fish.</i>	Kalendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -um, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i>	Primitiæ, <i>first fruits.</i>
Charites, -um, <i>the three graces.</i>	Relliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>	Quisquilæ, <i>sweepings.</i>
Cunæ, <i>a cradle.</i>	Salebræ, <i>rugged places.</i>	Relliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>
Decimæ, <i>tithes.</i>	Salinæ, <i>salt-pits.</i>	Salebræ, <i>rugged places.</i>
Dire, <i>imprecations, the furies.</i>	Lapidinæ, <i>stone quarries.</i>	Scalæ, <i>a ladder.</i>
Divitiæ, <i>riches.</i>	Litræ, <i>an epistle.</i>	Scaberræ, <i>a spring.</i>
Dryades, -um, <i>the nymphs of the woods.</i>	Lactes, -ium, <i>the small guts.</i>	Scopæ, <i>a besom, a broom.</i>
Excubiæ, <i>watchers.</i>	Mānubiæ, <i>spoils taken in war.</i>	Tenebræ, <i>darkness.</i>
Exsequiæ, <i>funerals.</i>	Mīnæ, <i>threats.</i>	Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>
Exuvie, <i>spoils.</i>	Minutiæ, <i>little niceties.</i>	Thermopylæ, <i>straits of mount Eta.</i>
Faciæ, <i>pleasant sayings.</i>	Nagæ, <i>trifles.</i>	Tricæ, <i>toys.</i>
Facultates, -um, & -ium, <i>one's goods &amp; chattels.</i>	Nundinæ, <i>a market.</i>	Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>
	Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i>	Vergiliæ, <i>the seven stars.</i>
		Vindiciæ, <i>a claim of liberty, a defence.</i>

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, <i>public acts, or records.</i>	Cunabula, <i>a cradle, an origin.</i>
Æstiva, sc. castra, <i>summer quarters.</i>	Dictæria, <i>scoffs, witticisms.</i>
Arma, <i>arms.</i>	Extæ, <i>the entrails.</i>
Bellaria, -ōrum, <i>sweetmeats.</i>	Februa, -ōrum, <i>purifying sacrifices.</i>
Bona, <i>goods.</i>	Flabra, <i>blasts of wind.</i>
Brēvia, -ium, <i>shelves.</i>	Fragæ, <i>strawberries.</i>
Castra, <i>a camp.</i>	Hyberna, sc. castra, <i>winter quarters.</i>
Chæristia, -ōrum, <i>a peace-feast.</i>	Iliæ, -ium, <i>the entrails.</i>
Cibaria, <i>victuals.</i>	Incunabula, <i>a cradle.</i>
Cūmilia, <i>an assembly of the people, to make laros, elect magistrates, or hold trials.</i>	Insecta, <i>insects.</i>
Crēpundia, <i>children's baubles.</i>	Iusta, <i>funeral rites.</i>
	Lamenta, <i>lamentations.</i>
	Lautia, <i>provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.</i>

Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts.</i>	Principia, <i>the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
Magalia, -ium, <i>cottages.</i>	Pythia, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>
Mœnia, -ium, & -iŏrum, <i>the walls of a city.</i>	Rostra, <i>a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.</i>
Munia, -iŏrum, <i>offices.</i>	Scrŭta, <i>old clothes.</i>
Orgia, <i>the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>	Sponsalia, -ium, <i>espousals.</i>
Ovilia, -ium, <i>an enclosure where the people went to give their votes.</i>	Stativa, <i>sc. castra, a standing camp.</i>
Palæaria, -ium, <i>the dew-lap of a beast.</i>	Suŏvëtaurilia, -ium, <i>a sacrifice of a scine, a sheep, and an ox.</i>
Parapherna, <i>all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.</i>	Talaria, -ium, <i>winged shoes.</i>
Parentalia, -ium, <i>solemnities at the funeral of parents.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough places.</i>
Philtrea, <i>love potions.</i>	Transtra, <i>the seats where the rowers sit in ships.</i>
Præcordia, <i>the bowels.</i>	Utensilia, -ium, <i>utensils.</i>

☞ Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *litëra*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *laurûs*, a laurel tree; *sëquester*, -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mā-tëria*, -æ, or *materies*, -iëi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ëi, or contracted, *plebî*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tônitrus*, -ûs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pënus*, -i, and -ûs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ŏris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *ather*, -ëris, masc. and *athra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is or -idis, a tiger; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidëna*, -æ; or *Fidënaë*, -ârûm, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -idis; and *cassida*, -dæ, a helmet. So,

Acinus, & -um, <i>a grape-stone.</i>	Aphractus, & -um, <i>an open ship.</i>
Alvear, & -e, & -ium, <i>a bee-hive.</i>	Aplustre, & -um, <i>the flag, colours</i>
Amărăcus, & -um, <i>sweet marjoram.</i>	Bacûlus, & -um, <i>a staff.</i>
Ancile, & -ium, <i>an oval shield.</i>	Balteus, & -um, <i>a belt.</i>
Angîportus, -ûs, & -i, & -um, <i>a narrow lane.</i>	Batillus, & -um, <i>a fire-shovel.</i>
	Cápûlus, & -um, <i>a hilt.</i>

Capus, & -o, a capon	Mōnītum, & -us, -ū, an admonition.
Cepa, & -e, indecl. an onion.	Muria, & -es, -iei, brine or pickle.
Clypeus, & -um, a shield.	Nasus, & -um, the nose.
Collūvies, & -io, filth, dirt.	Obsidio, & -um, a siege.
Compāges, & -go, a joining.	Œstrus, & -um, a gad-bee.
Conger, & -grus, a large eel	Ostrea, & -um, an oyster.
Crōcus, & -um, saffron.	Peplus, & -um, a veil, a robe.
Cūbitus, & -um, a cubit.	Pistrīna, & -um, a bake-house.
Dilūvium, & -es, a deluge.	Prætextus, -ūs, & -um, a pretext.
Elēphantus, & Elēphas, -antis, an elephant.	Rāpa, & -um, a turnip.
Elēgus, & -ēia, an elegy.	Rūma, & -men, the cud.
Essēda, & -um, a chariot.	Ruscus, & -um, a brush.
Eventus, & -um, an event.	Seps, & sēpes, f. a hedge.
Fulgetra, & -um, lightning.	Segmen, & -mentum, a piece or paring.
Gālērū, & -um, a hat.	Sibīlus, & -um, a hissing.
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris or -ēri, a bunch, a swelling.	Sīnus, & -um, a milk-pail.
Glūtīnum, & -en, glue.	Spurcītia, & -es, nastiness.
Hebdōmas, & -āda, a week.	Strāmen, & -tum, straw.
Intrita, & -um, fine mortar, minced meat.	Suffīmen, & -tum, a perfume.
Librārium, & -a, a book-case.	Tīgnus, & -um, a plank.
Macēria, & -es, -iei, a wall.	Tōral, & -ale, a bed-covering.
Milliāre, & -ium, a mile.	Torcular, & -āre, a wine press.
	Viscus, & -um, bird-lime.
	Vēternus, & -um, a lethargy.

*Note.* The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *vāsa*, -ōrum, properly comes from *vāsum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

#### DIVISION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION AND DERIVATION.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercītus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *patronymic* noun; as,

*Prīdmīdes*, the son of *Prīamus*; *Ætīas*, the daughter of *Æetes*; *Nērīne*, the daughter of *Nereus*. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æācīdes*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æācus*; *Rōmūlīda*, the Romans, from their first king *Romulus*.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c.; pl. *-dæ*, *dārum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*; *Tyndāris*, *-īdis* or *-īdos*; *Jē-tias*, *-ādis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *patrial* or *gentile* noun; as,

*Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ādis*, a woman born at Troy; *Sicūlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-īdis*, a Sicilian woman; so, *Mācedo-ōnis*, *Arpinus*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, at Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Rōmānus*, *Athēnicnsis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *abstract*; as,

*justitia*, justice; *bōnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness, from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet.

The adjectives from which these abstracts come are called CONCRETES; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *diminutive*; as,

*libellus*, a little book; *chartūla*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corculum*, a little heart; *reticulūm*, a small net; *scābellum*, a small form; *lāpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little page: from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*, *lāpis*, *culter*, *pāgina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistūla*, *cistella*, *cistellūla*; from *hōmo*, *hōmuncio*, *hōmunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *us*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an AMPLIFICATIVE, and ends in *o*; as, *cāpito*, *-ōnis*, having a large head: so, *nāso*, *lābeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *verbal* noun; as,

*āmor*, love; *doctrīna*, learning; from *āmo*, and *dōceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *āmdtor*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creātūra*, a creature.

## ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *durus, hard*; *mollis, soft*.\*

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.†

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.)

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.)

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension :

<i>Acer, sharp.</i>	<i>Cēlāber, famous.</i>	<i>Pēdester, on foot.</i>
<i>Alācer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Cēler, swift. [a horse.</i>	<i>Sālubē, wholesome</i>
<i>Campester, belonging to a plain.</i>	<i>Equester, belonging to marshy.</i>	<i>Sylvester, woody.</i>
	<i>Pāluster, marshy.</i>	<i>Vōlūcer, swift.</i>

*Rule for the Gender of Adjectives.*

In adjectives of three terminations, the first is masc., the second fem., and the third neut. In those of two terminations, the first is masc. and fem., and the second neut. Adjectives of one termination are of all genders.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

*Bōnus, masc. bona, fem. bonum, neut. good.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. bōn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bōn-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bōn-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. bōn-o,	-æ,	-o,	D.	bon-is,	
A. bōn-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bōn-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bōn-o,	-ā,	-o.	A.	bon-is.	

*In like manner decline,*

<i>Acerbus, unripe, bitter.</i>	<i>Ægrōtus, sick.</i>	<i>Albus, white.</i>
<i>Acīdus, sour, tart.</i>	<i>Æmūlus, vying with.</i>	<i>Altus, high.</i>
<i>Acūtus, sharp.</i>	<i>Æquus, equal, just.</i>	<i>Amārus, bitter.</i>
<i>Adultērinus, counterfeit.</i>	<i>Ahēnus, of brass</i>	<i>Amānus, pleasant.</i>

\* We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

† An adjective properly has neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Ambiguus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Cunctus, <i>all.</i>	Gibbus, <i>convex.</i>
Amicus, <i>friendly.</i>	Curtus, <i>short.</i>	Gilvus, <i>flesh-coloured.</i>
Amplus, <i>large.</i>	Curvus, <i>crooked.</i>	Glaucus, <i>gray.</i>
Annus, <i>yearly.</i>	Cynicus, <i>churlish.</i>	Gnarus, <i>skilful.</i>
Angustus, <i>narrow.</i>	Dædalus, (poet.) <i>curiously made.</i>	Gnavus, <i>active.</i>
Antiquus, <i>ancient.</i>	Dēcōrus, <i>graceful.</i>	Grātus, <i>thankful.</i>
Apricus, <i>sunny.</i>	Densus, <i>thick.</i>	Hirsutus, <i>hirtus, rough.</i>
Aptus, <i>fit.</i>	Dignus, <i>worthy.</i>	Hispidus, <i>rugged.</i>
Arcanus, <i>secret.</i>	Dirus, <i>direful.</i>	Honestus, <i>honourable, honest.</i>
Arctus, <i>straight.</i>	Disertus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Hornus, <i>of this year.</i>
Arduus, <i>lofty.</i>	Diuturnus, <i>lasting.</i>	Hūmānus, <i>human, bi-</i>
Argutus, <i>quick, shrill.</i>	Doctus, <i>learned.</i>	longing to a man,
Assus, <i>roasted, hot, pure.</i>	Dūbius, <i>doubtful.</i>	humane, polite.
Astutus, <i>cunning.</i>	Durus, <i>hard.</i>	Hūmidus, <i>moist.</i>
Avārus, <i>covetous.</i>	Ebrius, <i>drunk.</i>	Idōneus, <i>fit.</i>
Avidus, <i>greedy.</i>	Effœtus, <i>past having young.</i>	Ignarus, <i>ignorant.</i>
Augustus, <i>venerable.</i>	Egenus, <i>poor.</i>	Ignāvus, <i>slightful.</i>
Austērus, <i>harsh, rough.</i>	Egrēgius, <i>remarkable.</i>	Imprūbus, <i>wicked.</i>
Balbus, <i>stammering.</i>	Elixus, <i>boiled.</i>	Incestus, <i>unchaste.</i>
Barbārus, <i>savage.</i>	Exiguus, <i>small.</i>	Inclŷtus, <i>renowned.</i>
Bardus, <i>dull, slow.</i>	Eximius, <i>excellent.</i>	Indīgus, <i>needy.</i>
Beatus, <i>blessed.</i>	Exōticus, <i>from a foreign country.</i>	Industrius, <i>diligent.</i>
Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>	Externus, <i>outward.</i>	Ineptus, <i>unfit.</i>
Bēnignus, <i>kind.</i>	Facētus, <i>witty.</i>	Infidus, <i>unfaithful.</i>
Bimū, <i>two years old.</i>	Facundus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Ingēnuus, <i>free-born.</i>
Blæsus, <i>lispings.</i>	Falsus, <i>false, lying.</i>	Inimicus, <i>unfriendly.</i>
Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>	Fāmēlicus, <i>furnished.</i>	Iniquus, <i>uneven, unjust</i>
Brūtus, <i>brutish, senseless.</i>	Fatuus, <i>foolish.</i>	Intentus, <i>intense, strait.</i>
Cādūcus, <i>fading.</i>	Faustus, <i>lucky.</i>	Invidus, <i>envious.</i>
Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>	Fērus, <i>wild, savage.</i>	Invitus, <i>unwilling.</i>
Callidus, <i>cunning.</i>	Fessus, <i>weary.</i>	Iracundus, <i>passionate.</i>
Calvus, <i>bald.</i>	Festinus, <i>hastening.</i>	Irātus, <i>angry.</i>
Cāmūrus, <i>crooked.</i>	Festus, <i>festival.</i>	Iritus, <i>fruitless, vain.</i>
Candīdus, <i>fair, sincere.</i>	Fidus, <i>faithful.</i>	Jejūnus, <i>fasting.</i>
Canus, <i>hoary.</i>	Finītimus, <i>neighbouring.</i>	Jucundus, <i>pleasant.</i>
Carus, <i>dear.</i>	Firmus, <i>firm, steady.</i>	Lætus, <i>joyful.</i>
Cassus, <i>void.</i>	Flaccus, <i>flap-eared.</i>	Lævus, <i>on the left hand.</i>
Castus, <i>chaste.</i>	Flāvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Largus, <i>large.</i>
Cautus, <i>wary.</i>	Fœdus, <i>ugly.</i>	Lascivus, <i>wanton.</i>
Cāvus, <i>hollow.</i>	Fœtus, <i>big with young.</i>	Lassus, <i>weary.</i>
Celsus, <i>high, lofty.</i>	Formōsus, <i>fair.</i>	Latus, <i>broad.</i>
Cernuus, <i>stooping.</i>	Frētus, <i>trusting.</i>	Laxus, <i>loose, slack.</i>
Certus, <i>certain, sure.</i>	Frivōlus, <i>trifling.</i>	Lentus, <i>slow, pliant.</i>
Clārus, <i>famous.</i>	Fulvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Lēpidus, <i>pretty, witty.</i>
Claudus, <i>lame.</i>	Furvus, <i>swarthy.</i>	Limpīdus, <i>clear, pure.</i>
Cœrūlus, or -eus, <i>azure, sky-coloured.</i>	Fuscus, <i>brown.</i>	Limū, <i>squinting.</i>
Commōdus, <i>convenient.</i>	Garrūlus, <i>prattling.</i>	Lippus, <i>blear-eyed.</i>
Concinnus, <i>fine, neat.</i>	Gēlidus, <i>cold as ice.</i>	Longinquus, <i>far off.</i>
Cōruscus, <i>glittering.</i>	Gēmīnus, <i>double.</i>	Longus, <i>long.</i>
Crassus, <i>thick.</i>	Germānus, <i>of the same stock, real.</i>	Lubricus, <i>slippery.</i>
Crēpērus, <i>doubtful.</i>		Lucidus, <i>bright.</i>
Crispus, <i>curled.</i>		Lurīdus, <i>pale, ghastly.</i>
Crūdus, <i>rare.</i>		Luscus, <i>blind of eye.</i>

<b>Mācilentus</b> , <i>lean.</i>	<b>Paulus</b> , <i>little.</i>	<b>Rōbustus</b> , <i>strong.</i>
<b>Māliguus</b> , <i>spiteful.</i>	<b>Pauci</b> , -cæ, -cæ, <i>few.</i>	<b>Rōscidus</b> , <i>deery.</i>
<b>Mancus</b> , <i>maimed, lame.</i>	<b>Pēritus</b> , <i>skilful.</i>	<b>Rōtundus</b> , <i>round.</i>
<b>Mānifestus</b> , <i>evident.</i>	<b>Pērfidus</b> , <i>treacherous.</i>	<b>Rōbūcundus</b> , <i>blushing.</i>
<b>Marcidus</b> , <i>rotten.</i>	<b>Perpētūus</b> , <i>continual.</i>	<b>Rufus</b> , <i>reddish.</i>
<b>Mēdius</b> , <i>mid or middle.</i>	<b>Perspicūus</b> , <i>evident.</i>	<b>Russus</b> , <i>of a carnation colour.</i>
<b>Mendicus</b> , <i>beggar-like.</i>	<b>Pius</b> , <i>pious.</i>	<b>Rūtīlus</b> , <i>fiery, red.</i>
<b>Menstruus</b> , <i>monthly.</i>	<b>Planus</b> , <i>plain.</i>	<b>Sævus</b> , <i>cruel.</i>
<b>Mērācus</b> , <i>without mixture.</i>	<b>Plēnus</b> , <i>full.</i>	<b>Sagus</b> , <i>knowing.</i>
<b>Mērus</b> , <i>pure.</i>	<b>Plērīque</b> , -æque, -æque, <i>the most part; sing. fein. pleræque.</i>	<b>Salsus</b> , <i>salted, smart.</i>
<b>Mirus</b> , <i>wonderful.</i>	<b>Posticus</b> , <i>on the back part of a house.</i>	<b>Salvus</b> , <i>safe.</i>
<b>Mōdestus</b> , <i>modest.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sanctus</b> , <i>holy.</i>
<b>Mœstus</b> , <i>sad.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sanus</b> , <i>sound.</i>
<b>Mōlestus</b> , <i>troublesome.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Saucius</b> , <i>wounded.</i>
<b>Mūrōsus</b> , <i>surly.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Scævus</b> , <i>left.</i>
<b>Mōrus</b> , <i>foolish.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Scambus</b> , <i>bow-legged.</i>
<b>Mūcidus</b> , <i>musty.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Seaurus</b> , <i>club-footed.</i>
<b>Mundus</b> , <i>neat.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sēcurus</b> , <i>secure, out of danger.</i>
<b>Mūtīlus</b> , <i>maimed, without horns</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sēdūlus</b> , <i>careful.</i>
<b>Mōtus</b> , <i>dumb.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sentus</b> , <i>rough.</i>
<b>Mūtūus</b> , <i>mutual, lent, or borrowed.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sērēnus</b> , <i>clear.</i>
<b>Nīmius</b> , <i>too much.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sērīus</b> , <i>carrest.</i>
<b>Noxius</b> , <i>hurtful.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sērus</b> , <i>late.</i>
<b>Nūdus</b> , <i>naked.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sēvērus</b> , <i>secrete, harsh</i>
<b>Nūntius</b> , <i>bringing news.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Siccus</b> , <i>dry.</i>
<b>Obēsus</b> , <i>fat, dull.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sīmus</b> , <i>flat-nosed.</i>
<b>Obliquus</b> , <i>crooked.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sīncērus</b> , <i>sincere, pure.</i>
<b>Obscēnus</b> , <i>obscene, ominous.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sītus</b> , <i>situate, placed.</i>
<b>Obscūrus</b> , <i>dark, mean.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sobrius</b> , <i>sober, temperate.</i>
<b>Obsōlētus</b> , <i>old, out of use.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sōcius</b> , <i>in alliance, a companion.</i>
<b>Obstipus</b> , <i>stiff, wry.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sōlidus</b> , <i>solid.</i>
<b>Obtūsus</b> , <i>blunt.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sordidus</b> , <i>dirty.</i>
<b>Odiōsus</b> , <i>hateful.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Spinōsus</b> , <i>prickly.</i>
<b>Opācus</b> , <i>dark, shady.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Spissus</b> , <i>thick.</i>
<b>Opīmūus</b> , <i>rich, fat.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Splēdidus</b> , <i>bright.</i>
<b>Opīpārus</b> , <i>costly, dainty.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Spūrius</b> , <i>base-born, not genuine.</i>
<b>Oppōrtūnus</b> , <i>seasonable.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Squalidus</b> , <i>nasty</i>
<b>Opūlentus</b> , <i>or -ens, rich.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sūlidus</b> , <i>foolish.</i>
<b>Orbus</b> , <i>destitute.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Strēnuus</b> , <i>active, stout.</i>
<b>Otiōsus</b> , <i>at leisure.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Strīgōsus</b> , <i>lean, lank.</i>
<b>Pētus</b> , <i>pink-eyed.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Stultus</b> , <i>foolish.</i>
<b>Pallidus</b> , <i>pale.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Stūpidus</b> , <i>stupid, dull.</i>
<b>Parcus</b> , <i>sparing.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sūbitus</b> , <i>sudden.</i>
<b>Patrīmūus</b> , <i>having father and</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Subsēcivus</b> , <i>cut off, or taken from other business.</i>
<b>Matrīmūus</b> , <i>mother alive.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sādus</b> , <i>fair, without clouds.</i>
<b>Pātīlus</b> , <i>wide, spreading.</i>	<b>Præditus</b> , <i>endued with.</i>	<b>Sūperbus</b> , <i>proud</i>

<i>Sûpius, lying on the back.</i>	<i>Truncus, maimed, want- ing.</i>	<i>Varus, bandy-legged.</i>
<i>Surdus, deaf.</i>	<i>Tumidus, swollen.</i>	<i>Vastus, huge.</i>
<i>Tacitus, silent.</i>	<i>Turbidus, muddy.</i>	<i>Vêgêtus, vigorous.</i>
<i>Tantus, so great.</i>	<i>Tatus, safe.</i>	<i>Vênustus, comely.</i>
<i>Tardus, slow.</i>	<i>Udus, wet.</i>	<i>Verbôsus, talkative.</i>
<i>Têmêrarius, rash.</i>	<i>Uncus, crooked.</i>	<i>Vêrêcundus, bashful.</i>
<i>Tempestivus, season- able.</i>	<i>Unicus, only.</i>	<i>Vernâculus, born in one's house.</i>
<i>Têmulentus, drunken.</i>	<i>Urbanus, courteous.</i>	<i>Vêrus, true.</i>
<i>Têpidus, lukewarm.</i>	<i>Vacivus, at leisure.</i>	<i>Vescus, fit for eating.</i>
<i>Timidus, fearful.</i>	<i>Vacuus, empty, void.</i>	<i>Vicinus, neighbouring</i>
<i>Torvus, stern.</i>	<i>Vagus, wandering.</i>	<i>Viduus, deprived.</i>
<i>Tranquillus, calm.</i>	<i>Valgus, bow-legged.</i>	<i>Viêtus, withered.</i>
<i>Trêpidus, trembling for fear.</i>	<i>Validus, strong.</i>	<i>Vividus, lively.</i>
<i>Trûculentus, cruel.</i>	<i>Vanus, vain, empty.</i>	<i>Vivus, alive.</i>
	<i>Vârius, various, differ- ent.</i>	

*Tëner, tenëra, tenërum, tender.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. tën-er,	-ëra,	-ërum,	N. ten-ëri,	-ëræ,	-ëra,
G. ten-ëri,	-ëræ,	-ëri,	G. ten-erôrum,	-erârum,	-erôrum
D. ten-ëro,	-ëræ,	-ëro,	D.	-ten-ëris,	
A. ten-ërum,	-ëram,	-ërum,	A. ten-ëros,	-ëras,	-ëra,
V. ten-er,	-ëra,	-ërum,	V. ten-ëri,	-ëræ,	-ëra,
A. ten-ëro,	-ërâ,	-ëro.	A.	-ten-ëris.	

*In like manner decline,*

<i>Asper, rough.</i>	<i>Gibber, crook-backed.</i>	<i>Miser, wretched.</i>
<i>Cæter, (hardly used) the rest.</i>	<i>Lacer, torn.</i>	<i>Prosper, prosperous.</i>
	<i>Liber, free.</i>	

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *lâniger*, bearing wool; *ôpifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sâtur*, *satûra*, *satûrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *âter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*, dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c. So,

<i>Æger, sick.</i>	<i>Mâcer, lean.</i>	<i>Sâcer, sacred.</i>
<i>Crêber, frequent.</i>	<i>Nîger, black.</i>	<i>Scâber, rough.</i>
<i>Glâber, smooth.</i>	<i>Pîger, slow.</i>	<i>Têter, ugly.</i>
<i>Intêger, entire.</i>	<i>Pulcher, fair.</i>	<i>Vâfer, crafty.</i>
<i>Ludicer, ludicrous.</i>	<i>Rûber, red.</i>	

*Dexter, right, has -tra, -trum, or -tëra, -tërum.*

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases, like *bonus* and *tener*.

<i>Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.</i>	<i>Nullus, nullius. none.</i>
<i>Alius, -ius, one of many, another.</i>	<i>Sôlus, -ius, alone.</i>
	<i>Tôtus, -ius, whole.*</i>

\* *Tôtus*, so great, is regularly declined.

Ullus, ius, *any*.Alter, altērius, *one of two, the other*.Uter, utrius, *either, whether of the two*.Neuter, -trius, *neither*.Uterque, utriusque, *both*.

Uterlibet, utriuslibet,	} <i>which of the two you please.</i>
Utervis, -triusvis,	

Alterūter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes aliterius utrius, altēri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *tōtus*, are called *partitīves*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum scdile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir*, or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Fēlix, masc. fem. and neut.; *happy*.

Singular.

Plural.

N.	fēlix,		N. felices,		felicia,
G.	feliciis,		G.	felicium,	
D.	felici,		D.	felicibus,	
A.	felicem,	fēlix,	A. felices,		felicia,
V.	fēlix,		V. felices,		fēlicia,
A.	felice, or -ci.		A.	felicibus.	

Prūdēns, m. f. and n. *prudent*.

Singular.

Plural.

N.	prūdēns,		N. prūdēntes,		prūdēntia,
G.	prudentis,		G.	prudentium,	
D.	prudenti,		D.	prudentibus,	
A.	prudentem,	prudens,	A. prūdēntes,		prudentia,
V.	prudens,		V. prudentes,		prudentia.
A.	prudente, or -ti.		A.	prudentibus.	

In like manner decline,

Amens, -tis, *mad*.Atrox, -ocis, *cruel*.Audax, -acis, & -ens, -tis, *bold*.Bilix, -icis, *woven with a double thread*.Capax, *capacious*.Cicur, -ūris, *tame*.Clemens, -tis, *merciful*.Contumax, *stubborn*.Dēmens, *mad*.Edax, *gluttonous*.Efficax, *effectual*.Elēgans, *handsome*.Fallax, *deceitful*.Fērax, *fertile*.Fērox, *fierce*.Frēquens, *frequent*.Ingens, *huge*.Iners, -tia, *sluggish*.Insons, *guiltless*.Mendax, *lying*.Mordax, *biting, satirical*.Pernix, -icis, *swift*.Pervicax, *wilful*.Pētūlans, *forward, saucy*.Pūgnans, *with child*.Rēcens, *fresh*.Rēpens, *sudden*.Sāgax, -acis, *sagacious*.

*Salax, -ācis, lustful.*  
*Sāpiens, wise.*  
*Sōlers, shrewd.*  
*Sons, guilty.*

*Tēnax, tenacious.*  
*Trux, -ūcis, cruel.*  
*Uber, -ēris, fertile.*  
*Vehēmens, vehement.*

*Vēlox, -ōcis, swift.*  
*Vōrax, devouring.*

*Mītis, masc. and fem.; mīte, neut.; meek.*

*Singular.*

N. mītis,	mīte,
G. mitis,	
D. miti,	
A. mitem,	mite,
V. mitis,	mite,
A. miti.	

*Plural.*

N. mītes,	mītia,
G. mitium,	
D. mitibus,	
A. mites,	mītia,
V. mites,	mītia,
A. mitibus	

In like manner decline,

*Agīlis, active.*  
*Amābilis, lovely.*  
*Biennis, of two years.*  
*Brēvis, short.*  
*Civilis, courteous.*  
*Cēlestis heavenly.*  
*Cōmis, mild, affable.*  
*Crūdēlis, cruel.*  
*Debīlis, weak.*  
*Dēformis, ugly.*  
*Dōcilis, teachable.*  
*Dulcis, sweet in taste.*  
*Exilis, slender.*  
*Exsanguis, bloodless.*  
*Fortis, brave.*  
*Frāgilis, brittle.*  
*Grandis, great.*  
*Grāvis, heavy.*  
*Hilāris, cheerful.*

*Ignōbilis, of mean par-  
 entage.*  
*Inmānis, huge, cruel.*  
*Inānis, empty.*  
*Incōlūmis, safe.*  
*Infānis, infamous.*  
*Insignis, remarkable.*  
*Jūgis, perpetual.*  
*Lēvis, smooth.*  
*Lēnis, gentle.*  
*Lēvis, light.*  
*Mēdiocris, middling.*  
*Mirābilis, wonderful.*  
*Mollis, soft.*  
*Omnis, all.*  
*Pinguis, fat.*  
*Putris, rotten.*  
*Quālis, of what kind.*

*Rādīs, raw.*  
*Sēgnis, slow.*  
*Sōlennis, annual, sol-  
 emn.*  
*Stērilis, barren.*  
*Suāvis, sweet.*  
*Sublimis, lofty.*  
*Subtilis, subtle, fine.*  
*Tālis, such.*  
*Tēnuis, small.*  
*Terrestris, earthly.*  
*Terrībilis, dreadful.*  
*Tristis, sad.*  
*Turpis, base.*  
*Utilis, useful.*  
*Vilis, worthless.*  
*Vīridis, green.*  
*Vitilis, pliant.*

*Mitior, masc. and fem.; mitius, neut.; compar. meeker.*

*Singular.*

N. mitior,	mitius,
G. mitiōris,	
D. mitiōri,	
A. mitiōrem,	mitius,
V. mitior,	mitius,
A. mitiōre, or -ri.	

*Plural.*

N. mitiōres,	mitiōra,
G. mitiōrum,	
D. mitioribus,	
A. mitiōres,	mitiōra,
V. mitiōres,	mitiōra,
A. mitioribus.	

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

*Acer* or *acris*, masc. *acris*, fem. *acre*, neut. *sharp*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>ā-acer</i> or <i>acris</i> ,	<i>acris</i> , <i>acre</i> ;	N.	<i>a-cres</i> ,	<i>a-cres</i> , <i>a-cria</i> ,
G.		<i>a-cris</i> ,	G.		<i>a-crium</i> ,
D.		<i>a-cri</i> ,	D.		<i>a-cribus</i> ,
A.	<i>a-crem</i> ,	<i>a-crem</i> , <i>a-cre</i> ,	A.	<i>a-cres</i> ,	<i>a-cres</i> , <i>a-cria</i> ,
V.	<i>a-acer</i> or <i>acris</i> ,	<i>a-cris</i> , <i>a-cre</i> ,	V.	<i>a-cres</i> ,	<i>a-cres</i> , <i>a-cria</i> ,
A.		<i>a-cri</i> .	A.		<i>a-cribus</i> .

In like manner *ālācer* or *alacris*, *cēler* or *celēris*, and the other adjectives included in the exception on page 66; which form exceptions also to the rule for the gender of adjectives on that page, having in the nom. and voc. sing. two terminations for the masculine.

#### RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvēnis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. singular, and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plural. *Compos*, -ōtis, master of, that has obtained his desire; *impos*, -ōtis, unable; *inops*, -ōpis, poor; *supplex*, -icis, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -ēris, fertile; *consors*, -tis, sharing, a partner; *dēgēner*, -ēris, degenerate or degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *pūber*, -ēris, of age, marriageable, and *cēler*. Also compounds in *ceps*, *fix*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -icis, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, -pēdis, two-footed; *bicorpor*, -ōris, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plural in the nominative and accusative. To which add *memor*, mindful, which has *memōri* and *memōrum*: also, *dēses*, *rēses*, *hēses*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēses*, *concōlor*, *versicōlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as *compāre* or -ri. *Vetus*, old, has *vetēra* and *vetērum*.

*Plus*, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	<i>plus</i> ,	N.	<i>plūres</i> , <i>plūra</i> & <i>plūria</i> ,
G.	<i>pluris</i> ,	G.	<i>plūrium</i> ,
D.	—	D.	<i>plūribus</i> ,
A.	<i>plus</i> ,	A.	<i>plūres</i> , <i>plūra</i> & <i>plūria</i> ,
V.	—	V.	—
A.	<i>plūre</i> , or <i>i</i> .	A.	<i>plūribus</i> .

Its compound, *compūres*, has no singular.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -e, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

## REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*, and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tibēio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*, as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plural, has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrices*, *victricia*: so, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frænum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *linus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, -e, and *declivus*, -a, -um, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnānimus*, *flexānimus*, *effrænus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnānimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillānimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillānimus*, &c. So, *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *denominatives*; as, *cordātus*, *mōrātus*, *cœlestis*, *ādāmantīnus*, *corpōrēus*, *agrestis*, *astivus*, &c.; from *cor*, *mos*, *cœlum*, *adāmas*, &c.

Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called *DIMINUTIVES*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called *AMPLIFICATIVES*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vinōsus*, *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *ōpērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *auritus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *litrātus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *possessive adjective*; as,

*Scoticus*, *pāternus*, *herilis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbals*; as, *amibilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *dooeo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acūtus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent

Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocātus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legātus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corōna*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decrētum*, *præceptum*, *sacrum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *adverbials*;

*as*, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*, &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; *as*, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The Cardinal or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	<i>one.</i>	1.	I.
Duo,	<i>two.</i>	2.	II.
Tres,	<i>three.</i>	3.	III.
Quatuor,	<i>four.</i>	4.	IV.
Quinque,	<i>five.</i>	5.	V.
Sex,	<i>six.</i>	6.	VI.
Septem,	<i>seven.</i>	7.	VII.
Octo,	<i>eight.</i>	8.	VIII.
Nōvem,	<i>nine.</i>	9.	IX.
Dēcem,	<i>ten.</i>	10.	X.
Undēcim,	<i>eleven.</i>	11.	XI.
Duodēcim,	<i>twelve.</i>	12.	XII.
Tredēcim,	<i>thirteen.</i>	13.	XIII.
Quatuordēcim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	14.	XIV.
Quindēcim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	15.	XV.
Sexdēcim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	16.	XVI.
Septendēcim.	<i>seventeen.</i>	17.	XVII.
Octodēcim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	18.	XVIII.
Novemdēcim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	19.	XIX.
Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	20.	XX.
Viginti unus, or }	<i>twenty-one.</i>	21.	XXI.
Unus et viginti, }			
Viginti duo, or }	<i>twenty-two.</i>	22.	XXII.
Duo et viginti, }			
Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>	30.	XXX.
Quadrāginta,	<i>forty.</i>	40.	XL.
Quinquaginta,	<i>fifty.</i>	50.	L.
Sexaginta,	<i>sixty.</i>	60.	LX.
Septuaginta,	<i>seventy.</i>	70.	LXX.
Octoginta,	<i>eighty.</i>	80.	LXXX.
Nonaginta,	<i>ninety.</i>	90.	XC.
Centum.	<i>a hundred.</i>	100.	C.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	<i>two hundred.</i>	200.	CC.

Trecenti, -æ, -a,	three hundred.	300.	CCC.
Quadringenti,	four hundred.	400.	CCCC.
Quingenti,	five hundred.	500.	D.
Sexcenti,	six hundred.	600.	DC.
Septingenti,	seven hundred.	700.	DCC.
Octingenti,	eight hundred.	800.	DCCC.
Nongenti,	nine hundred.	900.	DCCCC.
Mille,	a thousand.	1,000.	M.
Duo millia, or }	two thousand.	2,000.	MM
Bis mille,			
Decem millia, or }	ten thousand.	10,000.	XM
Decies mille,			
Viginti milia, or }	twenty thousand.	20,000.	XXM.
Vicies mille,			

A thousand was originally marked thus, CIO. which in latter times was contracted into M. Five hundred was marked thus, IO. or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of O. to IO. makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO. marks five thousand; and IOOO. fifty thousand.

The prefixing of C. together with the annexing of O. to the number CIO. makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIOO. denotes ten thousand; and CCCIOOO. a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIOOO. CCCIOOO. signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters; thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ . denotes three thousand;  $\overline{\text{X}}$ . ten thousand.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

*Unus* is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis ædibus*, in one house. Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. *Unæ nuptiæ*. Id. Andr. iv. 1. 51. *In una mœnia convenère*. Sallust. Cat. 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. Cic. Flacc. 29.

*Duo* and *tres* are thus declined :

<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,		tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G.	trium,	
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	D.	tribus,	
A. duos or duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,		tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,		tria,
A. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	A.	tribus.	

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable ; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus* ; thus, *ducenti*, -*tæ*, -*ta* ; *ducentōrum*, -*tūrum*, -*tōrum*, &c.

*Mille* is used either as a substantive or adjective ; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number, and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

*Mille*, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and, to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it ; thus, *mille homīnes*, a thousand men ; *mille homīnum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homīnes*, two thousand men ; *ter mille homīnes*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say, *mille homīnum*, a thousand men ; *duo millia homīnum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centēna millia homīnum* ; *decies centēna millia*, a million ; *vicies centēna millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *prīmus*, first ; *sēcundus*, second, &c. ; declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singŭli*, one by one ; *bīni*, two by two, or by twos, &c. ; declined like the plural of *bonus*.

4. The Multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple ; *duplex*, double, or two-fold ; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold ; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c. ; all of them declined like *felix* ; thus, *simplex*, -*icis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which these numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtuplex*.

*Quot*, how many ? is indeclinable : So *tot*, so many ; *tōtīdem*, just so many ; *quotquot*, *quotcunque*, how many soever ; *aliquot*, some.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
Primus, -a, -um.	Singŭli, -æ, -a.	Semel, <i>once</i> .
Sĕcundus.	Bini.	Bis, <i>twice</i> .
Tertius.	Terni.	Ter, <i>thrice</i> .
Quartus.	Quaterni.	Quāter, <i>four times</i>
Quintus.	Quini.	Quinquies, &c.
Sextus.	Sēni.	Sexies.
Septimus.	Septēni.	Septies.
Octāvus.	Octōni.	Octies.
Nōnus.	Nōvēni.	Nōvies.
Dĕcimus.	Dēni.	Dĕcies.
Undĕcimus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
Duodecimus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
Decimus tertius.	Trĕdēni, terni deni.	Tredecies.
Decimus quartus.	Quaterni deni.	Quatuordecies.
Decimus quintus.	Quindēni.	Quindecies.
Decimus sextus.	Seni deni.	Sexdecies.
Decimus septimus.	Septēni deni.	Decies ac septies
Decimus octāvus.	Octōni deni.	Decies ac octies.
Decimus nonus.	Novēni deni.	Decies et novies
Vigesimus, vicesi- mus.	Vicēni.	Vicies.
Vigesimus primus.	Vicēni singŭli.	Vicies semel.
Trigesimus, trice- simus.	Tricēni.	Tricies.
Quadragesimus.	Quadrāgēni.	Quadrāgies.
Quinquagesimus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
Sexagesimus.	Sexāgēni.	Sexagies.
Septuagesimus.	Septuāgēni.	Septuagies.
Octogesimus.	Octogēni.	Octōgies.
Nonagesimus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
Centesimus.	Centēni.	Centies.
Dūcentesimus.	Dūcēni.	Dūcenties.
Trĕcentesimus.	Trĕcentēni.	Trĕcenties.
Quadrīngentesimus.	Quāter centēni.	Quadrīngenties.
Quīngentesimus.	Quinquies centēni.	Quīngenties.
Sexcentesimus.	Sexies centēni.	Sexcenties.
Septīngentesimus.	Septies centēni.	Septīngenties.
Octīngentesimus.	Octies centēni.	Octīngenties.
Nōngentesimus.	Novies centēni.	Nōningenties.
Millesimus.	Millēni.	Millies.
Bis millesimus.	Bis millēni.	Bis millies

To the numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c.; as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c.; *duplus*, *tripplus*, &c.; *bimus*, *trimus*, &c.; *biennis*, *triennis*, &c.; *bimestris*, *trimestris*, &c.; *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c.; *bindarius*, *ternarius*, &c.; which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēndarius*, a verse of six feet; *dēndarius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogēndarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centēndarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *durus*, hard; *durior*, harder; *durissimus*, hardest.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *durior*, harder; *sapientior*, wiser.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *durissimus*, hardest; *sapientissimus*, wisest.

## FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive ending in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; thus, *altus*, high; gen. *alti*, by adding *or*, we have the comparative *altior*, for the masc. and fem.; and by adding *us*, *altius*, for the neut., higher: so, by adding *ssimus*, to the gen. *alti*, we have the superlative *altissimus*, -a, -um. So, *mitis*, meek, gen. *mitis*, dative *miti*; *mitior*, -us, meeker; *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed from the nominative by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension; the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altioris*, *altissimi*, &c.

## IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1. Bōnus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	pessīmus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maxīmus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minīmus,	small,	less,	least.
Mukus,	—	plūrimus,	much,	more,	most

*Fem.* Multa, plurīma; *neut.* multum, plus, plurīmum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurīmi; multæ, plures, plurīmæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maxīmus*, for *magnissīmus*; *worst* for *wordest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *līmus*:

Fācilis,	facilior,	facillīmus,	<i>easy.</i>	Imbecillī,	imbecillior,	imbecillīmus,	
Grācilis,	gracilior,	gracillīmus,	<i>lean.</i>			<i>weak.</i>	
Hūmilis,	humilior,	humillīmus,	<i>low.</i>	Similī,	similior,	simillīmus,	<i>like.</i>

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Cīter,	citerior,	citīmus,	<i>near, &amp;c.</i>	Mātūrus,	-ior,	maturrīmus or matu-	
Dexter,	dexterior,	dextīmus,	<i>right.</i>			rissīmus,	<i>ripe.</i>
Sīnister,	sinisterior,	sinistīmus,	<i>left.</i>	Postērus,	posterior,	postrēmus,	<i>be-</i>
Exter,-erior,	extīmus or extrēmus,		<i>outward.</i>			<i>hind.</i>	
Infērus,	-ior,	infīmus or īmus,	<i>below.</i>	Sūpērus,-rior,	suprēmus or summus,		
Intērus,	intērior,	intīmus,	<i>inward.</i>		<i>high.</i>		
				Vētus,	vētērior,	vēterrīmus,	<i>old.</i>

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lōquus*, *fīcus*, and *vōlus*, have *entior*, and *entissīmus*; as, *mālēdīcus*, railing; *mālēdicentior*, *maledicentissīmus*: So, *magnīlōquus*, one that boasteth; *bēnēfīcus*, beneficent; *mālēvōlus*, malevolent; *mīrīfīcus*, wonderful; *-entior*, *-entissīmus* or *mīrīficissīmus*. *Nēquam*, indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissīmus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

## 1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dētērior,	<i>worse,</i>	detrerrīmus.	Prōpior,	<i>nearer,</i>	proxīmus,	<i>near-</i>
Ociōr,	<i>swifter,</i>	ocissīmus		<i>est or next.</i>		
Prior,	<i>former,</i>	prīmus.	Ultērior,	<i>farther,</i>	ultīmus.	

## 2. The following want the comparative:

Inclýtus, inclýtissimus, <i>renowned</i> .	Növus, novissimus, <i>new</i> .
Mëritus, meritissimus, <i>deserving</i> .	Nüpërus, nuperrimus, <i>late</i> .
	Par, päriissimus, <i>equal</i> .
	Säcer, sacerrimus, <i>sacred</i> .

## 3. The following want the superlative:

Ädölescens, adolescentior, <i>young</i> .	Opïmus, opimior, <i>rich</i> .
Diüturnus, diuturnior, <i>lasting</i> .	Prönus, pronior, <i>inclined downwards</i> .
Ingens, ingentior, <i>huge</i> .	Sätur, satürior, <i>full</i> .
Jüvënis, junior, <i>young</i> .	Sënex, senior, <i>old</i> .

To supply the superlative of *jüvënis*, or *ädölescens*, we say *minïmus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maxïmus natu*, the oldest.

Most adjectives in *ilis*, *älis*, and *bëlis*, also want the superlative; as, *civïlis*, *civilior*, civil; *rëgälis*, *regulior*, regal; *flebilis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So, *juvëntilis*, youthful; *exilis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations. Thus, *arcänus*, *-ior*, secret; *declivis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

*Antërior*, former; *sëquior*, worse; *sätior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicölor*, of divers colours; *pestifer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *ivus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dübïus*, doubtful; *väcuus*, empty, *fugitivus*, that flieth away; *mätutinus*, early; *cänörus*, shrill; *lëgitimus*, lawful; *tënellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscülus*, &c.; together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-öcis*, soon or early ripe; *mirus*, *ëgënus*, *lëcer*, *mëmor*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde*, or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *ëgënus*, needy, *magis ëgënus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime ëgënus*, very, or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

## PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.\*

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ëgo*, *tu*, *sus*;

---

\* Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

*ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.*

Three of them are substantives, *ëgo, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

### Ego, I.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ego,	<i>I,</i>	N. nos,	<i>we,</i>
G. mei,	<i>of me,</i>	G. nostrũm, or nostri,	<i>of us,</i>
D. mihi,	<i>to me,</i>	D. nõbis,	<i>to us,</i>
A. me,	<i>me,</i>	A. nos,	<i>us,</i>
V. _____		V. _____	
A. me,	<i>with me.</i>	A. nobis,	<i>with us.</i>

### Tu, thou.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. tu,	<i>thou,</i>	N. vos,	<i>ye or you,</i>
G. tui,	<i>of thee,</i>	G. vestrũm, or vestri,	<i>of you,</i>
D. tibi,	<i>to thee,</i>	D. võbis,	<i>to you,</i>
A. te,	<i>thee,</i>	A. vos,	<i>you,</i>
V. tu,	<i>O thou,</i>	V. vos,	<i>O ye or you,</i>
A. te,	<i>with thee,</i>	A. vobis,	<i>with you.</i>

*Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.*

Singular.		Plural.	
N. _____		N. _____	
G. sui,	<i>of himself, of herself, of itself,</i>	G. sui,	<i>of themselves,</i>
D. sibi,	<i>to himself, to herself, &amp;c.</i>	D. sibi,	<i>to themselves,</i>
A. se,	<i>himself, &amp;c.</i>	A. se,	<i>themselves,</i>
V. _____		V. _____	
A. se,	<i>with himself, &amp;c.</i>	A. se,	<i>with themselves.</i>

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon him self, except as a second person; thus, we cannot say, *O ego, O I; O nos, O we.*

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrõrum* and *nostrũrum*; of *tu*, *vestrõrum* and *vestrũrum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrũm* and *vestrũm*.

We commonly use *nostrũm* and *vestrũm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he, she, it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic*, or *is*; as,

*Ille*, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neuter, that: or *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it or that: thus,

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,		N. illi,	illæ,	illa,	
G.	illius,*			G. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,	
D.	illi,			D.	illis,		
A. illum,	illam,	illud,		A. illos,	illas,	illa,	
V. ille,	illa,	illud,		V. illi,	illæ,	illa,	
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.		A.	illis.		

*Ipse*, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse*, has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

*Ipse* is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,		N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,	
G.	hujus,			G. horum,	harum,	horum,	
D.	huic,—			D.	his,		
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,		A. hos,	has,	hæc,	
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,		V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,	
A. hoc,	hac,	hoo.		A.	his.		

Is, ea, id; *he, she, it; or that*.

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
N. is,	ea,	id,		N. ii,	eæ,	ea,	
G.	ejus,			G. eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,	
D.	ei,			D.	iis, or eis,		
A. eum,	eam,	id,		A. eos,	eas,	ea,	
V. ———				V. ———			
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.		A.	iis, or eis.		

*Quis, quæ, quod or quid?* which, what? Or *quis?* who? or what man? *quæ?* who? or what woman? *quod or quid?* what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod or quid,		N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,	
G.	cujus,			G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,	
D.	cui,			D.	queis, or quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod or quid,		A. quos,	quas,	quæ,	
V. ———				V. ———			
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.		A.	queis, or quibus,		

\* In those cases where the word is not repeated, it is the same in all genders, both in the pronouns and adjectives.

*Qui, quæ, quod*, who, which, that; Or *vir quæ*, the man *who* or *that*; *fœmina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. —	cujus,	—	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. —	cui,	—	D. —	queis, or	quibus,
A. quem,	quem,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. quo,	quæ,	quo.	A. —	queis, or	quibus.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suis*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your; like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension; *noster*, -tra, -trum.

*Nostras*, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country; are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrâti*, dat. *nostrâti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which can not be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

*Meus* has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc

The relative *qui* has frequently *quæ* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

*Qui* is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their significations, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suis*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suis*.

## COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthac*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech ; as, *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, or *quicum*, and *quibuscum* : *eccum*, *eccam* ; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca* in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added ; as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egōmet*, *tūtmēt*, *sūtmēt*, through all the cases, thus, *meimēt*, *tūimēt*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tūtmēt* : *Hiccine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c* ; of *hic* and *cine* : *Mēdpte*, *tūdpte*, *sūdpte*, *nostrāpte*, *vestrāpte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meopte*, *tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte* : *hicce*, *hæcce*, *hocce* ; *hujusce*, *hisce*, *hosce* ; of *hic* and *ce* : whence *hujuscēmōdi*, *ejuscēmōdi*, *cujuscēmōdi*. So, *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

### Singular.

N. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,
G.	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	
D.	<i>eīdem</i> ,	
A. <i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,
V. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,
A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> .

### Plural.

N. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
G. <i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>earundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,
D.	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>or iīdem</i> ,
A. <i>eoīdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
V. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
A.	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>or iīdem</i> .

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

*Quis* in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded ; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are *quisnam*, Who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one ; *quisque*, every one ; *quisquis*, whosoever ; which are thus declined :

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
<i>Quisnam</i> , <i>quænam</i> , <i>quodnam</i> or <i>quidnam</i> ;	<i>cujusnam</i> ;	<i>cuīnam</i> ,
<i>Quispiam</i> , <i>quæpiam</i> , <i>quodpiam</i> or <i>quidpiam</i> ;	<i>cujuspiam</i> ;	<i>cuīpiam</i> ;
<i>Quisquam</i> , <i>quæquam</i> , <i>quodquam</i> or <i>quidquam</i> ;	<i>cujusquam</i> ;	<i>cuīquam</i> ;
<i>Quisque</i> , <i>quæque</i> , <i>quodque</i> or <i>quidque</i> ;	<i>cujusque</i> ;	<i>cuīque</i> ;
<i>Quisquis</i> , ——— <i>quidquid</i> or <i>quicquid</i> ;	<i>cujuscujus</i> ;	<i>cuīcui</i> .

And so in the other cases according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam* ; accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. ; and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some ; *equis*, who? of *et* and *quis* ; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*,

which for the most part are read separately; thus, *ne quis, si quis, num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Alīquis,	alīqua,	alīquod	or alīquid;	alicujus;	alicui;
Ecquis, ecqua	or ecquæ,	ecquod	or ecquid;	eccujus;	eccui;
Si quis,	si qua,	si quod	or si quid;	si cujus;	si cui;
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod	or ne quid;	ne cujus;	ne cui;
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod	or num quid;	num cujus;	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *unuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet, quisvis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque;		cujuscunque;	cuicunque;
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam;		cujusdam;	cuidam;
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet;		cujuslibet;	cuilibet;
Quisvis,	quævis,	quodvis or quidvis;		cujusvis;	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *quis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus, &c.*

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds, in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam, quandam, quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam, quarundam, quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod, quodvis, quoddam, &c.* are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid, quidvis, &c.* for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

Obs. 5. *Alīquis* and *Quidam* may be thus distinguished; the former denotes a person or thing *indeterminately*; the latter, *determinately*.

Obs. 6. *Uter* refers to two, and is therefore joined to comparatives.

Obs. 7. *Quis* may refer to many, and is therefore joined with superlatives.

Obs. 8. *Hic* and *Ille* are often found to refer to two words going before them. *Hic* usually to the latter; *Ille* to the former.

Obs. 9. As demonstratives, *Hic* refers to the person nearest to me; *Iste* to the person nearest to you; *Ille* to any intermediate person.

Obs. 10. *Ille* denotes honour; *Iste*, contempt; as, *ille vir; iste homo*.

Obs. 11. *Tuus* is used when we speak to one; as, *Summe, Corioldne, i tuis castris captiva an mater?* *Vester*, when we speak to more than one as, *Cives, miseremini celi vestri*.

Obs. 12. *Alter* is in general applied to one of two; *Alius* to one of many.

## VERB.\*

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest; &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love, *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambūlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistēre*, to stop; *incipēre*, to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c

---

\* It is called a *Verb* or *Word* by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation: but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -*ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs which simply signify *being* are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse*, or *existere*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amātus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-Imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object; whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice*, signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall or will love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecraret, redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter*.

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be; to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into *three parts*, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [*then*] be writing; *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, *yoked together*, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

## THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

Conjugation is the regular distribution of the various parts of verbs, according to the different voices, modes, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four conjugations of verbs in Latin; distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the infinitive mode.

The first conjugation makes *āre* long; as, *Amāre*

The second conjugation makes *ēre* long; as, *Docēre*.

The third conjugation makes *ere* short; as, *Legere*.

The fourth conjugation makes *īre* long; as, *Audire*.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds, thus *Circumdāre*, to surround; *circumdāmus*, *-dātis*, *-dābam*, *-dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense.

Conjugation.	Singular. Persons.			Plural. Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	1. -o,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
	4. -io,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1. -aham,	-abas,	-abat;	-abamus,	-abatis,	-abant.
2. -ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
3. -ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
4. -iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.

Future.

1. -abo,	-abis,	-abit;	-abimus,	-abitis,	-abunt.
2. -ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.
3. -am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
4. -iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Present Tense.

1. -em,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
2. -eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
3. -am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1. -arem,	-ares,	-aret;	-arēmus,	-arētis,	-arent.
2. -erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
3. -erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
4. -irem,	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-irent.

*Imperative Mode.*

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a or -ato,	-ato;	-ate or -atōte,	-anto.
2.	-e or -eto,	-eto;	-ete or -etōte,	-ento.
3.	-e or -yto,	-yto;	-yte or -ytōte,	-unto.
4.	-i or -ito,	-ito;	-ite or -itōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense.

1. -or,	-aris or -are,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-eris or -ere,	-etur;	-emur,	-emini,	-entur.
3. -or,	-eris or -ero,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-iris or -ire,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.

## Imperfect.

- |            |                      |           |           |            |            |
|------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. -abar,  | -ābaris or -ābare,   | -ābatur;  | -ābamur,  | -ābamīni,  | -ābantur.  |
| 2. -ēbar,  | -ēbaris or -ēbare,   | -ēbatur;  | -ēbamur,  | -ēbamīni,  | -ēbantur.  |
| 3. -ēbar,  | -ēbaris or -ēbare,   | -ēbatur;  | -ēbamur,  | -ēbamīni,  | -ēbantur.  |
| 4. -iēbar, | -iēbaris or -iēbare, | -iēbatur; | -iēbamur, | -iēbamīni, | -iēbantur. |

## Future.

- |           |                    |          |          |           |           |
|-----------|--------------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. -abor, | -āberis or -ābere, | -ābitur; | -ābimur, | -ābimīni, | -ābuntur. |
| 2. -ēbor, | -ēberis or -ēbere, | -ēbitur; | -ēbimur, | -ēbimīni, | -ēbuntur. |
| 3. -ar,   | -ēris or -ēre,     | -ētur;   | -ēmur,   | -ēmīni,   | -entur.   |
| 4. -iar,  | -iēris or -iēre,   | -iētur;  | -iēmur,  | -iēmīni,  | -ientur.  |

## Subjunctive Mode.

## Present Tense.

- |          |                  |         |         |          |          |
|----------|------------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. -er,  | -ēris or -ēre,   | -ētur;  | -ēmur,  | -ēmīni,  | -entur.  |
| 2. -ear, | -earis or -eare, | -eatur; | -eamur, | -eamīni, | -eantur. |
| 3. -ar,  | -āris or -āre,   | -atur;  | -amur,  | -amīni,  | -antur.  |
| 4. -iar, | -iāris or -iāre, | -iatur; | -iamur, | -iamīni, | -iantur. |

## Imperfect.

- |           |                    |          |          |           |           |
|-----------|--------------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. -ārer, | -ārēris or -ārēre, | -ārētur; | -ārēmur, | -ārēmīni, | -ārentur. |
| 2. -ērer, | -ērēris or -ērēre, | -ērētur; | -ērēmur, | -ērēmīni, | -ērentur. |
| 3. -ērer, | -ērēris or -ērēre, | -ērētur; | -ērēmur, | -ērēmīni, | -ērentur. |
| 4. -irer, | -irēris or -irēre, | -irētur; | -irēmur, | -irēmīni, | -irentur. |

## Imperative Mode.

- |                   |        |         |          |
|-------------------|--------|---------|----------|
| 2.                | 3.     | 2.      | 3.       |
| 1. -āre or -ātor, | -ātor; | -āmīni, | -antor.  |
| 2. -ēre or -ētor, | -ētor; | -ēmīni, | -entor.  |
| 3. -ēre or -ītor, | -ītor; | -īmīni, | -untor.  |
| 4. -īre or -ītor, | -ītor; | -imīni, | -iuntor. |

*Observe.* Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## Indicative Mode.

- | Singular.   |        |        | Plural.  |          |                 |
|-------------|--------|--------|----------|----------|-----------------|
| 1.          | 2.     | 3.     | 1.       | 2.       | 3.              |
| Perf. -i,   | -isti, | -it;   | -Imus,   | -istis,  | -ērunt or -ēre. |
| Plu. -ēram, | -ēras, | -ērat; | -ērāmus, | -ērātis, | -ērant.         |

## Subjunctive Mode.

- |              |         |         |           |           |          |
|--------------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| Perf. -ērim, | -ēris,  | -ērit;  | -ērīmus,  | -ērītis,  | -ērint.  |
| Plu. -issem, | -issem, | -isset; | -issēmus, | -issētis, | -issent. |
| rut. -ēro,   | -ēris,  | -ērit;  | -ērīmus,  | -ērītis,  | -ērint.  |

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated:

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.
Sum,	esse,	fui. To be.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am*

	Singular.	Plural.
Person. 1.	Sum, <i>I am,</i>	Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>
2.	Es, <i>Thou art, or you are,</i>	Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>
3.	Est, <i>He is;</i>	Sunt, <i>They are.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1.	Eram, <i>I was,</i>	Erāmus, <i>We were,</i>
2.	Eras, <i>Thou wast, or you were,</i>	Erātis, <i>Ye or you were,</i>
3.	Erat, <i>He was;</i>	Erant, <i>They were.</i>

PERFECT. *have been or was.*

1.	Fui, <i>I have been,</i>	Fuimus, <i>We have been,</i>
2.	Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i>	Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i>
3.	Fuit, <i>He has been;</i>	Fuērunt, or -ēre, <i>They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1.	Fuēram, <i>I had been,</i>	Fuerāmus, <i>We had been,</i>
2.	Fuēras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i>	Fuerātis, <i>Ye had been,</i>
3.	Fuērat, <i>He had been;</i>	Fuērant, <i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.\**

1.	Ero, <i>I shall be,</i>	Erīmus, <i>We shall be,</i>
2.	Eris, <i>Thou wilt be,</i>	Eritis, <i>Ye will be,</i>
3.	Erit, <i>He will be;</i>	Erunt, <i>They will be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

1.	Sim, <i>I may be,</i>	Sīmus, <i>We may be,</i>
2.	Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i>	Sitis, <i>Ye may be,</i>
3.	Sit, <i>He may be;</i>	Sint, <i>They may be.</i>

\* *Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time.

*Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "I *shall* go," "you *will* go;" express event only; but "*will* you go?" imports intention; and "*shall* I go?" refers to the will of another.

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i>       | Essēmus, <i>We might be,</i> |
| 2. Esses, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essētis, <i>Ye might be,</i> |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be;</i>      | Essent, <i>They might be</i> |

PERFECT. *may have.*

- |                                                    |                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuërim, <i>I may have been,</i>                 | Fuerimus, <i>We may have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fuëris, <i>Thou mayest have</i><br><i>been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuërit, <i>He may have been;</i>                | Fuërint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have; or had.*

- |                                                       |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been,</i>                 | Fuissēmus, <i>We might have</i>        |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest</i><br><i>have been,</i> | Fuissētis, <i>Ye might have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been;</i>                | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

FUTURE. *shall have.*

- |                                        |                                      |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuëro, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | Fuerimus, <i>We shall have been,</i> |
| 2. Fuëris, <i>Thou wilt have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye will have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuërit, <i>He will have been;</i>   | Fuërint, <i>They will have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MODE.

- |                                |                                          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 2. Es or esto, <i>Be thou,</i> | Este or Estôte, <i>Be ye, or be you.</i> |
| 3. Esto, <i>Let him be;</i>    | Sunto, <i>Let them be.</i>               |

INFINITIVE MODE.

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| PRES. Esse,                 | To be,                    |
| PERF. Fuisse,               | To have been,             |
| FUT. Esse futūrus, -a, -um, | To be about to be,        |
| Fuisse futūrus, -a, um,     | To have been about to be. |

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus*, we are; &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love; &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be; &c. So, *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amābas*, thou lovedst, or you loved; &c.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Ind. Pres. Inf. Perf. Ind. Supine.*  
 Amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum. *To love.*

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love, or am loving.*

*Sing. Am-o, I love, Plur. Am-āmus, We love,*  
*Am-as, Thou lovest, Am-ātis, Ye or you love,*  
*Am-at, He loves; Am-ant, They love.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

*Sing. Am-ābam, I was loving,*  
*Am-ābas, Thou wast loving,*  
*Am-ābat, He was loving;*  
*Plur. Am-abāmus, We were loving,*  
*Am-abātis, Ye or you were loving,*  
*Am-ābant, They were loving.*

PERFECT. *have.*

*Sing. Am-āvi, I have loved,*  
*Am-avisti, Thou hast loved,*  
*Am-āvit, He has loved;*  
*Plur. Am-avimus, We have loved,*  
*Am-avistis, Ye or you have loved,*  
*Am-avērunt or -avēre, They have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

*Sing. Am-avēram, I had loved,*  
*Am-avēras, Thou hadst loved,*  
*Am-avērat, He had loved;*  
*Plur. Am-averāmus, We had loved,*  
*Am-averātis, Ye or you had loved,*  
*Am-avērant, They had loved.*

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

*Sing. Am-abo, I shall love,*  
*Am-ābis, Thou wilt love,*  
*Am-ābit, He will love;*  
*Plur. Am-abimus, We shall love,*  
*Am-abitis, Ye or you will love,*  
*Am-ābunt, They will love.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
Am-et,	<i>He may love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
Am-ētis,	<i>Ye or you may love,</i>
Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
Am-āres,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
Am-ārct,	<i>He might love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
Am-arētis,	<i>Ye or you might love,</i>
Am-ārent,	<i>They might love.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
Am-avēris,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
Am-avērit,	<i>He may have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-averimus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
Am-averitis,	<i>Ye or you may have loved,</i>
Am-avērint,	<i>They may have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
Am-avissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have loved,</i>
Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-avēro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
Am-avēris,	<i>Thou wilt have loved,</i>
Am-avērit,	<i>He will have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-averimus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
Am-averitis,	<i>Ye or you will have loved,</i>
Am-avērint,	<i>They will have loved</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	Am-a or am-âto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3.	Am-âto,	<i>Let him love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2.	Am-âte or am-atôte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
3.	Am-anto,*	<i>Let them love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i>	Am-âre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>PERF.</i>	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Esse amatûrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
	Fuisse amatûrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i>	Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Am-atûrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Am-andi,	<i>Of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>To loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Former</i>	Am-âtum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i>	Am-âtu,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	amo	amem	ama	amâre	amans
<i>Imperf.</i>	amābam	amārem			
<i>Perf.</i>	amāvi	amavērim		amavisse	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	amavēram	amavissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	amābo	amavēro		esse or fuisse amatûrus	amatûrus

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Amor,	amāri,	amātus.	<i>To be loved</i>

\* The form of the present subjunctive is often used for the imperative in the first and third person : *as, amēmus*, let us love : *ament*, let them love.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
Am-āris or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
Am-ātur,	<i>He is loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
Am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
Am-antur,	<i>They are loved</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
Am-abāris or -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
Am-abātur,	<i>He was loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye or you were loved,</i>
Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
Amātus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
Amātus est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti sumus or fuīmus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
Amāti, estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been loved,</i>
Amāti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
Amātus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
Amātus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been loved,</i>
Amāti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been loved,</i>
Amāti erant or fuerant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
Am-abēris or -abēre,	<i>Thou wilt be loved,</i>
Am-abitur,	<i>He will be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-abimur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
Am-abimīni,	<i>Ye or you will be loved,</i>
Am-abuntur,	<i>They will be loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-er,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
Am-ēris or -ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved,</i>
Am-ētur,	<i>He may be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved,</i>
Am-emīni,	<i>Ye or you may be loved,</i>
Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved,</i>
Am-arēris or -arēre,	<i>Thou mightest be loved,</i>
Am-arētur,	<i>He might be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-arēmur,	<i>We might be loved,</i>
Am-areminī,	<i>Ye or you might be loved,</i>
Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
Amātus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been loved,</i>
Amātus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
Amāti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been loved,</i>
Amāti sint or fuērint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>S.</i> Amātus essem or fuissem,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
Amātus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved,</i>
Amātus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved;</i>
<i>P.</i> Amāti essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
Amāti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been loved</i>
Amāti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amātus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
Amātus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been loved,</i>
Amātus fuērit,	<i>He will have been loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
Amāti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been loved,</i>
Amāti fuērint,	<i>They will have been loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre, or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amīni,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Am-āri,	<i>To be loved,</i>
PERF. Esse or fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
FUT. Amātum iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Am-ātus, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
FUT. Am-andus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	amor	amer	amāre	amāri	
<i>Imperf.</i>	amābar	amārer			
<i>Perf.</i>	amātus sum or fui	amātus sim or fuërim		esse or fuisse amātus	amātus
<i>Pluperf.</i>	amātus eram or fuëram	amātus essem or fuissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	amābor	amātus fuë- ro		amātum iri	amandus

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Dōcēo,	dōcēre,	dōcui,	doctum.	<i>To teach.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach, or am teaching.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Doc-ēo,	<i>I teach,</i>
	Doc-es,	<i>Thou teachest, or you teach,</i>
	Doc-et,	<i>He teaches;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Doc-ēmus,	<i>We teach,</i>
	Doc-ētis,	<i>Ye or you teach,</i>
	Doc-ent,	<i>They teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Doc-ēbam,	<i>I was teaching,</i>
	Doc-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast teaching,</i>
	Doc-ēbat,	<i>He was teaching;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Doc-ebāmus,	<i>We were teaching,</i>
	Doc-ebatis,	<i>Ye or you were teaching,</i>
	Doc-ēbant	<i>They were teaching</i>

PERFECT *have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-ui,	<i>I have taught,</i>
Doc-uisti,	<i>Thou hast taught,</i>
Doc-uit,	<i>He has taught ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uīmus,	<i>We have taught,</i>
Doc-uistis,	<i>Ye or you have taught,</i>
Doc-uērunt or -uēre,	<i>They have taught</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uēram,	<i>I had taught,</i>
Doc-uēras,	<i>Thou hadst taught,</i>
Doc-uērat,	<i>He had taught ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uērāmus,	<i>We had taught,</i>
Doc-uērātis,	<i>Ye or you had taught,</i>
Doc-uērant,	<i>They had taught</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-ēbo,	<i>I shall teach,</i>
Doc-ēbis,	<i>Thou wilt teach,</i>
Doc-ēbit,	<i>He will teach ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-ēbimus,	<i>We shall teach,</i>
Doc-ēbītis,	<i>Ye or you will teach,</i>
Doc-ēbunt,	<i>They will teach</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-eam,	<i>I may teach,</i>
Doc-eas,	<i>Thou mayest teach,</i>
Doc-eat,	<i>He may teach ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-eāmus,	<i>We may teach,</i>
Doc-eātis,	<i>Ye or you may teach,</i>
Doc-eant,	<i>They may teach.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-ērem,	<i>I might teach,</i>
Doc-ēres,	<i>Thou mightest teach,</i>
Doc-ēret,	<i>He might teach ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-erēmus,	<i>We might teach,</i>
Doc-erētis,	<i>Ye or you might teach,</i>
Doc-ērent,	<i>They might teach.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uërim,	<i>I may have taught,</i>
Doc-uëris,	<i>Thou mayest have taught,</i>
Doc-uërit,	<i>He may have taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uërimus,	<i>We may have taught,</i>
Doc-uëritis,	<i>Ye or you may have taught</i>
Doc-uërint,	<i>They may have taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uissēm,	<i>I might have taught,</i>
Doc-uisses,	<i>Thou mightest have taught,</i>
Doc-uisset,	<i>He might have taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uissēmus,	<i>We might have taught,</i>
Doc-uissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have taught</i>
Doc-uissent,	<i>They might have taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-uëro,	<i>I shall have taught,</i>
Doc-uëris,	<i>Thou wilt have taught,</i>
Doc-uërit,	<i>He will have taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-uërimus,	<i>We shall have taught,</i>
Doc-uëritis,	<i>Ye or you will have taught,</i>
Doc-uërint,	<i>They will have taught.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Doc-e or doc-ëto,	<i>Teach thou,</i>
3. Doc-ëto,	<i>Let him teach;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Doc-ëte or doc-etôte,	<i>Teach ye or you,</i>
3. Doc-ënto,	<i>Let them teach</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i> Doc-ëre,	<i>To teach.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Doc-uisse,	<i>To have taught.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to teach</i>
Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to teach.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRÉS.</i> Doc-ens,	<i>Teaching.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to teach.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i> Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Doc-endi,	<i>Of teaching,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Doc-endo,	<i>To teaching,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Doc-endum,	<i>Teaching,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Doc-endo,	<i>With teaching.</i>

## SUPINES.

*Former.* Doc-tum,*To teach.**Latter.* Doc-tu,*To teach, or to be taught.*

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	doceo	doceam	doce	docēre	docens
<i>Imperf.</i>	docēbam	docērem			
<i>Perf.</i>	docui	docuērim		docuisse	
<i>Plupest.</i>	docuēram	docuissē			
<i>Fut.</i>	docēbo	docuēro		esse or fuisse	doctūrus
				doctūrus	

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Indic.*

Dōcēor,

*Pres. Infin.*

dōcēri,

*Perf. Part.*doctus. *To be taught.*

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.**Sing.* Doc-ēor,

Doc-ēris or doc-ēre,

Doc-ētur,

*Plur.* Doc-ēmur,

Doc-emini,

Doc-entur,

*I am taught,**Thou art taught,**He is taught;**We are taught,**Ye or you are taught,**They are taught.*IMPERFECT. *was.**Sing.* Doc-ēbar,

Doc-ebāris or doc-ebāre,

Doc-ebātur,

*Plur.* Doc-ebāmur,

Doc-ebamini,

Doc-ebantur,

*I was taught,**Thou wast taught,**He was taught;**We were taught,**Ye or you were taught,**They were taught.*PERFECT. *have been, was, or am.**Sing.* Doctus sum or fui,

Doctus es or fuisti,

Doctus est or fuit,

*Plur.* Docti sumus or fuimus,

Docti estis or fuistis,

Docti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,

*I have been taught,**Thou hast been taught,**He has been taught;**We have been taught,**Ye or you have been taught,**They have been taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doctus eram or fuëram,	<i>I had been taught,</i>
Doctus eras or fuëras,	<i>Thou hadst been taught,</i>
Doctus erat or fuërat,	<i>He had been taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Docti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been taught,</i>
Docti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been taught,</i>
Docti erant or fuërant,	<i>They had been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-ēbor,	<i>I shall be taught,</i>
Doc-ebēris or -ebēre,	<i>Thou wilt be taught,</i>
Doc-ebitur,	<i>He will be taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-ebimur,	<i>We shall be taught,</i>
Doc-ebimini,	<i>Ye or you will be taught,</i>
Doc-ebuntur,	<i>They will be taught.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-ear,	<i>I may be taught,</i>
Doc-eāris or -eāre,	<i>Thou mayest be taught,</i>
Doc-eātur,	<i>He may be taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-eāmur,	<i>We may be taught,</i>
Doc-eamini,	<i>Ye or you may be taught,</i>
Doc-eantur,	<i>They may be taught.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doc-ērer,	<i>I might be taught,</i>
Doc-erēris or -erēre,	<i>Thou mightest be taught,</i>
Doc-erētur,	<i>He might be taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Doc-erēmur,	<i>We might be taught,</i>
Doc-eremini,	<i>Ye or you might be taught,</i>
Doc-erentur,	<i>They might be taught.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Doctus sim or fuërim,	<i>I may have been taught,</i>
Doctus sis or fuëris,	<i>Thou mayest have been taught,</i>
Doctus sit or fuërit,	<i>He may have been taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Docti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been taught,</i>
Docti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been taught,</i>
Docti sint or fuërint,	<i>They may have been taught.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>S.</i> Doctus essem or fuissem,	<i>I might have been taught,</i>
Doctus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been taught,</i>
Doctus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been taught;</i>
<i>P.</i> Docti essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been taught,</i>
Docti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been taught,</i>
Docti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been taught.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Doctus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been taught,</i>
	Doctus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been taught,</i>
	Doctus fuërit,	<i>He will have been taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Docti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been taught,</i>
	Docti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been taught,</i>
	Docti fuërint,	<i>They will have been taught.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Doc-ëre or doc-ëtor,	<i>Be thou taught,</i>
	3. Doc-ëtor,	<i>Let him be taught;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Doc-emini,	<i>Be ye taught,</i>
	3. Doc-entor,	<i>Let them be taught.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-ëri,	<i>To be taught.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse or fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been taught.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Doctum iri,	<i>To be about to be taught.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Taught.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be taught.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	doceor	docear	docëre	docëri	
<i>Imperf.</i>	docëbar	docërer			
<i>Perf.</i>	doctus sum or fui	doctus sim or fuërim		esse or fuisse doctus	doctus
<i>Pluperf.</i>	doctus eram or fuëram	doctus essem or fuissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	docëbor	doctus fuë- ro		doctum iri	docendus

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Lëgo,	lëgëre,	lëgi,	lectum.	<i>To read.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read, or am reading.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Leg-o,	<i>I read,</i>
	Leg-is,	<i>Thou readest,</i>
	Leg-it,	<i>He reads;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Leg-imus,	<i>We read,</i>
	Leg-itis,	<i>Ye or you read,</i>
	Leg-unt,	<i>They read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ēbam,	<i>I was reading,</i>
Leg-ēbas,	<i>Thou wast reading,</i>
Leg-ēbat,	<i>He was reading;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-ebāmus,	<i>We were reading,</i>
Leg-ebātis,	<i>Ye or you were reading,</i>
Leg-ēbant,	<i>They were reading.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Lēg-i,	<i>I have read,</i>
Leg-isti,	<i>Thou hast read,</i>
Lēg-it,	<i>He has read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-īmus,	<i>We have read,</i>
Leg-istis,	<i>Ye or you have read,</i>
Leg-ērunt or -ēre,	<i>They have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ēram,	<i>I had read,</i>
Leg-ēras,	<i>Thou hadst read,</i>
Leg-ērat,	<i>He had read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-erāmus,	<i>We had read,</i>
Leg-erātis,	<i>Ye or you had read</i>
Leg-ērant,	<i>They had read</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-am,	<i>I shall read,</i>
Leg-es,	<i>Thou wilt read,</i>
Leg-et,	<i>He will read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-ēmus,	<i>We shall read,</i>
Leg-ētis,	<i>Ye or you will read,</i>
Leg-ent,	<i>They will read.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-am,	<i>I may read,</i>
Leg-as,	<i>Thou mayest read,</i>
Leg-at,	<i>He may read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-āmus,	<i>We may read,</i>
Leg-ātis,	<i>Ye or you may read,</i>
Leg-ant,	<i>They may read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ērem,	<i>I might read,</i>
Leg-ēres,	<i>Thou mightest read,</i>
Leg-eret,	<i>He might read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-erēmus,	<i>We might read,</i>
Leg-erētis,	<i>Ye or you might read,</i>
Leg-ērent,	<i>They might read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ërim,	<i>I may have read,</i>
Leg-ëris,	<i>Thou mayest have read,</i>
Leg-ërit,	<i>He may have read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-erîmus,	<i>We may have read,</i>
Leg-erîtis,	<i>Ye or you may have read,</i>
Leg-ërint,	<i>They may have read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-issem,	<i>I might have read,</i>
Leg-isses,	<i>Thou mightest have read,</i>
Leg-isset,	<i>He might have read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-issêmus,	<i>We might have read,</i>
Leg-issêtis,	<i>Ye or you might have read,</i>
Leg-issent,	<i>They might have read</i>

FUTURE. *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ëro,	<i>I shall have read,</i>
Leg-ëris,	<i>Thou wilt have read,</i>
Leg-ërit,	<i>He will have read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-erîmus,	<i>We shall have read,</i>
Leg-erîtis,	<i>Ye or you will have read,</i>
Leg-ërint,	<i>They will have read.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Lëg-e or leg-ïto,	<i>Read thou,</i>
3. Leg-ïto,	<i>Let him read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Leg-ïte or leg-itôte,	<i>Read ye or you,</i>
3. Leg-unto,	<i>Let them read.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i> Leg-ëre,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Lëg-isse,	<i>To have read.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Esse lectûrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to read.</i>
Fuisse lectûrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to read.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i> Leg-ens,	<i>Reading.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Lec-tûrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to read.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i> Leg-endum,	<i>Reading,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Leg-endi,	<i>Of reading,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Leg-endo,	<i>To reading,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Leg-endum,	<i>Reading,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Leg-endo,	<i>With reading.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Former</i> Lec-tum,	<i>To read.</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Lec-tu,	<i>To read to be read.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	lego	legam	lege	legere	legens
<i>Imperf.</i>	legēbam	legērem			
<i>Perf.</i>	lēgi	legērim		legisse	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	legēram	legissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	legam	legéro		esse or fuisse lecturus	lecturus.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Lēgor,	lēgi,	lectus. <i>To be read.</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Leg-or, Leg-ēris or -ēre, Leg-itur,	<i>I am read, Thou art read, He is read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Leg-īmur, Leg-īmīni, Leg-untur,	<i>We are read, Ye or you are read, They are read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Leg-ēbar, Leg-ebāris or -ebāre, Leg-ebātur,	<i>I was read, Thou wast read, He was read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Leg-ebāmur, Leg-ebamīni, Leg-ebantur,	<i>We were read, Ye or you were read, They were read.</i>

PERFECT. *have been, was or am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Lectus sum or fui, Lectus es or fuisti, Lectus est or fuit,	<i>I have been read, Thou hast been read, He has been read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lecti sumus or fuīmus, Lecti estis or fuistis, Lecti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>We have been read, Ye or you have been read, They have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Lectus eram or fuēram, Lectus eras or fuēras, Lectus erat or fuērat,	<i>I had been read, Thou hadst been read, He had been read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lecti erāmus or fuerāmus, Lecti erātis or fuerātis, Lecti erant or fuērunt,	<i>We had been read, Ye or you had been read, They had been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ar,	<i>I shall be read,</i>
Leg-ēris or -ēre,	<i>Thou wilt be read,</i>
Leg-ētur,	<i>He will be read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-ēmur,	<i>We shall be read,</i>
Leg-emīni,	<i>Ye or you will be read,</i>
Leg-entur,	<i>They will be read</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ar,	<i>I may be read,</i>
Leg-āris, or -āre,	<i>Thou mayest be read,</i>
Leg-ātur,	<i>He may be read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-āmur,	<i>We may be read,</i>
Leg-amīni,	<i>Ye or you may be read,</i>
Leg-antur,	<i>They may be read.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Leg-ērer,	<i>I might be read,</i>
Leg-erēris or -erēre,	<i>Thou mightest be read,</i>
Leg-erētur,	<i>He might be read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Leg-erēmur,	<i>We might be read,</i>
Leg-eremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be read,</i>
Leg-erentur,	<i>They might be read.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Lectus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been read,</i>
Lectus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been read,</i>
Lectus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Lecti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been read,</i>
Lecti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been read,</i>
Lecti sint or fuērint,	<i>They may have been read.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>S.</i> Lectus essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been read,</i>
Lectus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been read,</i>
Lectus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been read;</i>
<i>P.</i> Lecti essemus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been read,</i>
Lecti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been read,</i>
Lecti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been read.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Lectus fuëro,	<i>I shall have been read,</i>
	Lectus fuëris,	<i>Thou wilt have been read,</i>
	Lectus fuërit,	<i>He will have been read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lecti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been read,</i>
	Lecti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been read,</i>
	Lecti fuërint,	<i>They will have been read.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Leg-ere or -itor,	<i>Be thou read,</i>
	3. Leg-itor,	<i>Let him be read;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Leg-imini,	<i>Be ye read,</i>
	3. Leg-untor,	<i>Let them be read.</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<b>PRES.</b>	Leg-i,	<i>To be read.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Esse or fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been read.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Lectum iri,	<i>To be about to be read</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PERF.</b>	Lec-tus, -a, -um,	<i>Read.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Leg-endus, -a, -um,	<i>To be read.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	legor	legar	legere	legi	
<i>Imperf.</i>	legëbar	legërer			
<i>Perf.</i>	lectus sum or fui	lectus sim or fuërim		esse or fuisse lectus	lectus
<i>Pluperf.</i>	lectus eram or fuëram	lectus essem or fuissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	legar	lectus fuëro		lectum iri	legendus.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Capio,	capere,	cëpi,	captum.	<i>To take</i>

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Capio,	Capimus,
Capis,	Capitis,
Capit;	Capiunt
<i>Imperfect.</i>	
Capiëbam,	Capiëbamus,
Capiëbas,	Capiëbātis,
Capiëbat	Capiëbant.

## PERFECT.

*Singular.*

Cepi,  
Cepisti,  
Cepit;

*Plural.*

Cepīmus, ,  
Cepistis,  
Cepērunt, or cepēre.

## PLUPERFECT.

Cepēram,  
Cepēras,  
Cepērat;

Ceperāmus,  
Ceperātis,  
Cepērant.

## FUTURE.

Capiam,  
Capiēs,  
Capiet;

Capiēmus,  
Capiētis,  
Capiant.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Capiam,  
Capias,  
Capiat;

Capiāmus,  
Capiātis,  
Capiant.

## IMPERFECT.

Capērem,  
Capēres,  
Capēret;

Caperēmus  
Caperētis,  
Capērent.

## PERFECT.

Cepērim,  
Cepēris,  
Cepērit;

Ceperīmus,  
Ceperitis,  
Cepērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

Cepissem,  
Cepisses,  
Cepisset;

Cepissēmus,  
Cepissētis,  
Cepissent.

## FUTURE.

Cepēro,  
Cepēris,  
Cepērit;

Ceperīmus,  
Ceperitis,  
Cepērint.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Cape or capīto,  
3. Capīto;

2. Capīte or capitōte,  
3. Capiunto.

## INFINITIVE MODE.

**Pres.** Capēre,  
**Perf.** Cepisse.

**Fut.** Esse captūrus, -a, -um.  
Fuisse captūrus, -a, -um.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. *Capiens.* FUTURE. *Captūrus.*

## GERUNDS.

*Nom.* *Capiendum,* *Acc.* *Capiendum,*  
*Gen.* *Capiendi,* *Abl.* *Capiendo.*  
*Dat.* *Capiendo,*

## SUPINES.

*Former.* *Captum.* *Latter.* *Captu.*

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*Pres. Indic.* *Pres. Infin.* *Perf. Part.*  
*Capior,* *Capi,* *Captus.* *To be taken.*

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.* *Plural.*  
*Capior,* *Capimur,*  
*Capēris or capēre,* *Capimīni,*  
*Capitur;* *Capiuntur.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Capiebar,* *Capiebāmur,*  
*Capiebāris or -bāre,* *Capiebamīni,*  
*Capiebātur;* *Capiebantur.*

## PERFECT.

*Captus sum or fui,* *Capti sumus or fuīmus,*  
*Captus es or fuisti,* *Capti estis or fuistis,*  
*Captus est or fuit;* *Capti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre*

## PLUPERFECT.

*Captus eram or fuēram,* *Capti erāmus or fuerāmus,*  
*Captus eras or fuēras,* *Capti erātis or fuerātis,*  
*Captus erat or fuērat;* *Capti erant or fuērant.*

## FUTURE.

*Capiar,* *Capiemur,*  
*Capieris or capiēre,* *Capiemīni,*  
*Capietur;* *Capientur.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Capiar,* *Capiamur,*  
*Capiaris or capiāre,* *Capiamīni,*  
*Capiaſtur;* *Capiantur*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

### IMPERFECT.

#### *Singular.*

Capērer,  
Caperēris or -erēre,  
Caperētur;

#### *Plural.*

Caperēmur,  
Caperemini,  
Caperentur.

### PERFECT.

Captus sim or fuērim,  
Captus sis or fuēris,  
Captus sit or fuērit;

Capti simus or fuerimus,  
Capti sitis or fueritis,  
Capti sint or fuērint.

### PLUPERFECT.

Captus essem or fuissem,  
Captus esses or fuisses,  
Captus esset or fuisset;

Capti essēmus or fuissēmus  
Capti essētis or fuissētis,  
Capti essent or fuissent.

### FUTURE.

Captus fuēro,  
Captus fuēris,  
Captus fuērit;

Capti fuerimus,  
Capti fueritis,  
Capti fuērint.

### IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Capere or capitor,  
3. Capitor;

2. Capimini,  
3. Capiuntor.

### INFINITIVE MODE.

**Pres.** Capi.

**Fut.** Captum iri.

**Perf.** Esse or fuisse captus, -a, -um.

### PARTICIPLES.

**Perf.** Captus, -a, -um.

**Fut.** Capiendus, -a, -um.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Audio,	audire,	audivi,	auditum.	<i>To hear.</i>

### INDICATIVE MODE.

**PRESENT TENSE.** *hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

*Sing.* Aud-io,  
Aud-is,  
Aud-it,

*I hear,*  
*Thou hearest,*  
*He hears;*

*Plur.* Aud-imus,  
Aud-itis,  
Aud-iunt,

*We hear,*  
*Ye or you hear,*  
*They hear.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing,</i>
Aud-iēbas,	<i>Thou wast hearing,</i>
Aud-iēbat,	<i>He was hearing;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iebāmus,	<i>We were hearing,</i>
Aud-iebātis,	<i>Ye or you were hearing,</i>
Aud-iēbant,	<i>They were hearing.</i>

PERFECT. *have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-īvi,	<i>I have heard,</i>
Aud-īvisti,	<i>Thou hast heard,</i>
Aud-īvit,	<i>He has heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-ivimus,	<i>We have heard,</i>
Aud-ivistis,	<i>Ye or you have heard,</i>
Aud-ivērunt or -ivēre,	<i>They have heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivēram,	<i>I had heard,</i>
Aud-ivēras,	<i>Thou hadst heard,</i>
Aud-ivērat,	<i>He had heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iverāmus,	<i>We had heard,</i>
Aud-iverātis,	<i>Ye or you had heard,</i>
Aud-ivērant,	<i>They had heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear,</i>
Aud-ies,	<i>Thou wilt hear,</i>
Aud-iet,	<i>He will hear;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iēmus,	<i>We shall hear,</i>
Aud-iētis,	<i>Ye or you will hear,</i>
Aud-ient,	<i>They will hear.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear,</i>
Aud-ias,	<i>Thou mayest hear,</i>
Aud-iat,	<i>He may hear;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iāmus,	<i>We may hear,</i>
Aud-iātis,	<i>Ye or you may hear,</i>
Aud-iant,	<i>They may hear.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-īrem,	<i>I might hear,</i>
Aud-īres,	<i>Thou mightest hear,</i>
Aud-īret,	<i>He might hear;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-irēmus,	<i>We might hear,</i>
Aud-irētis,	<i>Ye or you might hear,</i>
Aud-īrent.	<i>They might hear</i>

**PERFECT.** *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may have heard,</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>Thou mayest have heard,</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>He may have heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iverimus,	<i>We may have heard,</i>
Aud-iveritis,	<i>Ye or you may have heard,</i>
Aud-ivērint,	<i>They may have heard.</i>

**PLUPERFECT.** *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivissem,	<i>I might have heard,</i>
Aud-ivisses,	<i>Thou mightest have heard,</i>
Aud-ivisset,	<i>He might have heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-ivissēmus,	<i>We might have heard,</i>
Aud-ivissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have heard,</i>
Aud-ivissent,	<i>They might have heard.</i>

**FUTURE.** *shall have.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-ivēro,	<i>I shall have heard,</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>Thou wilt have heard,</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>He will have heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iverimus,	<i>We shall have heard,</i>
Aud-iveritis,	<i>Ye or you will have heard,</i>
Aud-ivērint,	<i>They will have heard.</i>

**IMPERATIVE MODE.**

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Aud-i or -īto,	<i>Hear thou,</i>
3. Aud-īto,	<i>Let him hear;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Aud-īte or -itōte,	<i>Hear ye or you,</i>
3. Aud-iunto,	<i>Let them hear.</i>

**INFINITIVE MODE.**

<b>PRES.</b> Aud-īre,	<i>To hear.</i>
<b>PERF.</b> Aud-ivisse,	<i>To have heard.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to hear.</i>
Fuisse auditūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to hear.</i>

**PARTICIPLES.**

<b>PRES.</b> Aud-iens,	<i>Hearing.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

**GERUNDS.**

<i>Nom.</i> Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Aud-iendo,	<i>With hearing.</i>

**SUPINES.**

<i>Former.</i> Aud-ītum,	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Aud-ītu,	<i>To hear, or to be heard.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	audio	audiam	audi	audire	audiens
<i>Imperf.</i>	audiebam	audirem			
<i>Perf.</i>	audivi	audiverim		audivisse	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	audiveram	audivissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiam	audivēro		esse or fuisse auditurus	auditurus

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Audior,	audiri,	auditus.	To be heard.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard,</i>
	Aud-īris or -īre,	<i>Thou art heard,</i>
	Aud-ītur,	<i>He is heard;</i>
<i>Plur</i>	Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard,</i>
	Aud-imīni,	<i>Ye or you are heard,</i>
	Aud-iuntur,	<i>They are heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard,</i>
	Aud-iebāris or -iebāre,	<i>Thou wast heard,</i>
	Aud-iebātur,	<i>He was heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Aud-iebāmur,	<i>We were heard,</i>
	Aud-iebamīni,	<i>Ye or you were heard,</i>
	Aud-iebantur,	<i>They were heard.</i>

PERFECT. *have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Audītus sum or fui,	<i>I have been heard,</i>
	Audītus es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been heard,</i>
	Audītus est or fuit,	<i>He has been heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Audīti sumus or fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard,</i>
	Audīti estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been heard,</i>
	Audīti sunt or fuērunt or fuēre,	<i>They have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing</i>	Audītus eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been heard,</i>
	Audītus eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been heard,</i>
	Audītus erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Audīti erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been heard,</i>
	Audīti erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been heard,</i>
	Audīti erant or fuērant,	<i>They had been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall, or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard,</i>
Aud-iēris or -iēre,	<i>Thou wilt be heard,</i>
Aud-iētur,	<i>He will be heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard,</i>
Aud-iemini,	<i>Ye or you will be heard,</i>
Aud-ientur,	<i>They will be heard.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may, or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard,</i>
Aud-iāris, or -iāre,	<i>Thou mayest be heard,</i>
Aud-iātur,	<i>He may be heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard,</i>
Aud-iamini,	<i>Ye or you may be heard,</i>
Aud-iantur,	<i>They may be heard.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Aud-irer,	<i>I might be heard,</i>
Aud-irēris or -irēre,	<i>Thou mightest be heard,</i>
Aud-irētur,	<i>He might be heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Aud-irēmur,	<i>We might be heard,</i>
Aud-iremīni,	<i>Ye or you might be heard</i>
Aud-irentur,	<i>They might be heard.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Audītus sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been heard,</i>
Audītus sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been heard,</i>
Audītus sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Audīti simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been heard,</i>
Audīti sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been heard,</i>
Audīti sint or fuērint,	<i>They may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>S.</i> Audītus essem or fuissem,	<i>I might have been heard,</i>
Audītus esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been heard,</i>
Audītus esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been heard;</i>
<i>P.</i> Audīti essēmus or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been heard,</i>
Audīti essētis or fuissētis,	<i>Ye or you might have been heard,</i>
Audīti essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been heard.</i>

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Audītus fuēro,	<i>I shall have been heard,</i>
Audītus fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been heard,</i>
Audītus fuērit,	<i>He will have been heard;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Audīti fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been heard,</i>
Audīti fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been heard,</i>
Audīti fuērint,	<i>They will have been heard</i>

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Aud-īre or -ītor,	<i>Be thou heard,</i>
3. Aud-ītor,	<i>Let him be heard;</i>
<i>Plur</i> 2. Aud-imīni,	<i>Be ye heard,</i>
3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Let them be heard</i>

## INFINITIVE MODE.

<i>PRES.</i> Aud-īri	<i>To be heard.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Esse or fuisse auditus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been heard.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Auditum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PERF.</i> Aud-ītus,	<i>Heard.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Aud-iendus,	<i>To be heard.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	audior	audiar	audire	audiri	
<i>Imperf.</i>	audiebar	audīrer			
<i>Perf.</i>	auditus sum or fui	audītus sim or fuērim		esse or fuisse auditus	audītus
<i>Pluperf.</i>	auditus eram or fuēram	auditus essem or fuissem			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiar	auditus fuē- ro		auditum iri	audiendus

## FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *O* of the present, *I* of the perfect indicative, *RE* of the infinitive, and *UM* of the supine.\* A verb is commonly said to be conjugated when only these parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present indicative is called the *Theme*, or the *Root* of the verb; because from it the other three principal parts are formed

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ēre*, or *-ire*, of the infinitive, are called *radical* letters, because they always remain the same. By putting these before the *terminations*, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

- 
- \* 1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.  
 2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim* *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.  
 3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.  
 4. All other parts from *re* do come.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

The *Imperfect* is formed from the present by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam*; as, *am-o*, *-ābam*; in the second, into *bam*; as, *doc-eo*, *-ēbam*; in the third and fourth, into *ēbam*; as, *leg-o*, *-ēbam*; *audi-o*, *-ēbam*.

The *Pluperfect* is formed from the perfect by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amāv-i*, *-eram*; *docu-i*, *-eram*.

The *Future* is formed from the present by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo*; as, *am-o*, *-ābo*; in the second, into *bo*; as, *doc-eo*, *-ēbo*; in the third and fourth into *am*; as, *leg-o*, *-am*; *audi-o*, *-am*.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

The *Present* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em*; as, *am-o*, *-em*; in the second, third, and fourth, into *am*; as, *doce-o*, *-am*; *leg-o*, *-am*; *audi-o*, *-am*.

The *Imperfect* is formed from the present infinitive by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*.

The *Perfect* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *erim*; as, *amāv-i*, *-erim*.

The *Pluperfect* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *-issem*.

The *Future* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *ero*; as, *amāv-i*, *-ero*.

*Imperative Mode.*

The *Present* is formed from the present infinitive by taking away *re*; as, *amare*, *ama*; *docere*, *doce*.

*Infinitive Mode.*

The *Present* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre*; as, *am-o*, *-āre*; in the second and fourth into *re*; as, *doce-o*, *-re*; *audi-o*, *-re*; in the third by changing *o* or *io* into *ere*; as, *leg-o*, *-ere*; *cap-io*, *-ere*.

The *Future* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus* and adding *esse* or *fuisse*; as, *amatu-m*, *-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse* *amātūrus*.

The *Perfect* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *isse*; as, *amav-i*, *-isse*.

The *Gerunds* are formed from the participle present by changing *s* into *dum*, *dī*, and *do*.

The *Participle Present* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o* in the first conjugation, into *ans*; as, *am-o*,

*-ans*; in the second, into *ns*; as, *doce-o, -ns*; in the third and fourth, into *ens*; as, *lego, -ens*; *audi-o, -ens*.

The *Participle Future* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rus*; as, *amatu-m, -rus*

#### FORMATION OF TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

The tenses of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive* modes are formed from those of the active that end in *o*, by adding *r*; or from those that end in *m*, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amo, amem*; *amor, amer*.

The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative*, and the *Perfect, Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle declined with the tenses of the verb *sum*.

The *Imperative* is the same as the infinitive active.

The *Infinitive Present* is formed from the active by changing *e* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i*; as, *amār-e, amār-i*; *docēr-e, docēri*; *audir-e, audiri*; and in the third, *ēre*, into *i*; as, *leg-ēre, legi*.

The *Infinitive Future* is composed of the former supine and *iri*; \* as, *amātum iri*.

The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātum, amātus*.

The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans, amandus*.

#### SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive, signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amābam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

*Amāvi*, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus:

##### *Indicative Mode.*

**Perfect.** *Amātus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

*Amātus fui*, I have been loved, or I was loved.

**Pluperfect.** *Amātus eram*, I was, or had been loved.

*Amātus fuēram*, I had been loved.

##### *Subjunctive Mode.*

**Perfect.** *Amātus sim*, I may be, or may have been loved.

*Amātus fuērim*, I may have been loved.

---

\* *Iri* is the infinitive passive of *eo*

**Pluperfect.** *Amātus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be, or have been loved.

*Amātus fuisset*, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

**Future.** *Amātus futuro*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus:

*Amāturus sum*, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

*Amātus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amātus* and *amāturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amātus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amāta est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amātum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amāti sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amābam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amāvi*; so *amor*, and *amātus sum*, I am loved; *amābar* and *amātus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amātus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense is apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligent, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is. Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Or *Elôquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec ros arguerim*, *Teucris*, for *arguam*. Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*. Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et perferre, soror, potero*: for *potuissem* and *possem*. Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædicte mihi*, You should have told me before hand. Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word. Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe. Juv. *Haurerit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed. Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that. Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*. Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuisset*. Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fuisset*. Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*. Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum, for navigabo*. Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*. Ter. for *esses* and *sentiress*. *Cuto affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*. Cic. *Persuadet Castico, ut occuparet, for occipet*. Curs.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciat*, or *fecerit*, unless he do this. *Ter.*

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do; *valébis meque amábis*, farewell, and love me. *Cic.*

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb before each of them; thus:

*Dicit me scribere*; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.

*Dixit me scribere*; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.

*Dicit me scripsisse*; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.

*Dixit me scripsisse*; he said that I had written.

*Dicit me scripturum esse*; he says that I will write.

*Dixit me scripturum esse*; he said that we would write.

*Dicit nos scripturos fuisse*; he says that we would have written.

*Dicit litteras scribi*; he says that letters are written, writing, or in writing.

*Dixit litteras scribi*; he said that letters were writing, or written.

*Dicit litteras scriptas esse*; he says that letters are, or were written.

*Dicit litteras scriptas fuisse*; he says that letters have been written.

*Dixit litteras scriptas fuisse*; he said that letters had been written.

*Dicit litteras scriptum iri*; he says that letters will be written.

*Dixit litteras scriptum iri*; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the in finite passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis*, or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore* or *futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut littera scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore* or *futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut littera scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse ut littera scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

*Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. litteras*; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

*Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c.* I must have written, &c.

*Scribendum erit mihi*; I shall be obliged to write.

*Scio scribendum esse mihi litteras*; I know that I must write letters.

—*scribendum fuisse mihi*;—that I must have written.

*Dixit scribendum fore mihi*; he said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus*:

*Littera sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c.* or, *a me, puero, &c.* letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So, *littera scribendæ erant, fuerunt, erunt, &c.* *Si littera scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio litteras scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi litteras scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been or must have been written.

## FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

*Voco, vōcāvi, vōcātum*, to call; so, *rēvōco, revōcāvi, revōcātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpūli*, to beat; *rēpello, rēpūli*, never *repēpūli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus *ēdiscō, ēdidici*, to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpōposci*, to demand: so, *præcurro, præcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine: as, *facio, fēcī, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēcī, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo, placeo, sapio, salio*, and *statuo*, observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

## SPECIAL RULES.

*First Conjugation.*

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

<i>Creo, creāvi, creātum</i> , to create;	<i>pāro, pārāvi, pārātum</i> , to prepare.—So,	
<i>Abundo</i> , to abound.	<i>Aro</i> , to plough.	<i>Calceo</i> , to put on shoes,
<i>Accuso</i> , to charge with a crime.	<i>Ascio</i> , to cut, or heve.	to shoe.
<i>Adumbro</i> , to shade, to delineate.	<i>Assēvōro</i> , to affirm.	<i>Calcitro</i> , to kick.
<i>Ædifico</i> , to build.	<i>Ausculro</i> , to listen.	<i>Calco</i> , to tread.
<i>Æstimo</i> , to value.	<i>Auctōro</i> , to engage for service.	<i>Caligo</i> , to be dark, or dim-sighted.
<i>Ambulo</i> , to walk.	<i>Autūmo</i> , to suppose.	<i>Carmīno</i> , to card wool
<i>Amplio</i> , to enlarge, to put off a cause.	<i>Averrunco</i> , to avert.	<i>Castigo</i> , to chastise.
<i>Anīmo</i> , to encourage.	<i>Bajūlo</i> , to carry.	<i>Castro</i> , to cut off.
<i>Anticipō</i> , to anticipate.	<i>Balo</i> , to bleat.	<i>Cēlebro</i> , to make famous.
<i>Antiquo</i> , i. e. antiqua	<i>Basio</i> , to kiss.	<i>Cēlo</i> , to conceal.
<i>probo</i> , to reject a law.	<i>Bello</i> , to war.	<i>Centūrio</i> , & <i>concentūrio</i> , to divide into companies.
<i>Appello</i> , to call.	<i>Beo</i> , to bless.	
<i>Apprōpinquo</i> , to approach.	<i>Blātēro</i> , to babble.	
<i>Ariēto</i> , to push like a ram.	<i>Boo</i> , to bellow.	
<i>Apto</i> , to fit.	<i>Bulūlo</i> , to hoot like an owl.	
	<i>Cāco</i> , to go to stool.	
	<i>Cæco</i> , to blind, or dazzle.	
	<i>Cælo</i> , to carve.	
		<i>Certo</i> , to strive, to fight.
		<i>Cesso</i> , to cease.
		<i>Clāmo</i> , to cry.
		<i>Claudico</i> , to limp.
		<i>Coāgūlo</i> , to curdle.
		<i>Cōgito</i> , to think.

Collineo, to aim at, hit the mark.	Dissipo, to scatter.	Gusto, to taste.
Colo, to strain.	Dülo, to hew, or cut.	Häbito, to dwell.
Communico, to impart.	Döno, to present.	Hæsito, to doubt.
Compäro, to compare.	Duplico, to double.	Hälo, to breathe.
Compensö, to make amends.	Edüco, to bring up.	Hio, to gape.
Compërendino, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.	Ejülo, to wail, to weep.	Hönöro, to honour.
Compilo, to pile up, to pillage.	Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.	Jacto, to boast, to brag.
Concilio, to gain, to reconcile.	Emendo, to amend.	Jento, to breakfast.
Concordo, to agree.	Enucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.	Ignöro, to be ignorant.
Confuto, refuto, to disprove.	Enödo, to unkñit, to explain.	Immölo, to sacrifice.
Congelo, to freeze.	Equito, to ride.	Impëro, to command.
Considero, to consider.	Erro, to wander.	Impetro, to obtain.
Contämino, to pollute.	Examino, to examine, to try.	Inauro, to gold.
Cöpulo, to couple.	Exantlo, to empty, to endure.	Inchöo, to begin.
Corrugo, to wrinkle.	Exäro, to plough up, to scrawl, to write fast.	Inclino, to incline.
Corusco, to brandish.	Exentëro, to take out the guts.	Indägo, to trace out.
Crëmo, to burn.	Existimo, to think.	Indico, to show.
Creo, to create.	Explöro, to search.	Inquino, to pollute.
Cribo, to sift.	Extrico, to disentangle.	Inspico, to sharpen at the end.
Crispo, to curl.	Fabrico, to frame.	Instauro, to renew.
Crücio, to torment.	Fascino, to bewitch.	Instigo, to push on.
Curo, to cure.	Fätigo, to weary.	Intercälo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.
Damno, to condemn.	Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment.	Intro, to enter.
Dëcimo, to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.	Festino, to hasten.	Invito, to invite.
Decläro, to declare.	Flagito, to dun.	Irrädio, to shine upon.
Dëccollo, to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.	Flagro, to be on fire.	Irrito, to provoke.
Dëccöro, to adorn.	Flo, to blow.	Itëro, to do again.
Dëccürio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.	Föcillo, refocillo, to cherish, to warm.	Jübilo, to shout for joy.
Dëdico, to dedicate.	Födico, to pierce, or push.	Jurgo, & -or, to chide, or scold.
Dëlecto, to delight.	Föro, to bore.	Jüro, to swear.
Dëlibëro, to deliberate.	Fortüno, to prosper.	Läböro, to labour.
Dëlineo, to trace, to chalk out.	Fragro, to smell sweetly.	Läcëro, to tear.
Dëliro, to doat, to rave.	Fraudo, to defraud.	Lachrymo, & -or, to weep.
Dëlhumbo, to weaken.	Frio, to crumble.	Lävigo, to smooth, or polish.
Dësidëro, to desire.	Frustro, & -or, to disappoint.	Lällo, to sing as a nurse to a child.
Dësölo, to lay waste.	Füco, to colour, to paint.	Länio, to tear.
Dëstino, to destine.	Fügo, to put to flight.	Latro, to bark.
Dëco, to dedicate.	Fundo, to found.	Läxo, to loose.
Discepto, disputo, to debate.	Gënëro, to beget.	Lëgo, to send as an ambassador, to bequeath.
	Grävo, to weigh down.	Lëvo, to lighten.
	Güberno, to govern.	Libo, to taste.
		Libëro, to free.
		Ligo, to bind.
		Liquo, to melt.
		Litigo, to quarrel.

Lito, to appease by sacrifice.	Orbo, to deprive.	Runco, to weed.
Lucubro, to sit up late to study.	Ordino, to put in order.	Sacro, to consecrate.
Lustro, to survey.	Orno, to deck, to adorn.	Sägino, to fatten.
Luxo, to put out of joint.	Oro, to beg.	Sälivo, to spit, or slaver
Macto, to slay, to sacrifice.	Oscito, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.	Salto, to dance.
Mando, to command, to commit.	Paco, to subdue.	Säluto, to salute.
Mäno, to flow.	Palpito, to beat, or throb.	Sano, to heal.
Matüro, to hasten.	Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.	Satio, to satisfy.
Médico, & -or, to cure.	Pärento, to perform funeral rites, to revenge.	Sätüro, to fill, to glut.
Mémöro, to tell.	Päro, to prepare.	Scärifico, to lance, to open.
Meo, to go, or pass.	Patro, to perform.	Screo, to hawk, or retch in spitting.
Méridio, & -or, to sleep at noon.	Pecco, to sin.	Sécundo, to prosper.
Migro, to remove.	Pänetro, to pierce.	Sëdo, to allay.
Milito, to be a soldier.	Persévëro, to continue constant.	Sépäro, to sever.
Ministro, to serve.	Pio, to expiate.	Servo, to keep.
Mitigo, to pacify.	Placo, to appease.	Sibilo, to hiss.
Monstro, to show, or tell.	Plöro, to bewail.	Sicco, to dry.
Mulco, to beat.	Porto, to carry.	Significo, to mean, to give notice.
Multo, & -cto, to fine.	Postülo, to demand.	Simülo, to pretend.
Musso, & -ito, to mutter.	Privo, to deprive.	Söcio, to match, to join.
Mütulo, to maim.	Prübo, to approve.	Söllicite, to stir up, to disquiet.
Muto, to change.	Procrastüno, to delay.	Somnio, to dream.
Narro, to tell.	Profligo, to rout.	Specto, to behold.
Nauseo, to be sea-sick.	Prömulgo, to publish.	Spëro, to hope.
Navigo, to sail.	Propägo, to propagate.	Spiro, to breathe.
Nävo, to act vigorously.	Pröpëro, to hasten.	Spölio, to rob.
Nëgo, to deny.	Propino, to drink to.	Spümo, to foam.
Nicto, to wink.	Prötëlo, to chase away.	Stagno, to stand as water.
No, to swim.	Publico, to publish, to confiscate.	Stillo, to drop.
Nödo, to knot; rarely act.	Pugno, to fight.	Stimülo, to goad, to vex.
Nömüno, to name.	Pullülo, to bud.	Stipo, to stuff, to guard.
Nöto, to mark.	Purgo, to cleanse.	Strangülo, to strifle.
Növo, to renew.	Püto, to think.	Strigo, to breathe, or rest in work, as oxen or horses do.
Nüdo, to make bare.	Quadro, to square.	Sudo, to sweat.
Nümëro, to count.	Récupëro, to recover.	Sufföco, to strangle.
Nuncüpo, to call.	Récuso, to refuse.	Suffüco, to burn incense
Nuntio, to tell.	Refrigëro, to cool.	Sugillo, to taunt, or jeer.
Nüto, to nod.	Régëlo, to thaw.	Sulco, to furrow.
Obscco, to beseech.	Répäro, to repair.	Süpëro, to overcome.
Obsëro, to lock.	Rëprésento, to resemble, to show; to pay money in advance.	Suppëdito, to afford
Obtempëro, to obey.	Rësëro, to unlock.	Süsürro, to whisper.
Obtrunco, to kill.	Rigo, to water.	Tardo, to stop.
Obtütro, to stop up.	Rögo, to ask.	Taxo, to rate, to reprove.
Occo, to harrow.	Röto, to wheel about.	Tëmëro, to defile.
Odöro, to perfume.	Ructo, & -or, to belch.	Tempëro, to temper.
Onëro, to load.	Rümüno, to chew the cud.	Tënuo, to make small.
Opto, to wish.		

Térebro, to bore.	Váco, to want, to be at leisure.	Vígrlo, to watch.
Termíno, to bound.	Vasto, to lay waste.	Vindíco, to claim, to revenge.
Títílo, to tickle.	Vellíco, to pluck, twitch or pinch; to taunt, or rail at.	Viðlo, to violate.
Títúbo, to stagger.	Vélo, to cover.	Vítio, to spoil.
Tóléro, to bear.	Ventílo, to fan.	Vító, to shun.
Tráno, to swim over.	Verbéro, to whip.	Vitúpéro, to blame.
Tripúdio, to caper.	Vestígo, to search for.	Vóco, to call.
Triumpho, to triumph.	Vibro, to brandish, to shake.	Vólo, to fly.
Trúcido, to kill.	Víduo, to deprive.	Vóro, to devour.
Turbo, to disturb.		Vulgo, to spread abroad.
Uľúlo, to howl.		Vulnéro, to wound.
Umbro, to shade.		
Vácillo, to waver.		

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dátum, dāre*, to give; so, *venundo*, to sell; *circundo*, to surround; *pessundo*, to overthrow; *satisdo*, to give surety; *venundēdi, venundátum, venundāre*, &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

*Sto, stēti, statum*, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti, stītum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstīti, præstītum*, or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So, *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvātum*, to wash.

*Pōto, pōtāvi, pōtum*, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

*Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum*, to help; fut. part. *juvatūrus*. So, *adjūvo*

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbitum*, to lie down. So, *ac-, ex-, in-, oc-, rē-cūbo*. These and the other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation; except *ex-cubo*.

*Dōmo, dōmui, dōmītum*, to subdue. So, *ē-, per-dōmo*.

*Sōno, sōnui, sōnītum*, to sound. So, *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, rē-sōno*.

*Tōno, tōnui, tōnītum*, to thunder. So, *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnātus*.

*Vēto, vētui, vētītum*, to forbid.

*Crēpo, crēpui, crēpītum*, to make a noise. So, *con-, in-, per-, rē-crēpo*; *dis-crēpo* has rather *dis-crēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frictum*, to rub. So, *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frīco*. But some of these have also *ātum*.

*Sēco, sēcui, sectum*, to cut. So, *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-sēco*.

*Nēco, nēcui, or nēcāvi, nēcātum*, to kill. So, *inter-, ē-nēco*; but these have oftener *ectum*; *enectum, internectum*.

*Mīco, mīcui, —* to glitter, to shine. So, *inter-, prō-mīco*. *Emīco* has *ēmīcui, ēmicātum*: *dīmīco, dimīcāvi, dimīcātum*, rarely *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine; *labo*, to fall, or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plico*, to fold.

*Plico*, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re-*, *sub-*, has *āvi*, *ātum*; as, *duplico*, *duplicāvi*, *duplicātum*, to double. So, *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum*; as, *applico*, *applicui*, *applicitum*, or *-āvi*, *-ātum*, to apply. So, *im-*, *com-plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui*, *explicitum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi*, *explicātum*.

### Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum*; as, *habeo*, *habui*, *habitum*, to have. So,

*Adhibeo*, to admit, to use.

*Cohibeo*, *Inhibeo*, to restrain.

*Exhibeo*, to show, to give.

*Pērhibeo*, to say, to give out.

*Prohibeo*, to hinder.

*Posthabeo*, to value less.

*Præbeo*, to afford.

*Rēdhibeo*, to return, or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

*Dēbeo*, to owe.

*Mēreo*, to deserve: *Com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *pro-mēreo*, or *mereor*.

*Mōneo*, to admonish: *Ad-*, *com*, *præ-mōneo*.

*Terreo*, to terrify: *Abs-*, *con-*, *de*, *ex-*, *per-terreo*.

*Diribeo*, to count over, to distribute

Neuter verbs which have *ui*, want the supine; as, *āreo*, *ārui*, to be dry. So,

*Aceo*, & *-esco*, to be sour.

*Albeo*, } to be white.

*Candeo*, }

*Calleo*, to be hard.

*Cāneo*, to be hoary.

*Clareo*, to be bright.

*Egeo*, *indigeo*, to want.

*Emīneo*, to stand above others.

*Flacceo*, to wither.

*Flōreo*, to flourish.

*Freteo*, to stink.

*Frendeo*, to gnash the teeth.

*Frondeo*, to bear leaves.

*Horreo*, to be rough.

*Hūreo*, to be wet.

*Immineo*, to hung over.

*Langueo*, to languish.

*Liqueo*, *licui*, to melt, to be clear.

*Māceo*, to be lean.

*Mādeo*, to be wet.

*Marceo*, to wither.

*Mūceo*, to be mouldy.

*Nīteo*, to shine.

*Palleo*, to be pale.

*Pāteo*, to be open.

*Pateo*, to stink.

*Putreo*, to rot.

*Ranceo*, to be mouldy.

*Rīgeo*, to be stiff.

*Rūbeo*, to be red.

*Squāleo*, to be foul.

*Sordeo*, to be nasty.

*Stūdeo*, to favour.

*Stūpeo*, to be amazed.

*Splendeo*, to shine.

*Tēpeo*, to be warm.

*Torpeo*, to be benumbed.

*Tūmeo*, to swell.

*Vīgeo*, to be strong.

*Vireo*, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Vāleo* to be in health; and *aqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-valeo*: *Plāceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-placeo*: *Displāceo*, to displease: *Cāreo*, to want: *Pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-pāreo*: *Jāceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jāceo*: *Ca-* *leo*, to be warm: and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-cāleo*: *Nōceo*, to

hurt: *Dōleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-dōleo*: *Coāleo*, to grow together: *Līceo*, which in the active signifies to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lāteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delūteo*, *inter-*, *sub-lateo*: as likewise do those of *Tūceo*, *-cui*, *-cītum*, to be silent, *con-*, *ob-*, *rē-tīceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tīceo*, *-ui*, to fear: *Sīleo*, *-ui*, to conceal: *Arceo*, *-cui*, to drive away: but the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui exercitum*, to exercise. So, *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

*Jūbeo*, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So, *fide-jūbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

*Sorbeo*, *sorbui*, *sorptum*, to sup. So, *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-*, *rē-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *rēsorptum*, are not in use.

*Dūceo*, *dūcui*, *doctum*, to teach. So, *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-dūceo*.

*Misceo*, *miscui*, *mistum* or *mixtum*, to mix. So, *ad-*, *com-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *rē-misceo*.

*Mulceo*, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroke, to soothe. So, *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *rē-mulceo*.

*Lūceo*, *luxi*, — to shine. So, *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *ē-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-lūceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

*Prandeo*, *prandi*, *pransum*, to dine.

*Video*, *vīdi*, *vīsum*, to see. So, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rē-vīdeo*.

*Sēdeo*, *sēdi*, *sessum*, to sit. So, *as-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pos-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-sīdeo*: *Circumsīdeo*, or *circumsēdeo*, *super-sēdeo*. But *dē-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sīdeo*, seem to want the supine.

*Strīdeo*, *strīdi*, — to make a noise.

*Pendeo*, *pēpendi*, *pensum*, to hang. So, *de-*, *im-*, *pro-*, *super-pendeo*.

*Mordeo*, *mōmordi*, *morsum*, to bite. So, *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *re-mordeo*.

*Spondeo*, *spōpondi*, *sponsum*, to promise. So, *de-*, *re-spondeo*.

*Tondeo*, *tōtondi*, *tonsum*, to clip. So, *at-*, *circum-*, *de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi*, *remordi*, *respondi*, *attondi*, &c.

*Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum*, to laugh. So, *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

*Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum*, to advise. So, *dis-, per-suādeo*

*Ardeo, arsi, arsum*, to burn. So, *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

*Augeo, auxi, auctum*, to increase. So, *ad-, ex-augeo*.

*Lugeo, luxi, ~~luctum~~* to mourn. So, *e-, pro-, sub-lugeo*.

*Frigeo, frixi, —* to be cold. So, *per-, re-frigeo*.

*Tergeo, tersi, tersum*, to wipe. So, *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

*Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum*, or *mulctum*, to milk. So, *e-, in-mulgeo*.

*Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum*, to grant, to indulge.

*Urgeo, ursi, —* to press. So, *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

*Fulgeo, fulsi ~~fulsum~~* to shine. So, *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

*Turgeo, tursi*, to swell. *Algeo, alsi*, to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

*Vieo, viēvi, viētum*, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

*Cieo, (cīvi) cītum*, to stir up, to rouse. So, *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cieo*. *Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

*Fleo, flēvi, flētum*, to weep. So, *af-, de-fleo*.

*Compleo, complēvi, complētum*, to fill. So, the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-, ex-, in-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

*Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum*, to destroy, to blot out.

*Oleo*, to smell, has *ōlvi, ōlītum*. So, likewise, its compounds which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus, *exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So, *inōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-ītum*, to grow into use; *obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *ābōlēvi, ābōlītum*; and *ādōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi, adultum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO*, *QUEO*, *REO*, and *SEO*.

*Māneo, mansi, mansum*, to stay. So, *per-, rē-māneo*.

*Neo, nēvi, nētum*, to spin. So, *per-neo*.

*Tēneo, tēnui, tentum*, to hold. So, *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tīneo*. But *attīneo, pertīneo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstīneo*.

*Torqueo, torsi, tortum*, to throw, to twirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo*.

*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum*, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo*.

*Torreo, torrui, tostum*, to roast. So, *ex-torreo*

*Censeo, censui, censum*, to judge. So, *ac-, per-, re-censeo*, to review; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi mōtum*, to move; *Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum*, to cherish. So, *con-, re-fveo*. So, *vōveo*, to vow, or wish, and *dēvōveo*.

*Fāveo*, to favour, has *fāvi, fautum*; and *cāveo*, to beware of, *cāvi, cautum*. So, *præ-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo, pāvi*, to be afraid.

*Ferveo*, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So, *de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-ferveo*.

*Conniveo*, to wink, has *connivi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *liveo*, to be black and blue; *scāleo*, to abound; *ren-deo*, to shine; *mæreo*, to be sorrowful; *āveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flūveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth, or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

### Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

#### IO.

1. *Fācio, fēci, factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, ārē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē-, bēnē-, mālē-, sātis-fācio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*. So, *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, suf-ficio*. Note: *Fācio*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifīco, sacrifico, terrifīco, magnifīco; gratifīcor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *ludifīcor*, to mock.

*Jācio, jēci, jactum*, to throw. So, *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jicio*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi* and *ectum*; as, *aspicio, asperi, aspectum*, to behold. So, *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-re-, retro-, su-spicio*.

*Allicio, allexi, allectum*, to allure. So, *il-, pel-licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *elicui, elicītum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So, *ad-, circum-con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-fōdio*.

*Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum*, to fly. So, *au-, (for ab-,) con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, sus-cīpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

*Rāpio, rāpui, raptum*, to pull, or snatch. So, *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, præ-, pro-, sur-rīpio, -rīpus, -reptum*.

*Sāpio, sāpui, —* to savour, to be wise. So, *consīpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desīpio*, to be foolish; *resīpio*, to come to one's wits.

— *Cūpio, cupīvi, cupītum*, to desire. So, *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēpēri, parītum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

*Quātio, quassi, quassum*, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*; as, *concūtio, concussi, concussum*. So, *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, suc-cūtio*

*UO* has *ui, ūtum*; as,

— *Arguo, argui, argūtum*, to show, to prove or argue, to reprove. So, *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

*Acuo, Exācuo*, to sharpen.

*Batuo, or battuo*, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils

*Induo*, to put on clothes.

*Exuo*, to put off clothes.

*Imbuo*, to wet or imbue, to season or instruct.

*Minuo*, to lessen: *Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo*.

*Spuo*, to spit: *Con-, de-, ex-, in-*

*Statuo*, to set or place, to ordain

*Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-stituo*.

*Sternuo*, to sneeze.

*Suo*, to sew or stitch, to tack together: *As-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, præ-, re-suo*.

*Tribuo*, to give, to divide: *At-, con-, dis-, re-tribuo*.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So, *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-fluo*.

*Struo, struxi, structum*, to put in order, to build. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luītum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So, *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo*.

*Ruo, rui, ruītum*, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*,

as, *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So, *ē-, ob-, prō-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod, or beckon with the head; *rēnuo*, to deny; all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

*Bibo, bibi, bibītum*, to drink. So, *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bibo*.

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So, *ad- circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scrībo*.

*Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So, *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; *accumbo, accūbui, accūbītum*, to recline at table. So, *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cubui, -cūbītum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So, *ad-, circum-, dē-, præ-lambo*.

*Glūbo, and deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. and sup.

### CO.

1. *Dico, dixi, dictum*, to say. So, *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dico*.

*Dūco, duxi, ductum*, to lead. So, *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tru-, or trans-dūco*.

2 *Vinco, vici, victum*, to overcome. So, *con-, de-, e-, per-, re-vinco*.

*Parco, pēperci, parsum*, seldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So, *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

*Ico, ici, ictum*, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

*Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know; fut. part. *noscitūrus*. So,

*Dignosco, to distinguish*; *ignosco, Seisco, -ivi, -itum, to ordain*; *ad-, to pardon*; also *inter-, per-, prænoscō, or ascisco, to take, to associate*;

*Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow*: *Con-, concisco, to vote, to commit*; also, *præ-, re-cisco*; *decisco, to revolt*.

*Suesco, to be accustomed*: *As-, conde-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum*.

*Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, to rest*: *Ac-, con-, inter-, rē-quiesco*.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So, *rēcognosco*, to review.

✓ *Pasco, pāvi, pastum*, to feed. So, *com-, dē-pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine:

✓ *Disco, didīci*, to learn. So, *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, prae-disco, -didīci*.

*Posco, pōposci*, to demand. So, *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco*.

*Compesco, compescui*, to stop, to restrain. So, *dīspesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine; as, *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arxi, arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *dī, sum*; as,

✓ *Scando, scandī, scansum*, to climb; *ēdo, ēdī, ēsum*, to eat. So,

*Ascendo, to mount.* *Cado, to forge, to stamp,* *Mando, to chew:* Præ-, Descendo, *to go down:* or *coin:* Ex-, in-, re-mando.

Con-, e-, ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-cādo. *Prehendo, to take hold*

tran-scendo. *Defendo, to defend.* of: Ap-, com-, de-  
Accendo, *to kindle:* In-, Offendo, *to strike* *prehendo.*  
suc-cendo. *against, to offend, to find.*

Exc. 1. *Dīvidō, divīsi, divīsum*, to divide.

*Rūdo, rāsi, rāsum*, to shave. So, *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, prae-, sub-rādo*.

*Claudo, clausi, clausum*, to close. So, *circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, prae-, re-, se-clūdo*.

*Plaudō, plausi, plausum*, to clap the hands for joy. So, *ap-, circum-plaudō*: also, *com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plōdo, -plōsi, -plōsum*.

*Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum*, to play. So, *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, prae-, pro-, re-lūdo*.

*Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum*, to thrust. So, *abs-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo*.

*Lædo, læsi, læsum*, to hurt. So, *al-, col-, e-, il-lido, -lisi, -lisum*.

*Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum*, to gnaw. So, *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, c-, ob-, per-, prae-rōdo*.

*Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have si, sum*; as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, to fall upon. So, *circum-, ē-, super-vādo*.

*Cēdo, cessi, cessum*, to yield. So, *abs-, ac-, antē-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, prae-, pro-, rē-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So, *dis-, ex-, op-, præ-, rē-pando*.

*Cōmēdo, comēdi, comēsūm*, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsūm*; as, *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ēdo, -ēdi, -ēsūm*.

*Fundo, fūdi, fūsūm*, to pour forth. So, *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, trans-fundo*.

*Scindo, scīdi, scissūm*, to cut. So, *as-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, tran-scindo*.

*Findo, fīdi, fissūm*, to cleave. So, *con-, dif-, in-findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsūm*, to bruise. So, *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo*.

*Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsūm*, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cido, -cīdi, —*: except, *incīdo, incīdi, incāsūm*, to fall in; *recīdo, recīdi, recāsūm*, to fall back; and *occīdo, occīdi, occāsūm*, to fall down.

*Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsūm*, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsūm*, to cut about. So, *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cīdo*.

*Tendo, tētēdi, tensūm*, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So, *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tēdi, -tensūm*, or *-tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to show; which has commonly *ostensūm*.

*Pēdo, pēpēdi, peditūm*, to break wind backwards. So, *op-pēdo*.

*Pendo, pēpendi, pensūm*, to weigh. So, *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, pēr-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensūm*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum*, to hide. So, *ad-, con-, dē-, di-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, tra-do*: also, *decon-, recon-do*: and *coad-, superad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do*. To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo, vendīdi, vendītum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, abscondītum*, rarely *abscondīdi, absconsum*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi*, to creak; *rīdo, rīdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum*, to sit down. So, *as-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo*.

*Note.* Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects, resemble one another and therefore should be care-

fully distinguished; as, *concīdo, concēdo, concido; consīdo* and *consideo; consciundo, conscendo, &c.*

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum; as,*

*Rēgo, rexi, rectum*, to rule, to govern; *dīrigo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct; *arrigo*, and *ērigo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up; *corrigo*, to correct; *porrigo*, to stretch out; *subrigo*, to raise up. So,

*Cingo, cinxi, cinctum*, to gird, to Emungo, to wipe, to cheat.

*surround: Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, Plango, to beat, to lament.*

*præ-, re-, suc-tingo.*

*Stingo, or Stinguo, to dash out, to*

*Fligo, to dash, or beat upon: Af-, extinguish: Di-, ex-, in-, inter-,*

*con-, in-fligo; also, profligo, to*

*roul, of the first conjug.*

*Tēgo, to cover: Circum-, con-, de-,*

*Jungo, to join; ab-jungo, to sepa-*

*rate: Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-,*

*inter-, se-, sub-jungo.*

*Tingo, or Tinguo, to dip, or dye:*

*Con-, in-tingo.*

*Lingo, to lick: De-, e-lingo; and*

*pollingo, to anoint a dead body.*

*Ungo, or Unguo, to anoint: Ex-,*

*in-, per-, super-ungo.*

**Exc. 1.** *Surgo, to rise, has surrexi, surrectum.* So, *as-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo.*

*Pergo, perrexi, perrectum*, to go forward.

*Stringo, strinxi, strictum*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So, *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo.*

*Fingo, finxi, fictum*, to feign. So, *af-, con-, ef-, re-fingo.*

*Pingo, pinxi, pictum*, to paint. So, *ap-, de-pingo.*

**Exc. 2.** *Frango, frēgi, fractum*, to break. So, *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum.*

*Agō, ēgi, actum*, to do, to drive. So, *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-igo, and circum-, per-āgo: cōgo, for coāgo, coēgi, coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo, satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdigo, prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo* for *deāgo, dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Am-bigo*, to doubt, to dispute, wants the preterite and supine.

*Lēgo, lēgi, lectum*, to gather, to read. So, *al-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-lēgo: also, col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-ligo*, which change *ē* into *i*.

*Dīgo, to love, has dilexi, dilectum.* So, *neglīgo*, to neglect; and *intellīgo*, to understand; but *neglīgo* has sometimes *neg-lēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

**Exc. 3.** *Tango, tēgi, tactum*, to touch. So, *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo*; thus, *attingo, allīgi, attactum, &c.*

*Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum*, to prick, or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum.* So, *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo: but repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

*Pango, panxi, pactum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose; or *pēpīgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango* have *pēgi*; as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So, *im-, ob-, sup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo*.

*Mergo, mersi, mersum*, to dip, or plunge. So, *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo*.

*Tergo, tersi, tersum*, to wipe, or clean. So, *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

*Figo, fixi, fixum*, to fix, or fasten. So, *af-, con-, de-, in-af-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-figo*.

*Friego, frixi, frixum*, or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninquo*, *ninxi*, to snow; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So, *e-, de-, in-vergo*.

### HO, JO.

1. *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So, *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trāho*.

*Veho, vexi, vectum*, to carry. So, *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vehō*.

2. *Mejo*, or *mingo*, *minxi, mictum*, to make water. So, *immejo*.

### LO.

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So, *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

*Consūlo, consului, consultum*, to advise, or consult.

*Alō, ālui, alitum*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

*Mōlo, molui, molitum*, to grind. So, *com-, e-, per-mōlo*.

The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli, perculsum*; *recello*, to push down, wants both preterite and supine.

*Pello, pēpūli, pulsum*, to thrust. So, *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello*; *appūli, appulsum*, &c.

*Fallo, fēfelli, falsum*, to deceive. But *rēfello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli, or vulsi, vulsum*, to pull, or pinch. So, *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello*. But *de-, di-, per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

*Sallo, salli, salsum*, to salt. *Psallo, psalli*, —, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

*Tollo*, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustūli*, and *sublātum*; *extollo, extūli, elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

**MO** has *ui, ūtum*; as,

*Gēmo, gēmui, gēmītum*, to groan. So, *ad-*, or *ag-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-* *re-gēno*.

*Frēmo, frēmui, frēmītum*, to rage, or roar, to make a great noise. So, *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-frēmo*.

*Vōmo, evōmo, -ui, -ūtum*, to vomit, to spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

*Prōmo, prompsi, promptum*, to bring out. So, *de-*, *ex-prōmo*.

*Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum*, to take. So, *ab-*, *as-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *tran-sūmo*.

*Cōmo, compsi, comptum*, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as, *demsi, demtum*; *sumsi, sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Emo, ēmi, emptum*, or *emtum*, to buy. So, *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-imo*, and *co-ēmo, -ēmi, -emptum*, or *-emtum*.

*Prēmo, pressi, pressum*, to press. So, *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sup-primo*.

*Trēmo, trēmui*, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So, *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-trēmo*.

### NO.

1. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsītum*, to put or place. So, *ap-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *se-*, *sup-*, *super-*, *superim-*, *trans-pōno*.

*Gigno, gēnui, gēnītum*, to beget. So, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

*Cāno, cēcini, cantum*, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *accīno, accīnui, accentum*, to sing in concert. So, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *suc-cīno*; *oc-cīno*, and *oc-cāno*; *re-cīno*, and *re-cāno*; but *occanui, recanui*, are not in use.

*Temno*, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi, contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi, contemtum*.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain, or slight. So, *desperno*.

*Sterno, strāvi, strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

*Sīno, sīvi, or sūi, sītum, to permit. So, desīno, desīvi, oftener desūi, desūtum, to leave off.*

*Līno, līvi, or lēvi, lītum, to anoint, to daub. So, al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-līno.*

*Cerno, crēvi, seldom crētum, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno.*

### PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po*, have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carmo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. So, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, prae-cerpo, -cerpsi, -cerptum.*

*Clēpo, -psi, -ptum, to steal.*

*Rēpo, to creep: Ad-, or ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rēpo, -psi, -ptum.*

*Scalpo, to scratch or engrave: So, circum-, ex-scalpo.*

*Sculpo, to grave, or carve: So, ex-, in-sculpo.*

*Serpo, to creep as a serpent.*

Exc. 1. *Strēpo, strēpui, strēpūtum, to make a noise. So, ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strēpo.*

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, to break. So, ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-rumpo.*

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

*Cūquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cōquo.*

*Līnquo, liqui, —, to leave. The compounds have lictum; as, rēlinquo, reliqui, relictum, to forsake. So, de-, and dēvēlinquo.*

### RO.

1. *Quero* makes *quævi, quæsītum*, to seek. So, *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quero, -quisvi, -quisītum.*

*Tēro, trēvi, trītum, to wear, to bruise. So, at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tēro.*

*Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So, ā-, con-, dē-, ē-, prae-, re-verro.*

*Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So, ād-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pēr-, sub-uro.*

*Gēro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So, ag-, con-, di-, in-, pro-, rē-, sug-gēro.*

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum, to run. So, ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, prae-, prō-curro*, which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not: as, *accurri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Cūcum-, rē-, suc-, trans-curro*, hardly ever double the first syllable.

- 3. *Sēro, sēvi, sātum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sātum*; as, *consēro, consēvi, con-sītum*, to plant together. So, *as-, circum-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, tran-sēro*.

*Sēro, —*, to knit, had anciently *sērui, sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assēro, asserui, assertum*, to claim. So, *con-, circum-, de-, dis-, edis-, ex-, in-, inter-sēro*.

4. *Fūro*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi, sītum*; as,

*Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum*, to call, or send for. So, *cā-presso*, to take; *fācesso*, to do, to go away; *lācesso*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Viso, visi, —*, to go to see, to visit. So, *in-, re-viso*. *Incesso, incessi, —*, to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, dep sui, depstum*, to knead. So, *con-, per-, depso*.

- *Pinso, pinsui, or pinsi, pinsum, pistum, or pinsitum*, to bake.

### TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi, flexum*, to bow. So, *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto*.

*Plecto, plexi, and plexui, plexum*, to plait. So, *implecto*.

*Necto, nexi, and nexui, nexum*, to tie, or knit. So, *ad-, or an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto*.

- *Pecto, pexi, and pexui, pexum*, to dress, or comb. So, *de-, ex-, re-pecto*.

- 2. *Mēto, messui, messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So, *de-, e-, prae-mēto*.

- 3. *Pēto, pētīvi, pētītum*, to seek, to pursue. So, *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-pēto*.

*Mitto, mīsi, missum*, to send. So, *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, de-, di-, e-, im-, inter-, intro-, o-, per-, prae-, prater-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto*.

*Verto, verti, versum*, to turn. So, *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, prater-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō*.

*Sterto, stertui, —*, to snore. So, *de-sterto*.

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti, stātum*; but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti, stātum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assistō, astīti, astītum*, to stand by. So, *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

## VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, victum*, to live. So, *ad-*, *con-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *super-vivo*.

2. *Solvo, solvi, sōlūtum*, to loose. So, *absolvo*, to acquit; *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *re-solvo*.

3. *Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum*, to roll. So, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*) has *texui, textum*. So, *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-texo*.

## Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

*Munio, munivi, munitum*, to fortify. So,

*Balbutio, to stammer, to* *Insanio, to be mad.*

*lisp, to stutter.*

*Irratio, to ensnare.*

*Rēdmio, to bind.*

*Rūgio, to roar like a lion.*

*Bullio, to boil, or bubble.*

*Lascivio, to be wanton.*

*Sævio, to rage.*

*Condio, to season.*

*Lenio, to ease, or mitigate.*

*Sagio, presagio, to guess, to foresee.*

*Crōcio, to croak.*

*Ligurio, to eat deliciously, to slabber up.*

*Sarrio, to weed, to rake.*

*Custodio, to keep.*

*Lippio, to be dim-sighted.*

*Scio, to know.*

*Effutio, to babble, or blab out.*

*Lippio, to be dim-sighted.*

*Nescio, not to know.*

*Erudio, to instruct.*

*Mollio, to soften.*

*Scāturio, to gush out.*

*Expedio, to disentangle, to free.*

*Magio, to bellow.*

*Servio, to serve.*

*to free.*

*Mutio, to mutter.*

*Sitio, to thirst.*

*Gannio, to yelp, or whine.*

*Nutrio, to nourish.*

*Sōpio, to lull asleep.*

*Garrio, to prate.*

*Obedio, to obey.*

*Stābilio, to establish.*

*Glatio, to swallow.*

*Pāvio, to test.*

*Sūperbio, to be proud.*

*Grunnio, to grunt.*

*Pīpio, to peep like a chicken.*

*Suffio, to perfume.*

*Hinnio, to neigh.*

*Polio, to polish.*

*Tinnio, to tinkle.*

*Impedio, to entangle, to hinder.*

*Prurio, to itch, to tickle.*

*Tussio, to cough.*

*hinder.*

*Pūnio, to punish.*

*Vagio, to cry or squeal as a child.*

*Vestio, to clothe.*

Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultivi, singultum*, to sob.

*Sēpelio, sepelivi, sepultum*, to bury.

*Venio, vēni, ventum*, to come. So, *ad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-venio*.

*Veneo, vēnui, —*, to be sold.

*Sālio, sāliui and sālii, saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sīlui*, sometimes *sīlii*, or *sīl-vi* and *sultum*; as, *transilio, transilui, transīlii*, and *transil-vi, transultum*, to leap over. So, *ab-*, *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-silio*.

Exc. 2. *Amicio* has *amicui*, *amictum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover, or clothe.

*Vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, to tie. So, *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *re-vincio*.

*Sancio*, *sanxi*, *sanctum*, and *sancīvi*, *sancitum*, to establish, or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio*, *campsi*, *campsum*, to change money.

*Sēpio*, *sepsi*, *septum*, to hedge, or inclose. So, *circum-*, *dis-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-sēpio*.

*Haurio*, *hausi*, *haustum*, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So, *de-*, *ex-haurio*.

*Sentio*, *sensi*, *sensum*, to feel, to perceive, to think. So, *as-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *sub-sentio*.

*Raucio*, *rausi*, *rausum*, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio*, *sarsi*, *sartum*, to mend, or repair. So, *ex-*, *re-sarcio*.

*Farcio*, *farsi*, *fartum*, to cram. So, *con-fercio*, *ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

*Fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fullum*, to prop, or uphold. So, *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *suf-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio* have *pēriui*, *pertum*; as, *āpērio*, *apēriui*, *āpertum*, to open. So, *ōpērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio* has *compēri*, *compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Rēpērio*, *repēri*, *repertum*, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cacūtio*, *cacūtivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio*, *gestivi*, to show one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio*, *glōcivi*, to cluck, or cackle as a hen. *Dementio*, *dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio*, *ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prōsilio*, *prosilui*, to leap forth. *Fērocio*, *ferōcivi*, to be fierce.

*Ferio*, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So, *rēfērio*, to strike again.

## DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crīminor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lator*,

*lætāri*, *lætātus*, to rejoice; *vĕreor*, *vĕrĕri*, *verĭtus*, to fear; *fungor*, *fungi*, *functus*, to discharge an office; *pōtior*, *pōtiri*, *pōtītus*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *Lætor*, of the first conjugation, like *amor* :

### Indicative Mode.

PRES. *Lætor*, I rejoice; *lætāris* or *-āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.

IMP. *Lætūbar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *lætabāris*, &c.

PERF. *Lætātus sum* or *fui*,\* I have rejoiced, &c.

PLUPERF. *Lætātus eram* or *fuĕram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

FUT. *Lætābor*, I shall or will rejoice; *lætabĕris* or *-abĕre*, &c.  
*Lætātūrus sum*, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

### Subjunctive Mode.

PRES. *Læter*, I may rejoice; *lætĕris* or *-ĕre*, &c.

IMP. *Lætārer*, I might rejoice; *lætūrĕris* or *-rĕre*, &c.

PERF. *Lætātus sim* or *fuĕrim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

PLUPERF. *Lætātus essem* or *fuĕssem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

FUT. *Lætātus fuĕro*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

### Imperative Mode.

PRES. *Lætāre* or *-ātor*, rejoice thou; *lætātor*, let him rejoice, &c.

### Infinitive Mode.

PRES. *Lætāri*, to rejoice.

PERF. *Lætātus esse* or *fuisse*, to have rejoiced.

FUT. *Lætātūrus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

*Lætātūrus fuisse*, to have been about to rejoice.

### Participles.

PRES. *Lætans*, rejoicing.

PERF. *Lætātus*, having rejoiced.

FUT. *Lætātūrus*, about to rejoice.

*Lætandus*, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

Abōmīnor, to abhor.	Apriĕor, to bask in the sun.	Auctōpor, & -o, to hunt after.
Adūlor, to flatter.	Arbitror, to think.	Augūror, & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.
Æmūlor, to vie with, to envy.	Aspernor, to despise.	Aversor, to dislike.
Altercor, to dispute, to make a repartee.	Auctiōnor, to sell by auction.	Auspīcor, to take an omen, to begin.

\* *Fui*, *fuĕram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs, as, *sum*, *eram*, &c.

Auxilior, to assist.	Imāginor, to conceive.	Pignēror, to pledge.
Bacchor, to rage, to revel, to riot.	Imītor, to imitate.	Piscor, to fish.
Caluinnior, to accuse falsely.	Indignor, to disdain.	Pōpūlor, & -o, to lay waste.
Cavillor, to scoff.	Inficior, to deny.	Prædor, to plunder.
Caupōnor, to hunkster, to retail.	Insector, to pursue, to inveigh against.	Prælior, to fight.
Causor, to plead in excuse, to blame.	Insidior, to lie in wait.	Præstōlor, to wait for.
Āircūlor, to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.	Interprētor, to explain.	Prævarīcor, to go crooked, to shuffle, or prevaricate.
Cōmessor, to revel.	Jācūlor, to dart.	Prēcōr, to pray.
Cōmitor, to accompany.	Jūcor, to jest.	Deprēcōr, to entreat, to pray against.
Commentor, to meditate on, or write what one is to say.	Lāmentor, to bewail.	Prēcōr, to ask, to woo.
Conciōnor, to harangue.	Lucor, to gain.	Rēcōrdor, to remember.
Conflictor, to struggle.	Luctor, to wrestle.	Refrāgor, to be against.
Cōnor, to endeavour.	Māchinor, to contrive.	Rimor, to search.
Conspīcor, to spy, to see.	Mēdicor, to cure.	Rixor, to scold, or brawl.
Contemplor, to view.	Mēditōr, to muse, or ponder.	Rusticor, to dwell in the country.
Convivor, to feast.	Mētor, to measure.	Scrūtor, to search.
Cornīcor, to chatter like a crow.	Mīnor, to threaten.	Sōlor, to comfort.
Crimīnor, to blame.	Mīror, to wonder.	Spātiōr, to walk abroad.
Cunctor, to delay.	Misēror, to pity.	Spēcūlor, to view, to spy.
Dētestor, to abhor.	Mōdēror, to rule.	Stīpūlor, to stipulate, or agree.
Dūminor, to rule.	Mōdūlor, to play a tune.	Sūmāchor, to be angry.
Epūlor, to feast.	Mōrigēror, to humour.	Suāvior, to kiss.
Exsecror, to curse.	Mōror, to delay.	Suffrāgor, to vote for one, to favour.
Fāmūlor, to serve.	Mūnēror, to present.	Suspīcor, to suspect.
Fērior, to keep holy-day.	Mūtuor, to borrow.	Tergīversor, to boggle, to put off.
Frustror, to disappoint.	Nagor, to trifle.	Testor, to witness.
Fūrōr, to steal.	Obtestor, to beseech.	Tūtor, to defend.
Glōrior, to boast.	Odōror, to smell.	Vādōr, to give bail, to force to give bail.
Grātūlor, to rejoice, to wish one joy.	Opēror, to work.	Vāgor, to wander.
Grāvor, to grudge.	Opīnor, to think.	Vaticīnor, to prophesy.
Hāriūlor, to conjecture.	Opitūlor, to help.	Vēlītor, to skirmish.
Helluor, to guttle, or gormandize, to waste.	Oscūlor, to kiss.	Vēnēror, to worship.
Hortor, to encourage.	Otiōr, to be at leisure.	Vēnor, to hunt.
Hallucīnor, to speak at random, to err.	Palor, to stroll, or straggle.	Vērsor, to be employed.
	Palpor, or -o, to stroke, or soothe.	Vōcīfēror, to brawl.
	Patrōcīnor, to patronize.	
	Percōptor, to inquire.	
	Pēgrīnor, to go abroad.	
	Pēriclītor, to be in dan-	

## In the Second Conjugation,

Mēreor, mēritus, to deserve.	Polliceor, pollicītus, to promise.
Tueor, tuitus, or tūtus, to defend.	Liceor, licītus, to bid at an auction

## In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.  
 Revertor, reversus, to return.

## In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter. Partior, to divide.  
 Mentior, to lie. Sortior, to draw or cast lots.  
 Molior, to attempt something difficult. Largior, to give liberally.

Part. Perf. *Blanditus, mentitus, molitus, partitus, sortitus, largitus.*

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

*Reor rātus*, to think.

*Miseror, misertus*, or not contracted, *miseritus*, to pity.

*Fāteor, fassus*, to confess. The compounds of *fāteor* have *fessus*; as *prōfiteor, professus*, to profess. So, *confiteor*, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

*Lābor, lapsus*, to slide. So, *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, prāter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor*:

• *Ulciscor, ultus*, to revenge.

*Utor, usus*, to use. So, *ab-, de-utor*.

*Lōquor, lōquutus, or locutus*, to speak. So, *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, prae-, pro-lōquor*.

*Sēquor, sēquutus, or sēcūtus*, to follow. So, *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor*.

*Quēror, questus*, to complain. So, *con-, inter-, prae-quēror*.

*Nitor, nīsus, or nīzus*, to endeavour, to lean upon. So, *ad-, or an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nitor*: but the compounds have oftener *nīzus*.

*Pāciscor, pactus*, to bargain. So, *de-pāciscor*.

*Grādior, gressus*, to go. So, *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, prae-, prāter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grādior*.

*Prōfisciscor, profectus*, to go a journey.

*Nāciscor, nactus*, to get.

*Pātor, passus*, to suffer. So, *per-pātor*.

*Apiscor, aptus*, to get. So, *adipiscor, adeptus*; and *indipiscor, indeptus*.

*Commīniscor, commentus*, to devise, or invent.

*Fruor, fructus, or fructus*, to enjoy. So, *per-fruor*.

*Oblīniscor, oblitus*, to forget.

*Expergiscor, experrectus*, to awake.

*Morior, mortuus*, to die. So, *com-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, prae-morior*.

*Nāscor, nātus*, to be born. So, *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nāscor*.

*Orior, oriri, ortus*, to rise. So, *ab-, ad-, cō-, ex-, ob-, sub-orior*.

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus*; thus, *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, oritūrus*.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

*Mētor, mēnsus*, to measure. So, *ad-, com-, di-, e-, prae-, re-mētor*

*Ordior, orsus*, to begin. So, *ex-, ed-ordior*.

*Expērior, expertus*, to try.

*Oppērior, oppertus, and oppertus*, to wait, or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect.

*Vescor, vesci*, to feed.

*Mēdeor, mederi*, to heal.

*Liquor, liqui*, to melt, or be dissolved.

*Rēmīniscor, reminisci*, to remember  
*Irascor, irasci*, to be angry.

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.  
Prævertor, præverti, to get before, to  
outrun.

Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to  
take lodging.

Diffiteor, diffitëri, to deny.

Defëtiscor, defëtisci, to be weary, or  
faint.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called  
*Irregular*.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum*, *eo*,  
*queo*, *völo*, *nölo*, *mälo*, *fëro*, and *fïo*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being com-  
pounds of *volo*.

*SUM* has already been conjugated. After the same man-  
ner are formed its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*,  
*sub-*, *super-sum*, and *insum*, which wants the preterite; thus,  
*adsum*, *adfui*, *adesse*, &c.

*PROSUM*, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*.

*Prosum*, *prodesse*, *profui*.

*Indicative Mode.*

PR. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sūmus, prod-estis, &c.

IMP. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-erāmus, &c.

PER. Pro-fui, pro-fuisti, pro-fuit; pro-fuīmus, pro-fuistis, &c.

PLU. Pro-fuēram, pro-fuēras, pro-fuērat; pro-fuerāmus, &c.

FUT. Prod-ëro, prod-ëris, prod-ërit; prod-erīmus, &c.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR. Pro-sim, pro-sis, pro-sit; pro-sīmus, pro-sītis, pro-sint.

IMP. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essēmus, &c.

PER. Pro-fuërim, pro-fuëris, pro-fuërit; pro-fuerīmus, &c.

PLU. Pro-fuissem, pro-fuisses, pro-fuisset; pro-fuissēmus, &c.

FUT. Pro-fuëro, pro-fuëris, pro-fuërit; pro-fuerīmus, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

PR. 2. Prod-es or prod-esto, 2. Prod-este or prod-estöte,

3. Prod-esto;

3. Pro-sunto.

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR. Prod-esse.

FUT. Esse pro-fatūrus, -a, -um,

PER. Pro-fuisse.

Fuisse pro-futūrus.

*Participle.*

FUT. Pro-futūrus.

*POSSUM* is compounded of *pötis*, able, and *sum*: and is thus  
conjugated:

Possum, posse, pōtui. *To be able.*

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest;	possūmus,	potestis,	possunt
IMP.	Pot-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
PER.	Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit,	-uīmus,	-uistis,	} -uērunt or -uēre.
PLU.	Pot-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	
FUT	Pot-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
IMP.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
PER	Pot-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.
PLU	Pot-uissēm,	-uissēs,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
FUT	Pot-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-uerītis,	-uērint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR.	Posse.	PER.	Potuisse.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>
-----	--------	------	-----------	--------------------------

EO, ire, īvi, itum. *To go.*

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Eo, ī	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
IMP.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
PER	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivīmus,	ivistis,	ivērunt or ivēre.
PLU	Ivēram,	ivēras,	ivērat;	iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivērant.
FUT	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibīmus,	ibītis,	ibunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
IMP.	Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
PER.	Ivērim,	ivēris,	ivērit;	iverīmus,	iverītis,	ivērint.
PLU.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.
FUT.	Ivēro,	ivēris,	ivērit;	iverīmus,	iverītis,	ivērint.

*Imperative Mode.*

PR.	{ I,	ite,	eunto.
	{ Ito, ito;	{ itōte,	

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR.	Ire.
PER.	Ivisse.
FUT.	Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
	Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

*Participles.*

PR.	Iens,	Gen.	euntis.
FUT.	Itūrus,	-a, -um.	

*Gerunds.*

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

*Supines.*

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-, ab-, ex-, cō-, in-, inter-, ob-, rēd-, sub-, pēr-, prae-, ante-, prae- eo*; only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii*, seldom *adivi, aditum, adtre*, to go to; perf. *Adii, adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram, adiērim*, &c. So likewise *VENIO, veni*, —, to

be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMRIO*, -*ivi*, -*itum*, -*ire*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

*Eo*, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *ivit*, he is gone; *ivērat*, he was gone; *ivērit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So, *rēnit*, he is coming; *rēnit*, he has come; *vēnērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericūla adeuntur*, are under-gone. Cic. *Lībri sibyllini adīti sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*. Cæs. *Inimicitia subeantur*. Cic.

*QUEO*, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

**VOLO**, velle, vōlui, *To will, or to be willing.*

### Indicative Mode.

PR.	Vōl-o,	vis,	vult;	volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
IMP.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	} -uērunt or -uēre.
PLU.	Vol-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uērant.
FUT.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent

### Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
IMP.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
PER.	Vol-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	uērint.
PLU.	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent
FUT.	Vol-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.

### Infinitive Mode.

### Participle.

PR.	Velle.	PER.	Voluisse.	PR.	Volens
-----	--------	------	-----------	-----	--------

*The rest not used.*

**NOLO**, nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.*

### Indicative Mode.

PR.	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolūmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt
IMP.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	} -uērunt or -uēre.
PLU.	Nol-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uērant.
FUT.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	nolēmus,	nolētis,	noent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint
IMP.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
PER.	Nol-uērim,	-uēris,	uērit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Nol-uissem,	-uissez,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent
FUT.	Nol-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.**Participle.**2. Sing. 2. Plur.*

PR.	{ Noli or	{ nolite or	PR. Nolle.	PR. Nolens.
	{ Nolito.	{ nolitote.	PER. Nolujsse.	<i>The rest wanting</i>

MALO, malle, malui. *To be more willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Mai-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
IMP.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uīstis,	{ -uērunt or -uēre.
PLU.	Mal-uēram,	-uēras,	-uērat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uērant.
FUT.	Mal-am,	-es,	-et; &c.	<i>This is scarcely in use.</i>		

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR.	Malim,	malis,	malit;	malimus,	malitis,	malint
IMP.	Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent
PER.	Mal-uērim,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.
PLU.	Mal-uissem,	-uissez,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent
FUT.	Mal-uēro,	-uēris,	-uērit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uērint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR. Malle. PER. Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, ferre, tūli, lātum. *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

PR.	Fēro,	fers,	fert;	ferimus,	fertis,	ferunt.
IMP.	Fer-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulimus,	tulistis,	{ tulērunt or -ēre.
PLU.	Tul-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
FUT.	Feram,	feres,	feret;	ferēmus,	ferētis,	ferent.



*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR. Feram,	feras,	ferat,	ferāmus,	ferātis,	ferant.
IMP. Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferrēmus,	ferrētis,	ferrent.
PER. Tul-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīnus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
PLU. Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
FUT. Tul-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-ērint.

*Imperative Mode.*

*Infinitive Mode.*

PR. Fer,	ferto;	{ ferte,	ferunto.	PR. Ferre.
Ferto,		{ fertōte,		PER. Tulisse.
				FUT. Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
				Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um

*Participles.*

*Gerunds.*

*Supines.*

PR. Fērens.	Ferendum,	1. Lātum.
FUT. Latūrus, -a, -um.	Ferendi,	2. Lātu.
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, ferri, lātus. *To be brought.*

*Indicative Mode.*

PR. Fēror,	{ ferris or ferre,	{ fertur; ferīmur, ferimīni, feruntur.
IMP. Fer-ebur,	{ -ebāris or -ebāre,	{ -ebātur; -ebāmur, -ebamīni, -ebantur.
PER. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.		
PLU. Latus eram, &c. latus fuēram, &c.		
FUT. Ferar,	{ ferēris or ferere,	{ ferētur; ferēmur feremīni, ferentur.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

PR. Ferar,	{ ferāris, or ferāre,	{ ferātur; ferāmur, feramīni, ferantur.
IMP. Ferrer,	{ ferrēris or ferrere,	{ ferrētur; ferrēmur, ferremīni, ferrentur.
PER. Latus sim, &c. latus fuērim, &c.		
PLU. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.		
FUT. Latus fuēro, &c.		

*Imperative Mode.*

PR. Ferre or fertor, fertor; ferimīni, feruntor.

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Participles.*

PR. Ferri.	PER. Latus, -a, -um.
PER. Esse or fuisse latus, -a, -um.	FUT. Ferendus, -a, -um.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allātum*; *aufēro*, *abstūdi*, *ablātum*; *diffēro*, *distūli*, *dilātum*; *confero*, *contūli*, *collātum*; *infēro*, *intūli*, *illātum*; *offēro*, *obtūli*, *oblātum*; *effēro*, *extūli*, *elātum*. So, *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-*, *re-fēro*. In some

writers find *adfēro*, *adtūli*, *adlātum*; *conlātum*; *inlātum*; *obfēro*, &c. for *affēro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo* for *magis volo*; *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Feror*, *feris* or *ferre*, *fertur*, for *ferrēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, and *fācio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*; instead of *dice*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

**FIO, fiēri, factus.** *To be made or done, to become.*

#### Indicative Mode.

PR. Fio, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.  
 IMP. Fiēbam, fiēbas, fiēbat; fiebāmus, fiebātis, fiēbant.  
 PER. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.  
 PLU. Factus eram, &c. factus fuēram, &c.  
 FUT. Fiam, fies, fiet; fiēmus, fiētis, fient.

#### Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiāmus, fiātis, fiant.  
 IMP. Fiērem, fiēres, fiēret; fierēmus, fierētis, fiērent.  
 PER. Factus sim, &c. factus fuērim, &c.  
 PLU. Factus essem, &c. factus fuisset, &c.  
 FUT. Factus fuēro, &c.

#### Imperative Mode.

PR. { Fi, fite, fiunto,  
 { Fito, fitote,

#### Infinitive Mode

PR. Fiēri.  
 PER. Esse or fuisse factus, -a, -um.  
 FUT. Factum iri.

#### Participles.

PER. Factus, -a, -um.  
 FUT. Faciendus, -a, -um.

#### Supine.

Factu.

The compounds of *fācio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *culefacio*, to warm, *culefio*, *calēfac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confici*, *confectus*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confiēri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo*, *solēre*, *solitus*, to use; *audeo*, *audēre*, *ausus*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gaudēre*, *gavisus*, to rejoice; *fīdo*, *fidēre*, *fīsus*, to trust. So, *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *mæreo*, *mæreere*, *mæstus*, to be sad; but *mæstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūrātus*

*sum* and *cænātus sum*, for *jurāvi* and *cænāvi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapūlo*, -*āvi*, -*ātum*, to be beaten or whipped; *vĕneo*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cæpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification, thus,

*Ōdi*, I hate, or have hated, *odĕram*, *odĕrim*, *odissem*, *odĕro*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osūrus*; *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

*Cæpi*, I begin, or have begun, *cæpĕram*, -*ĕrim*, -*issem*, -*ĕro*, -*isse*. Supine, *cæptu*. Participles, *cæptus*, *cæptūrus*.

*Mēmīni*, I remember, or have remembered, *meminĕram*, -*ĕrim*, -*issem*, -*ĕro*, -*isse*. Imperative, *memento*, *mementōte*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum*: and always *exōsus*, *perōsus sum*, and not *exōdi*, *perōdi*. We say, *opus cæpit fieri*, or *cæptum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

*Furo*, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *fōrem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow: *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait;	—	—	aiunt.
Imp.	Aiĕbam,	-ĕbas,	-ĕbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ebant.
Per.	—	aisti,	—	—	—	—
Sub. Pr.	—	aias,	aiat;	—	aiātis,	aiant.
Imp.	Ai.	—	—	—	Part. Pr.	Aiens
Ind. Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit;	-quīmus,	-quītis,	-quint.
Imp.	—	—	inquĕbat;	—	—	inquĕbant.
Per.	—	inquiſti,	—	—	—	—
Fut.	—	inquiet,	inquiet;	—	—	—
Imp.	Inque, inquĭto.	—	—	—	Part. Pr.	Inquiens.
Sub. Imp.	} Fōrem, fores, foret;	forĕmus,	forĕtis.	forent.		
Plc.						

Inf. Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with *esse futurus*.

Sub. PR.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit;	—	—	—
PER.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit;	—	—	faxint.
FUT.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit;	—	faxitis,	faxint

Note. *Faxim* and *fazo* are used instead of *fecërim* and *fecëro*.

Imp. Ave or avëto; plur. avëte or avetôte. Inf. avëre.  
Salve or salvëto; — salvëte or salvetôte. — salvëre.

Ind. FUT. — Salvëbis.

Imp. second pers. sing. Cedo, plur. cedîte.

Ind. PRES. first pers. sing. Quæso, plur. quæsumus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets: as, *infüt*, he begins; *defüt*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis*, for *si vis* if thou wilt; *sütlis*, for *si vultis*; *sodes*, for *si audes*; equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *capsis*, for *cape si vis*.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs, in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *delectat*, it delights; *dëcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evënit*, it happens:

	1st. Conj.	2d. Conj.	3d. Conj.	4th. Conj.
Ind. PR.	Delectat,	Dëcet,	Contingit,	Evënit,
IMP.	Delectäbat,	Decëbat,	Contingëbat,	Evëniëbat,
PER.	Delectävit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evënit,
PLU.	Delectavërat,	Decuërat,	Contigërat,	Evenërat,
FUT.	Delectäbit.	Decëbit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub. PR.	Delectet,	Dëcent,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
IMP.	Delectäret,	Decëret,	Contingëret,	Eveniret,
PER.	Delectavërit,	Decuërit,	Contigërit,	Evenërit,
PLU.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
FUT.	Delectavërit.	Decuërit.	Contigërit.	Evenërit.
Inf. PR.	Delectäre.	Decëre.	Contingëre.	Evenire.
PER.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnätur*, *fävëtur*, *currütur*, *vënütur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind. PR.	Pugnatur,	Fävëtur,	Currütur,	Vënütur,
IMP.	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
PER.	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
PLU.	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
FUT.	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Currëtur.	Veniëtur.
Sub. PR.	Pugnëtur,	Faveatur,	Currätur,	Veniätur,
IMP.	Pagnarëtur,	Faverëtur,	Currerëtur,	Venirëtur,
PER.	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
PLU.	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
FUT.	Pugnatum fuërit.	Fautum fuërit.	Cursum fuërit.	Ventum fuërit.

Inf. Pr. Pugnāri.	Favēri.	Curri.	Veniri.
PER. Pugnātum esse.	Fautum esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
Fut. Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative; but instead of that we use the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight; &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *panitens*, -dum, -dus, &c. *Indūci ad pudendum et pigendum*. Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pēnitēt*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *piget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleaseth; *tædet*, it wearieeth; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *misēret*, *miseruit*, or *misertum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *puduit*, or *putitum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tædet*, *tæduit*, *tæsum est*, oftener *pertasum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jūvat*, *spectat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lātet*, *liquet*, *pātet*, *plācet*, *displicet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also, irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *supērest*; *fit*, *præterit*, *nēquit*, and *nequitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *refert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgurat*, *fulminat*, *tonat*, *grandinat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnātur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So, *Curritur*, *venitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favētur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa homīni contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third ; as, *lavo, lavas, lavāre* ; and *lavo, lavas, lucrēre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third ; as,

*Ferve*, *ferves* ; and *fervo, fervis, to boil*.

*Fulgeo, fulges* ; and *fulgo, fulgis, to shine*.

*Strideo, strides* ; and *strido, stridis, to make a hissing noise, to creak*.

*Tueor, tuēris, and tuor, tuēris, to defend*.

To these add *tergeo, terges* ; and *tergo, tergis, to wipe*, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth ; as,

*Fodio, fodis, fodēre, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig*.

*Sallo, sallis, sallēre, and sallio, sallis, sallire, to salt*.

*Arcesso, -is, arcessēre, and arcessio, arcessire, to send for*.

*Morior, morēris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die*.

*So, Orior, orēris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise*.

*Potior, potēris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to enjoy*.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cico, cies, ciēre* ; and *cio, cis, cire, to rouse* ; whence, *accire* and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which, though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum* ; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis or es, edīt or est* ; — *editis or estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Edērem or essem, edēres or esses, &c.*

Imp. *Ede or es, edito or esto* ; *edite or este* ; *editōte or estōte*.

Inf. Pres. *Edēre or esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur or estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated :

*Aggēro, -as, to heap up*.

*Appello, -as, to call*.

*Compello, -as, to address*.

*Colligo, -as, to bind*.

*Consterno, -as, to astonish*.

*Effēro, -as, to enrage*.

*Fundo, -as, to found*.

*Mando, -as, to command*.

*Obsēro, -as, to lock*.

*Vōlo, -as, to fly*.

*Aggēro, -is, to bring together*.

*Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive*.

*Compello, -is, to drive together*.

*Colligo, -is, to gather together*.

*Consterno, -is, to strew*.

*Effēro, -fers, to bring out*.

*Fundo, -is, to pour out*.

*Mando, -is, to chew*.

*Obsēro, -is, to beset*.

*Vōlo, vis, to will*.

Of this class some have a different quantity ; as,

*Cōlo, -as, to strain*.

*Dico, -as, to dedicate*.

*Educo, -as, to train up*.

*Lēgo, -as, to send on an embassy*.

*Vādo, -as, to wade*.

*Cōlo, -is, to tell*.

*Dico, -is, to say*.

*Educo, -is, to lead forth*.

*Lēgo, -is, to read*.

*Vādo, -is, to go*.

## 2. The following verbs agree in the preterite:

Acceo, acui, *to be sour.*  
 Cresco, crevi, *to grow.*  
 Frigeo, frixi, *to be cold.*  
 Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*  
 Luceo, luxi, *to shine.*  
 Paveo, pavi, *to be afraid.*  
 Pendo, pependi, *to hang.*

Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.* ✱  
 Cerno, crevi, *to see.*  
 Frigo, frixi, *to fry.*  
 Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*  
 Lugeo, luxi, *to mourn.*  
 Pasco, pavi, *to feed.*  
 Pendo, pependi, *to weigh.*

## 3. The following agree in the supine:

Cresco, cretum, *to grow.*  
 Māneo, mansum, *to stay.*  
 Sto, statum, *to stand.*  
 Succenseo, -censum, *to be angry.*  
 Tēneo, tentum, *to hold.*  
 Verro, versum, *to sweep.*  
 Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*

Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*  
 Mando, mansum, *to chew*  
 Sisto, statum, *to stop.*  
 Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*  
 Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*  
 Verto, versum, *to turn.*  
 Vivo, victum, *to live.*

## THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM* without the *e*; as, *audibam, scibam*, for *audiēbam, sciēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the passive voice; as, *dormibo, dormibor*, for *dormiam, dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*; as, *edim* for *edam*; *duim* for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levassim, levasso*, for *levavērim, levavēro*; *capssim, capso*, for *cepērim, cepēro*. Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levassēre*, for *levatūrus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as, *famino*, for *fare*, and *progrēdiminor*, for *progrēdimini*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *furier*, for *furi*; *dicier*, for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable; thus, *credo inimicos dictūrum esse*, for *dictūros*. Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias* for *missas*. Cic. ad. Attic. viii. 12.

## DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*;

as, *Cæno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *opëror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel; &c. from *cæna, laus, fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrisso, Græcor, bubulo*,

*cornitor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *itū* into *itō*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamito*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrō*; *verto*, *verso*; *dormio*, *dormito*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minitor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito*, from *nosco*; *sciōr*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *sciō*; *parito*, from *parveo*, *sector*; from *sequor*; *loquitor*, from *loquor*. So, *querito*, *fundito*, *agrito*, *fructo*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *curō*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsō*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captō*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantō*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensō*; *duco*, *dicto*, *dictō*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestō*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactō*; *venio*, *vento*, *ventō*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutito*), *musso*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerusco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *canātūrio*, I desire to sup, from *canātū*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *esūrio*, *-vri*, *-itum*, to desire to eat; *partūrio*, *-vri*, — to be in travail; *nuptūrio*, *-vri*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in *LLO*, which are called *DIMINUTIVE*; as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, *-āre*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albico*, and *candico*, *-are*, to be, or to grow whitish; also, *nigrīco*, *fodīco*, and *velīco*. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso*, *facesso*, *petesso*, or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

11. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Futo*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo*; or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trudo*, *pejēro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjūro*, *perrēgo*, *dehibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So, *deino*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified, *to take*, or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition is changed: as

*damno, condemno; calco, conculco; ludo, collido; audio, obedio, &c. Affero, aufero, collaudo, implico, &c. for aufero, abfero, conlaudo, implico, &c.*

## PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of Adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb having, in Latin, gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amāturus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved; *quum amavisset, &c.*

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens, sessurus; stans, staturus.*

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Errātus, festinātus, jurātus, laborātus, vigilātus, cessātus, sudātus, triumphātus, regnātus, decursus, desitus, emeritus, emersus, obitus, placitus, successus, occāsus, &c.* and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus, &c.* Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *sisus*; *soleo, solens*, and *solitus*; *vapulo, rapulus*, and *vapulātus*; *Gaudeo, gaudens, gavisus*, and *gavisurus*; *Audeo, audens, ausus, ausurus, audendus.* *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immāne nefus, ausōque potiti.* Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

*Loquens*, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignāturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignātus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignundus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominātus, conātus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testātus, tenerātus, &c.*

There are several Participles, compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as,

*Insciens, insperans, indicens* for *non dicens*, *inoptans* and *necoptans*, *immrens*; *Illasus, impransus, inconsultus, incustoditus, immetatus, im-punitus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indotatus, in-corruptus, interritus*, and *impeirritus, intestatus, inuusus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus*; *indisus* for *non visus*; *indictus* for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *inceasus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficio*; *invisus* from *invideo*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

*Amans*, loving, *amantior, amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus*: or a substantive; as, *Praefectus*, a commander or governor; *consónans*, f. sc. *littera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent, *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS, ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, cristatus, auritus, pellitus, turritus*; *astutus, cornutus, nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, aratus, argentatus, ferratus, plum-batus, gypsatus, calceatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palli-datus, lymphatus, purpuratus, praeextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *pertus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much. *Sal. Jug.* 60. and 101. *Liv. xxv.* 13. So, *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus*, &c.

### Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum, -di, -do, -dus*; *experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, petundum, ducundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number.

They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coc-tum non vapulatum, dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, or *verberärer*, to be beaten. Plaut.

## ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Motion or rest in a place.</i>		Illorsum,	<i>Thitheward.</i>
Ubi?	<i>Where?</i>	Sursum,	<i>Upward.</i>
Hic,	<i>Here.</i>	Deorsum,	<i>Downward.</i>
Illic,	}	Antrosum,	<i>Forward.</i>
Isthic,		Retrorsum,	<i>Backward.</i>
Ibi,		Dextrosum,	<i>Towards the right.</i>
Intus,	<i>Within.</i>	Sinistrosum,	<i>Towards the left.</i>
Fors,	<i>Without.</i>		
Ubique,	<i>Every where.</i>		
Nusquam,	<i>No where.</i>		
Alicubi,	<i>Some where.</i>		
Alibi,	<i>Else where.</i>		
Ubivis,	<i>Any where.</i>		
Ibidem,	<i>In the same place</i>		
2. <i>Motion to a place.</i>			
Quo?	<i>Whither?</i>		
Huc,	<i>Hither.</i>		
Illuc,	}		
Isthuc,			
Intro,	<i>In.</i>		
Fors,	<i>Out.</i>		
Eò,	<i>To that place.</i>		
Aliò,	<i>To another place.</i>		
Aliquò,	<i>To some place.</i>		
Eodem,	<i>To the same place</i>		
3. <i>Motion towards a place.</i>			
Quorsum?	<i>Whitherward?</i>		
Versus,	<i>Towards.</i>		
Horsum,	<i>Hitherward.</i>		
		4. <i>Motion from a place.</i>	
		Unde?	<i>Whence?</i>
		Hinc,	<i>Hence.</i>
		Illinc,	}
		Isthinc,	
		Inde,	<i>Thence.</i>
		Indidem,	<i>From the same place.</i>
		Aliunde,	<i>From elsewhere.</i>
		Alicunde,	<i>From some place.</i>
		Sicunde,	<i>If from any place.</i>
		Utrinque,	<i>On both sides.</i>
		Superne,	<i>From above.</i>
		Inferne,	<i>From below.</i>
		Cœlitus,	<i>From heaven.</i>
		Funditus,	<i>From the ground.</i>
		5. <i>Motion through or by a place.</i>	
		Quà?	<i>Which way?</i>
		Hàc,	<i>This way.</i>
		Illac,	}
		Isthac,	
		Alià,	<i>That way.</i>
			<i>Another way.</i>

2. Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.</i>		Nunquam,	Never.
Nunc,		Intërim,	In the mean time.
Hödie,	Novo.	Quötidie,	Daily.
Tunc,	To-day.	2. <i>Continuance of time</i>	
Tum,	Then.	Diu,	Long.
Hëri,	Yesterday.	Quamdiu?	How long?
Dudum,	Heretofore.	Tamdiu,	So long.
Pridem,		Jamdiu,	Long ago.
Pridie,	The day before.	Jumdudum,	
Nadus tertius,	Three days ago.	Jampridem,	3. <i>Vicissitude or repetition of time.</i>
Nuper,	Lately.	Quöties?	
Jamjam,	Presently.	Sæpe,	How often?
Mox,	Immediately.	Rarò,	Often.
Statim,	By and by.	Töties,	Seldom.
Prötinus,	Instantly.	Aliquöties,	So often.
Illico,	Straightway.	Vicissim,	For several times.
Cras,	To-morrow.	Alternatim,	By turns.
Postridie,	The day after.	Rursus,	
Pärendie,	Two days hence.	Itërum,	Again.
Nondum,	Not yet.	Säbinde,	Ever and anon,
Quando?	When?	Identidem,	
Aliquando,	Sometimes.	Sëmel,	Once,
Nonnunquam,		Bis,	Twice,
Interdum,	Ever, always.	Ter,	Thrice,
Semper,		Quäter,	Four times, &c.

### 3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	Then.	Dënique,	Finally.
Deinde,	After that.	Postremò,	Lastly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Primò, -üm,	First.
Porro,	Moreover.	Sëcundò, -üm,	Secondly.
Deinceps,	So forth.	Tertiò, -üm,	Thirdly.
Dënuo,	Anew.	Quartò, -üm,	Fourthly, &c.

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called ABSOLUTE denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *benè*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *pröfectò*, *certè*, *sänè*, *plänè*, *v.c.*, *ütique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, *furte*, *fursan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequäquam*, not at all, *neutiquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edëpol*, *meästor*, by Hercules, by Pol-lux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING: as, *utpöte*, *vidëlicet*, *scilicet*, *nimirum*, *nampe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sēpārdīm*, separately; *sigillatim*, one by one; *virītim*, man by man; *oppiddātīm*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *stimul*, und, *pārīter*, together; *gēnērālīter*, generally; *ūnīversālīter*, universally; *plērumquē*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quāmobrēm*, why, wherefore? *nam*, *an*, whether? *quōmōdo*, *quī*, how? To which add, *Ūbi*, *quō*, *quorūm*, *undē*, *quōd*, *quādo*, *quāmdīu*, *quōtīes*.

Those adverbs which are called COMPARATIVE denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde*, *maxīme*, *magnopēre*, *maximopēre*, *summopēre*, *admōdum*, *oppiddō*, *perquam*, *longē*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nīmīs*, *nīmīum*, too much; *prorsus*, *penītus*, *omnīno*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melīus*, better; *pejūs*, worse; *fortīus*, more bravely; and *optīmē*, best; *pejīmē*, worst; *fortīssīmē*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *Fērdē*, *fērdē*, *prōpēmōdum*, *pēnē*, almost; *pārum*, little; *paulō*, *paulūlum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *pōtīus*, *sātīus*, rather; *pōtīssīmum*, *nrācipuē*, *prāsertīm*, chiefly, especially; *imō*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *īlū*, *sic*, *ādēō*, so; *ūt*, *ūtī*, *sicut*, *sicūtī*, *velūt*, *velūtī*, *cū*, *tāquam*, *quāsi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *sātīs*, enough; *īdēm*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, *alīter*, *secus*, otherwise; *aliōquī* or *aliōquīn*, else; *nēdum*, much more, or much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim*, *paulātīm*, *pēdētentīm*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vīz*, scarcely; *agrē*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantūm*, *sōlūm*, *modō*, *tantummodo*, *duntaxat*, *dēmum*, only.

#### DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *TIM* or *TUS*; as, *Partīm*, partly, by parts; *nominātīm*, by name; *generātīm*, by kind, generally; *speciātīm*, *vicātīm*, *gregātīm*; *radicītus*, from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *E*; as, *liberē*, freely; *plēnē*, fully: some in *O*, *UM*, and *TER*; as, *falsō*, *tantūm*, *gravīter*: a few in *A*, *ITUS*, and *IM*; as, *rectā*, *antiqūtus*, *privātīm*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *prīmum*, or *-ō*, *purē*, *-īter*; *certē*, *-ō*; *cautē*, *-īm*; *humanē*, *-īter*, *-ītus*; *publicē*, *publicītus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *TER*, seldom in *E*; as, *turpīter*, *felicīter*, *acritē*, *paritē*; *facilē*, *repente*: one in *O*, *omnīno*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidē*, *Hor. multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valdē*, *Virg.* So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a substantive is understood; as, *primō*, sc. *loco*: *optatō advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hāc*, sc. *viā*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *ILLE*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illuc*. So from *QUIS*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *undē*, and *quā* also of time; thus, *quando*, *quāmdīu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cāsim*, with the edge; *punctīm*, with the point; *strictīm*, closely; from *cādo*, *pungo*, *stringo*; *amanter*

*pröperanter, dubitanter; distinctè, emendatè; meritò, inopinätò, &c.* But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.

5. From prepositions; *as, intus, intro*, from *in*; *clancülum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; *as, durè, facìlè, acriter*: the *comparative*, in *ius*; *as, durius, facilius, acrius*: the *superlative*, in *ime*; *as, durissimè, facillimè, acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too, *as, benè, melius, optimè; malè, pejüs, vessimè; parüm, minüs, minimè, & -um; multum, plus, plurimüm; prope, propius, proximè; ocius, ocysimè; prius, primò, -um; nuper, nuperrimè; novè, & noviter, novissimè; meritò, meritissimò, &c.* Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; *as, sape, sapius, sapissimè; penitus, penitiüs, penitissimè; satis, satius; secus, secius, &c.* *Magis, maximè*; and *potius, potissimüm*, want the positive.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postredie, magnopère, maximopère, summopère, tantopère, multimodis, omnimodis, quomodo, quare*; of *postèro die, magno opère, &c.* *Illicet, scilicet, videlicet*, of *ire, scire, vidère, licet*; *illico*, of *in loco*, *quorsum*, of *quo versum*; *commünus*, hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus*, *eminus*, at a distance, of *e* and *manus*; *quorsum*, of *quo versum*; *denuo*, anew, of *de novo*; *quin*, why not, but, of *cui ne*; *cur*, of *cui rei*; *pedetentim*, step by step, as it were, of *pedem tendendo*; *perendie*, for *perempto die*; *nimirum*, of *ne*, i. e. *non*, and *mirum*; *antea, postea, præterea, &c.* of *ante* and *ea*, &c. *Ubivis, quotis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, destuper, insuper, quamobrem, &c.* of *ubi* and *vis, &c.* *nudiustertius*, of *nunc dies tertius*; *identidem*, of *idem et idem*; *inprasentidrum*, i. e. *in tempore rerum presentium, &c.*

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; *as, sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientiä*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *undä vice*; *bis*, for *duäbus vicibus*; *Mehercule*, for *Hercüles me juvet, &c.*

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; *as, ubi*, where, or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present, or future*; *as, jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregre*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *soever*; *as, ubiubi, or ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquò, quodcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; *as, quotquot, or quocunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus, or quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut, or utcunque*, however or howsoever &c.

## PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	To.	Infra,	Beneath.
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ante,	Before.	Ob,	For.
Adversus, }	<i>Against, towards.</i>	Propter,	For, hard by.
Adversum, }		Per,	By, through.
Contra,	<i>Against.</i>	Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis, }	<i>On this side.</i>	Pōnes,	In the power of.
Citra, }		Post,	After.
Circa, }	<i>About.</i>	Pōne,	Behind.
Circum, }		Sēcus,	By, along.
Erga,	<i>Towards.</i>	Sēcundum,	According to.
Extra,	<i>Without.</i>	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	<i>Between, among.</i>	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	<i>Within.</i>	Ultra,	Beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; name'y :

A, }	<i>From or by.</i>	De,	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
Ab, }		E, }	<i>Of, out of.</i>
Abs, }	<i>Without.</i>	Ex, }	<i>For.</i>
Absque,		Pro,	<i>Before.</i>
Cum,	<i>With.</i>	Præ,	{ <i>With the knowledge of.</i>
Clam,	{ <i>Without the knowl-</i>	Palam,	
	{ <i>edge of.</i>	Sine,	<i>Without.</i>
Cōram,	{ <i>Before, in the pres-</i>	Tenus,	<i>Up to, as far as.</i>
	{ <i>ence of.</i>		

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative.

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Sūper, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui*, and *quibus*: thus, *mecum, tecum, &c.* *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque*; and *ward*, in English; as, *toward, eastward, &c.*

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English, they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum.* Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas.* C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendārum decembris distūlit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem.* Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die.* Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris.* Plin. But prepositions compounded

together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propālam*, *proptinus*, *instūper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as, *adeo*, to go to: *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. *IN*, joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *induro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invocātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So, *infrēdātus*, *immutātus*, *insuētus*, *impensus*, *inhumātus*, *intēntātus*, &c. 2. *PÆR* commonly increases the signification; as, *Percārus*, *percēter*, *percōmis*, *percuriōsus*, *perdifficilis*, *perelēgans*, *pergrātus*, *pergrāvis*, *perhospitālis*, *perillustris*, *perlatus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *PÆE* sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus*, *prædivus*, *prædulcis*, *prædurus*, *præpinguis*, *prævalidus*; *prævaleo*, *præpolleo*; and also *Ex*; as, *Exclāmo*, *exaggēro*, *exaugeo*, *excalefacio*, *extenuo*, *exhilaro*; but *EX* sometimes denotes privation; as, *Ezsanguis*, bloodless, pale: *excors*, *exanimis*, -mo, &c. 4. *SUB* often diminishes; as, *Subalbidus*, *subabsurdus*, *subamārus*, *subdulcis*, *subgrandis*, *subgrāvis*, *subniger*; &c. a little white or whitish, &c. *DE* often signifies downward; as, *Decido*, *decurro*, *degrāvo*, *despicio*, *delāhor*: sometimes increases; as, *deāmor*, *demitror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens*, *decolor*, *deformis*, &c.

Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	<i>round about.</i>	}	as	{	Ambio,	<i>to surround.</i>
Di,	<i>asunder.</i>				Divello,	<i>to pull asunder.</i>
Dis,					Distrāho,	<i>to draw asunder.</i>
Re,	<i>again.</i>				Rēlēgo,	<i>to read again.</i>
Se,	<i>aside, or apart.</i>				Sēpono,	<i>to lay aside.</i>
Con,	<i>together.</i>				Concreesco,	<i>to grow together.</i>

## INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh!* *Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah*, *hei*, *heu*, *heu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apdæ!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fie, tush!

6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh, proh! O!*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat! ha, aha!*
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ! woe, pox on't!*
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *eho, ehódum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem! ha!*

Some interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

## CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, "*You and I and the boy read Virgil,*" is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and*, twice employed; *I read Virgil, You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid,*" is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, at, atque, que,* and; *etiam, quòque, item,* also; *cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, nèque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quampis,* though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui,* but; *tamen, attàmen, veruntàmen, verumènimvèro,* yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim,* for; *quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quòd,* that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, idàque,* therefore; *quapropter, quocirca,* wherefore; *proinde,* therefore; *cum, quum,* seeing, since; *quandoquidem,* forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti;* that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin,* if; *dum, modo, dummodo,* provided, upon condition that; *siguidem,* if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi,* unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe,* at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num,* whether, *ne, annon,* whether, not; *necne,* or not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero,* now, truly; *quidem, equidè,* indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde,* thereafter; *denique,* finally; *insuper,* moreover; *cetèrum,* moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum,* &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne,* &c. are either *interrogative*

*adverbs*; as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.*; some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.*

Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*; because, when put after a long syllable, they make the accent *incline* to that syllable; as in the following verse,

*Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit.* Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

*Arbuteos factus, montanæque fraga legēbant.* Ovid.

# SYNTAX,

OR

## CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS IN SENTENCES

---

### SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar, which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or *Agreement*; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

*Concord*, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

*Government* is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood: or by a verbal adjective.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

All sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

*Syntax* therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

## SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb; that is, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject; as,

*The boy reads his lesson.* Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of: "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home.* Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

## CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences. 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

## 1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

**RULE I.** Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,

*Cicero orator*, Cicero the orator; *Ciceronis oratoris*, Of Cicero the orator. *Urbs Athenæ*, The city Athens; *Urbis Athénarum*, Of the city Athens.

## 2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

**II.** An adjective agrees with a Substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bonus vir*, a good man; *Boni viri*, good men.  
*Fœmina casta*, a chaste woman; *Fœminæ castæ*, chaste women.  
*Dulce pomum*, a sweet apple; *Dulcia poma*, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to adjective pronouns, and to participles;

as, *Meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled; Plur. *Mei libri*, *agri colendi*, &c.

**Obs. 1.** The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing. Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge. Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriôres feram*, sup. *partes*. Ter

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona fortuna*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *fortuna*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incōla turba vocant*, the inhabitants. *Ovid. Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cætēra*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res præstantissima*; &c.

### 3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person.; as,

*Ego lego*, I read; *Nos legimus*, We read.  
*Tu scribis*, Thou writest or you write; *Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write.  
*Præceptor docet*, The master teaches; *Præceptōres docent*, Masters teach.  
 And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patrōnus*, *tu pater*. Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlūtūm tenuit dictatōrem*; the sacrifice, not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time. Liv. 7, 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet*, *id est esse regem*. Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiēbant*, or *fugere cæperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidēbant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; the multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies

many separately, or as individuals. Hence if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixa trudent, sc. formicæ.* Virg. *Æn.* iv. 406. *Magna pars rapta, sc. virgines.* Liv. 1, 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus,* Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

*Accusative before the Infinitive.*

IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

*Gaudeo te valere,*      I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare,* They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere,* That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum cæsum fustumque cognovi.* Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum, scil. me esse.* Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod, ut, ne, or quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere, i. e. quod valens,* or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem: Jubeo vos bene sperare, or ut bene speretis; Prohibeo eum exire, or ne exeat: Non dubito eum fecisse, or much better, quin fecerit. Scio quod filius amet. Plaut. for filium amare. Miror, si potuit, for eum potuisse. Cic. Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superaret, for populum Romanum superasse. Nep. Ex animi sententiâ juro, ut ego rempublicam non deseram, for me non deserturum esse. Liv. xxii. 53.*

*The same Case after a Verb as before it.*

V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

*Ego sum discipulus, .*

*Tu vocâris Joannes,*

*Illa incêdit regina,*

*Scio illum haberi sapientem,*

*Scio vos esse discipulos,*

I am a scholar.

You are named John.

She walks as a queen.

I know that he is esteemed wise.

I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evadent digni,* they will become wor-

thy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malum vidēri timidus, quam parum prudens*. Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligenti*. Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatīs*. Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putāri mendācem; Vult esse mediū*, sc. se, He wishes to be neuter. Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. eum. Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatōrem esse*. Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are :

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evādo, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncūpor*; to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutōr, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Intērest omnium esse bonos*, scil. se, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus or doctūm*, sc. me *dici; Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse mediū*.

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents. Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*. Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium irā amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love. Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellātum Posidōnia*. Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatūm*, me being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatūm*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatūm*. One may be happy, scil. *alicui, or homīni*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronēpos*, for *se esse pronēpōtem*. Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum patēris sapiens emendatusque vocārī, for te vocārī sapientem, &c.* Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refēro verbum esse nocens*. Ovid. *Tutumque putāvit jans bonus esse socer*. Lucan.

## GOVERNMENT.

## I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former ;*) as,

*Amor Dei*, The love of God.      *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.  
*Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense: thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So, *caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil. Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectōris Andromæche*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*; three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *cui corpus porrigitur*, whose body is extended. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *paz*, *cum aliquo*; *Amor in*, vel *erga*, *aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius*, vel *de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sall. &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus*, *illius*, *hujus*, &c. the book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*; the book of her, or her book, sc. *feminae*. *Libri eorum*, or *eorum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primi-

tives taken actively ; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee. Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labour. Plaut.

The possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *sus*, *noster*, *vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive, as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*. Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Naster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Mea scripta*, timentis, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*. Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon the nominative ; as, *Cato interfecit se*, *Miles defendit suum militem* : *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind ; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*. Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis profisciscantur*, for *una secum*. Cæs.

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative ; as,

*Vir summæ prudentiæ*, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.  
*Puer probæ indolis*, or *probâ indolē*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood ; as, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ* is the same with *vir cum summâ prudentiâ*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used ; as, *Magni formicæ laboris*, the laborious ant ; *Vir imi subsellii*, *homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war. Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*. Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative ; as, *Es buno animo*, Be of good courage. *Mirâ sum alacritate ad litigandum*. Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare ; *oboolûto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasis*. Id. *Mulier magno natu*. Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence ; as, *Adolescens, eximîâ spe, summæ virtutis*. Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative : thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio* ; or, *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction. *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdôche* ; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*. Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*. Virg.

*Adjectives taken as Substantives.*

VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive ; as,

*Multum pecuniæ*, Much money. *Quid rei est ?* What is the matter ?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers ; as, *Plus eloquen-*

*tie, minus sapientie, tantum fidei, id negotii; Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres.* Liv. *Id loci; Ad hoc ætatis.* Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis*: we find, however, *quicquid civilis.* Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opæ locorum, Telluris operæ, locu* being understood. So, *Amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia.* Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

### *Opus and Usus.*

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ*, There is need of money; *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectiônis opus est.* Quint. *Opæ usus est.* Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est.* We need a general. Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse.* Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt.* Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius. Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte, sit, quod opus sit sciri.* Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimiles.* Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis.* Horat. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit, &c.*

## II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

### 1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

*Avidus gloriæ*, Desirous of glory. *Ignârus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in *AX*; as, *capax*,

*edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax, &c.* and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appetens, cupiens, insolens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus, &c.* II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire, as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus, &c.* 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callidus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens, &c.* *Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis: ambiguus, dubius, suspensus, &c.* 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens; incuriosus, securus, negligens, &c.* 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus, intrepidus.* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *nozius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, fulsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, latus, prastans animi; modicus voti; integer vite; seri studiorum.* Hor. But we say, *ager pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, prastans doctrinæ, modicus cultu; latus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c.* and never *ager pedum, &c.*

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So, *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem; doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis.* Cic. *Avidior ad rem.* Ter. *Jure consultus & peritus, or juris.* Cic. *Rudis literarum, in jure civili.* Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala.* Ovid. *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis.* Cic. *Assuetus labore, in omnia.* Liv. *Mense herli.* Virg. *Insuetus moribus Romanis, in the dat.* Liv. *Laboris, ad onera portanda.* Cæs. *Desuetus bello et triumphis, in the dat or abl. rather the dat.* Virg. *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqui; diligens, in, ad, de.* Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re: Reus de vi, criminibus.* Cic. *Certior factus de re, rather than rei.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causâ* or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

*Aliquis philosophorum,  
Senior fratrum,  
Doctissimus Romanorum,*

Some one of the philosophers.  
The elder of the brothers.  
The most learned of the Romans.

*Quis nostrum ?*  
*Una musarum,*  
*Octāvus sapientium,*

Which of us ?  
 One of the muses.  
 The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*. Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*. Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*. Virg. *Primus inter omnes*. Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*. Liv. *Ultimus orbis Britannos*. Horat. Od. i. 35, 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two*; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three*; but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

## 2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

*Utilis bello,*  
*Perniciosus reipublicæ,*  
*Similis patri,*

Profitable for war.  
 Hurtful to the commonwealth.  
 Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*.—*Calumitosus, damnosus, dirus, exiliosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, letus, suavis*.—*ficerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevols, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, invidus, iratus, odiösus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignötus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens*.

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis, levis, obviüs, perviüs*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriösus, periculösus, inviüs*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

8. Of equality, or inequality; as, *Æquälis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar*.—*Inequälis, impar, dispar, discors*. Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus*.—*Dissimilis, absönus, aliénus, diversus, discolor*.

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognätus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consönus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous*; as, *Mari aër conti-nens est*. Cic.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *obnoxiüs, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*—particularly

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

*Amandus* or *amabilis omnibus*,

To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis, Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*. Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*. Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata*, hated by. Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. *a*; as, *Deus est venerandus et colendus a nobis*. Cic. Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta*, rather than *multis defleta*. Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi*.

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, or filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me; so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* Hor. *Exitium pecori*. Virg. *Virtutibus hostis*. Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æquälis, contrarius*, and *adversus*; as, *Similis tibi*, or

*tui*; *Superstes patri*, or *patris*; *Consciis facinōri*, or *facinōris*. *Consciis* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, dispares, æquales, commūnes, inter se*: *Par & commūnis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

*Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *attentus quaeritis*. Hor. *Attentus ad rem*. Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, diffidilis, fidelis, invisus, iratus, offensus, suspectus, alicui*. II. Some with the preposition *in* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratus, injurius, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, secerus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens, in aliquem*. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, going before; as, *Contumax, criminōsus, durus, eximibilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis & intolerabilis*) *iniquus, savus, alicui* or *in aliquem*. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus, alicui* or *erga aliquem*. *Mitis, comis*; *in*, or *erga aliquem* and *alicui*. *Pervicax adversus aliquem*. *Crudelis, in aliquem*, seldom *alicui*. *Amicus, æmulus, infensus, infestus, alicui*, seldom *in aliquem*. *Gratus alicui*, or *in*, *erga, adversus aliquem*. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

*AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratum*. Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*. Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

*Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram*, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*. Sall. *Proximus finem*. Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Eadem illis censemus*. Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem, qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici, quondam idem erant qui Academici*. Cic. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*. Ter. *Diānam et Lunam eandem esse putant*. Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut, &c. In eodem loco mecum*. Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Dianā*.

We likewise say, *alius, ac, atque, or et*; and sometimes *similis & par*.

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

*Dignus honore*, Worthy of honor. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength] *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus*, *creatus*, *cretus*, *prognatus*, *oriundus*, *procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*. Sallust. *Editus de nymphâ*. Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*. Virg. So *Macte esto* or *macti estis* *virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Jubetrem macte virtute esse*, sc. *te*. Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

*Plenus iræ* or *irâ*, Full of anger, *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopes temporis, sed prodigi sumus*. Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*. Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*. Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*. Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*. Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*. Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*. Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*. Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Id. *Vacuas cædis habet manus*. Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælar-gus*.

2. With the ablative only; *Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently; *Compos, consors, egenus, ex-hæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fætus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejūnus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbis, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus*.

5. With both promiscuously; *Copiōsus, dives, fecundus ferax, immu-nis, inānis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiōsus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, a re aliqūd*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*. Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fecundus, modicus, parcus, in re aliqūd*. *Immūnis, inānis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, a re aliqūd*. *Potens ad rem, & in re*.

## III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

## § 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

## 1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive ; as,

*Est regis*, It belongs to the king ; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insapientis est dicere*, *Non putāram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*. It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vni, vituperare stulti est*. Sen. *Homīnis est errare* ; *Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*. Cic. *Pecus est Melibæi*. Virg. *Hæc sunt homīnis*. Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus* Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis*. Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted ; as,

*Tuum est*, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner ; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia, Romanum est*. Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood ; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed ; as, *Munus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus*. Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberis esse hominis puto*. Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated ; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these ; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causa* or *facta*. Sall. *Nihil tam æquanda libertatis est*, for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet*. Liv.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui munëris* ; So *mos est* or *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*. Cic.

XVI. *Miserëor, miseresco*, and *satägo*, govern the genitive ; as,

*Miserere civium tuorum,*

Pity your countrymen.

*Satägit rerum suarum,*

{ He has his hands full at home, or has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind ; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fullo & fallor, fastidio, invideo, lator, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor* ; as, *Ne angus te animi*. Plaut. *Labörum decipitur*. Hor. *Discrucior animi*. Ter. *Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi vel animo* ; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animörum*, are in suspense. Cic. *Justitiæ prius mirer*. Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno* : likewise, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo*

as, *Abstinetō irarum; Desine querelarum; Regnāvūt populorum* Hor  
*Desistere pugnae.* Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit.* Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed: thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo.* *Hoc animum meum excruciat.* *Kastidio, miror, vereor, aliquem, or aliquid.* *Lætor aliquā re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quodd, ut, ne,* and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desine aliquid, & ab aliquo,* to give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illā mente; Quiesco & uboro: Regnāre in equitibus, oppidis, &c. in.* Cic. *Per urbes.* Virg. *Adipisci id, Frustrāri in re; Furēre de aliquo.* Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor frutris, scil. causā; Angor animi, scil. dolore or anxietate.*

## 2. Verbs governing the Dative.

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

*Finis vēnit imperio,* An end has come to the empire. Liv.

*Animus redit hostibus,* Courage returns to the enemy. Id.

*Tibi seris, tibi metis,* You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus.* Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis.* Id.  
*Sol lucet etiam scelerātis.* Sen. *Hæret latèri lethalis arundo.* Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

*Præfuit exercitui,*

He commanded the army.

*Adfuit precibus,*

He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo, to have,* governs the dative of a person; as,

*Est mihi liber,*

A book is to me, *that is,* I have a book.

*Sunt mihi libri,*

Books are to me, *i. e.* I have books.

*Dico libros esse mihi,*

I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum; habeo libros.* In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi,* I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi; Scio libros deesse mihi, &c.*

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS, BENE,* and *MALE,* govern the dative; as,

*Satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico, tibi, &c.*

III. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions,

AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, SUB, and SUPER govern the dative; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnōto, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulor, advolor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appereor, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Collado, concino, consōno, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insideor, insto, insisto, insūdo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illūdo, immineo immorior, immōror, impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermīco, intercedo, intercedo, interjaceo.*

6. *Olrēpo, oblucor, obtreco, obstrēpo, obmurmūro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*

7. *Postfēro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpūto, postscribo*: with an accusative.

8. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*

9. *Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, suboleo, subjacio, subtrēpo.*

10. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

#### IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

##### 1. To profit or hurt; as,

*Proficio, prosum, placeo, commōdo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consūlo, for prospicio.* Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommōdo, displiceo, insidior.*

##### 2. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

*Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor.* Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor.* Likewise, *Derōgo, detrāho, invidéo, amūlor.*

##### 3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

*Impēro, præcipio, mando; modēror, for modum adhibeo.* Likewise *Parco, ausculto, obedio, obsēquor, obtempēro, morem gēro, morigēror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famūlor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refrāgor, adversor.*

##### 4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

*Minor, commīnor, intermīnor, irascor, succenseo.*

##### 5. To trust; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido.*

To these add *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplīco, cedo, despēro, opēror, præstolor, prævaricor; recipio, to promise; renuncio; respondeo, to answer or satisfy; tempēro, studeo; vaco, to apply; convicior.*

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo, and offendo, govern the accusative.*

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, crito, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, rezo, crucio, aversor, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,

*Antefire, antecedere, antecellere, precedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.*  
*Acquiescere, rei, re, or in re. Adequitare portus Syracusas.*  
*Adjacere mari, or mare, to lie near.*  
*Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.*  
*Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.*  
*Advolveri genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.*  
*Advolare ei, ad eum, rostra, to fly up to.*  
*Adfrire rei or homini; rem or hominem; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.*  
*Adulari ei, or eum, to flatter. Allabi oris; aures ejus. Virg. ad exta. Liv.*  
*Apparere consuli, to attend; ad solium Jovis. Res apparet mihi, appears.*  
*Appropinquare Britannis, portam, ad portam, to approach.*  
*Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, to agree.*  
*Dominari cunctis oris. Virg. in cætera animalia, to rule over. Ovid.*  
*Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, to trust to or in.*  
*Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, to pardon me, or my fault.*  
*Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, to hang over.*  
*Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, or in eum, seized.*  
*Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, to fall upon; labori, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. to apply to.*  
*Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio vestitu, to indulge in. Ter.*  
*Inhiare auro, bona ejus, to gape after. Innasci agris, in agris, to grow in.*  
*Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, to depend on.*  
*Insultare rei & homini, or hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in miseri am ejus; bonos, to insult over.*  
*Latet res mihi, or me, is unknown to me. Mederi ei; cupiditates, to cure*  
*Ministrare ei, to serve; arma ei, to furnish.*  
*Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, to rule.*  
*Nocere ei, rarely eum, to hurt. Plaut.*  
*Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eo, to marry. Cic.*  
*Obrepere ei & eum, to creep upon; in animos; ad honores.*  
*Obstrepere auribus & aures. Obrectare ei, laudibus ejus, to detract from.*  
*Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, shades. Palpare alicui, & aliquem.*  
*Pacisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo. Sall. vitam pro laude. Virg.*  
*Præstolari alicui, & aliquem, to wait upon.*  
*Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus. Ovid, ad genua. Liv. ad pedes, to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which chiefly among the poets govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as,  
 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coeo, alicui, for cum aliquo;*  
 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, differre rei alicui, for a re aliquo.* We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se; and contendere, pugnare contra, & adversus aliquem.*

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te, & pro te, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but timeo, horreo te, or a te, I fear or dread you*

as an enemy : So, *Consido, prospicio, cævo tibi*, I consult, or provide for your safety ; but *consulo te*, I ask your advice ; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee this : *Studere aliquid*, to desire ; *alicui*, to favour ; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulor tibi*, I envy ; *te*, I imitate ; *Auscu'to tibi*, I obey or listen to ; *te*, I hear ; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, *rem* I desire ; *Fanéro, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest ; *abs te*, I borrow ; *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc fanerâret*, should not return with interest, or bring usury. *Ter.* And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5 Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad* ; as,

*En, vado, curro, propéro, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, or hominem.* Sometimes, however, in the poets, they are construed with the dative : as, *It clamor celo*, for *ad cælum.* Virg.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative ; as,

*Ama Deum*, Love God. *Reverère parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own ;

as, *Ire iter or viam* ; *Pugnâre pugnam* or *prelium* ; *Currère cursum* ; *Canère cantilenam, &c.* Or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense ; as, *Corijdon ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amâbat.* Virg. *Currimus aquor*, scil. *per. Id.* So, *Comptos arsit adulteri crines.* Hor. *Saltâre Cyclopa* ; *Olet hircum* ; *Sulcos et vineta crepat mera.* Hor. *Vox hominem sonat* ; *Sudâre mella.* Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigâsset*, sc. *per.* Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense ; as, *Clamâre aliquem nomine* Virg. *Callère jura* ; *Mærère mortem* ; *Horret iratum mare.* Hor.

Sometimes, instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative ; as, *Ire itinère* ; *dolère dolore, vicem ejus* ; *gaudère gaudio* ; *mori* or *obire morte* ; *visère vitâ* ; *ardet virgine.* Horat. *Ludère aleum, or -â* ; *manâre, pluère, rorâre, stillâre, sudâre, aliquid or aliquo.* *Erubescère jura.* Virg. *origine.* Tacit. *equo vehi.* Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense ; as,

*Abhorrère famam, to dread infamy.*

Liv. a litibus : ab uxore ducendâ, to be averse from. Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with. Cic.

*Abolère monumenta viri, to abolish.*

Virg. illis cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten. Liv.

*Adolère penates, to burn, to sacrifice to.* Virg. *Ætas adolevit* ;

*adolevit ad ætatem.* Plaut.

*Declinare ictum, to avoid* ; loco ; *agmen aliquo, to remove.*

*Degenerare animos, to weaken* ; patri, *to degenerate from* ; a virtute majorem.

*Durâre adolescentes labore, to harden* ; Res durat ad breve tempus, *endures* ; In ædibus durâre nequeo, *stay or remain.* Plaut.

*Inclinâre culpam in aliquem, to lay* ; Hos ut sequar, *inclinat*

*animus, inclines; acies inclinat, or inclinatur, gives away.*

*Laborare arma, to forge; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill; de re aliquâ, to be concerned.*

*Morari iter, to stop; in urbe, to stay; Hoc nihil moror, I do not mind.*

*Properare pecuniam hæredi. Hor. in orbem; ad unam sedem. Ov.*

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lucrunt, Id succenset. Ter.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood; *Tum prora avertit, sc. se. Virg. Flumina præcipitunt, sc. se. Id. Quodcumque intenderat, sc. se, turned or directed himself. Sall. Obiit, sc. mortem. Ter. Cum faciam vitula, sc. sacra. Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum. Hor.*

**XIX. Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obliviscor, govern the accusative or genitive; as,**

*Recordor lectionis, or lectionem, I remember the lesson.*

*Obliviscor injuriæ or injuriam, I forget an injury.*

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem. Ter. Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset. Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alicujus, or de aliqua. So, recordor, when it signifies to recollect; as, Velim scire ecquid, de te recordera. Cic.*

#### 4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

**XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,**

*Abundat divitis,  
Caret omni culpâ,*

*He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.*

Verbs of plenty are *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppetito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destituor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget eris, He needs money. Hor. Non tum artis indigent, quam laboris. Cic.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpâ, He is free from fault. Liv.*

**XXI. Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the ablative; as,**

*Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. Abutitur libris, He abuses books.*

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto laboro, for male me habeo*, to be ill; *pascor, epulor, nitor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as *Potiri urbis*. Sall. And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus*; *imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as *Potiri urbem*. Cic. *Officia fungi*. Ter. *Munera fungi*. Tac. *Pascuntur silvas*. Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruo*; as, *Uti consilium*. Plaut. *Operam abutitur*. Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as *Depascitur artus*. Virg.

## § 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

### 1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. *Sum* used instead of *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Est mihi voluptati,* It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others; as,

*Ducitur honori tibi*, It is reckoned an honor to you. *Id vertitur, mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi muneri*; *Dedit mihi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*; *Ventre, occurrere auxilio alicui*. Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as *Est exitum pecori*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filium ei nuptum*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, presidio, usui, &c.* scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curam quastui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despicitui, &c.* sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

### 2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

<i>Arguit me furti,</i>	He accuses me of theft.
<i>Meipsum inertiae condemno,</i>	I condemn myself of laziness.
<i>Illum homicidii absolvunt,</i>	They acquit him of manslaughter.
<i>Monet me officii,</i>	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquirō, arguo, defero, insimulo, postulo, alligo, astringo*; of condemn-

ing, *Damno, condemno, infāmo, noto* ; of acquitting, *Absolvo, libéro, purgo* ; of admonishing, *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de* ; as, *Monère aliquem officii, or de officio* ; *Accusāre aliquem furti, or de furto*. *De vi condemnātī sunt*. Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative ; but in the ablative usually without a preposition ; as, *Damnāre, postulāre, absolvēre eum criminis, or capitis* ; and *crimine, or capite* ; also *Absolvo me peccāto*. Liv. And we always say, *Plectēre, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary ; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, tradūco, vitupéro, calumniar, criminar, excūso, &c. avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accūso, incūso, &c.* construed in this manner ; as, *Accusāre inertiam adolescentium, for adolescentes inertie*. Cic. *Cupam arguo*. Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft. Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, &c.* as, *Moneo, accūso, te illud*. We seldom find, however, *Errōrem te moneo*. but *errōris* or *de errōre* ; except in old writers, as *Plautus*.

**XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative,** govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili* ; as,

*Æstimo te magni,* I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives ; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majōris, minōris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, hujus*.

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative ; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo, scil. pretio* : and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consūlo* ; as, *Hoc consūlo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood ; as, *Arguere aliquem furti, scil. de crimine furti* ; *Æstimo rem magni, scil. precii, or pro re magni pretii* ; *Consūlo boni, i. e. statuo or censeo esse factum, or munus boni viri, or animi* ; *Monere aliquem officii, i. e. officii causā, or de re or negotio officii*.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

**XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away,** govern the accusative and dative ; as,

<i>Compāro Virgiliū Homero,</i>	I compare Virgil to Homer.
<i>Suū cuique tribuō,</i>	Give every one his own.
<i>Narras fabulā surdo,</i>	You tell a story to a deaf man.
<i>Eripuit me morti,</i>	He rescued me from death.

Or,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (*when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted*) ; as,

*Legam lectionem tibi*, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*. Virg. *Paupertus sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things. Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish. Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition ; as, *Comparare unam rem cum aliâ*, & *ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se* : *Eripuit me morti*, morte, u or *ex morte* : *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem* : *Intendere teium alicui*, or *in aliquem* : *Incidere æri*, *in æs*, or *in ære* ; and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently ; as,

*Circumdare mœnia oppido*, or *oppidum mœnibus*, to surround a city with walls.

*Intercludere comedum alicui*, or *aliquem comedtu*, to intercept one's provisions.

*Donare, prohibere rem alicui*, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

*Mactare hostium Deo*, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

*Impertire salutem alicui*, or *aliquem salutē*, to salute one.

*Interdixit Gallium Romanis*, or *Romanos Galliâ*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

*Induere, exuere vestem sibi*, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

*Levare dolorem alicui* ; *dolorem alicujus* ; *aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

*Minari aliquid alicui*, or sometimes *alicui aliquo*. Cic. to threaten one with any thing ; *Cæsari gladio*. Sall.

*Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re*, in, pro, & *de hac re*, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*. Liv.

*Restituere alicui sanitatem*, or *aliquem sanitati*, to restore to health.

*Aspergere labem alicui*, or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one ; *aram sanguine*. *Ligare Deum sacris*, & *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

*Excusare se alicui*, & *apud aliquem*, *de re* ; *valeitudinem ei*.

*Exprobrare vitium ei*, or *in eo*, to upbraid.

*Occupare pecuniam alicui*, & *apud aliquem*, i. e. *pecuniam fœdori locare*, to place at interest. Cic.

*Opponere se morti*, & *ad mortem*. *Renunciare id ei*, & *ad eum*, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad* ; as,

*Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verito, incito, suscito*, also, *hortor*, and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformato, lacesso* ; thus, *Ad laudem milites hortatur* ; *Ad prætorem hominem trahit*. Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative ; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*. Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*. Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubère alicui*, scil. *se*; *Cedere alicui*, scil. *locum*; *Detrahère alicui*, scil. *laudem*; *Ignoscere alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, *for to me*.

#### 4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing; as,

*Poscimus te pacem,*  
*Docuit me grammaticam,*

We beg peace of thee.  
He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *Rogare*, *oro*, *exoro*, *obsecro*, *precor*, *posco*, *reposco*, *flagito*, &c. Of teaching, *Doceo*, *edocceo*, *dedoceo*, *erudio*.

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform, but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto*, *exigo* *u* or *abs te*, *Percontor*, *scitor*, *sciscitor*, *ex* or *a te* or *te* without the preposition; *Interrogo*, *consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem deum*, for *deos*. Virg. *Instruo*, *instruo*, *formo*, *informo* *aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artibus*, in or *ab artibus*. Also, *instruo ad rem*, or in *re*, *ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes*, *de* or *in re*, *ad rem*. *Formare ad studium*, *mentem studiis*, *studium ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

#### 5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

*Onerat naves auro,*

He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onero*, *cumulo*, *premo*, *opprimo*, *obruo*. Of unloading, *levo*, *exonero*, &c. Of binding, *astringo*, *ligo*, *alligo*, *devincio*, *impedio*, *irreto*, *illaqueo*, &c. Of losing, *solvoo*, *exsolvo*, *libero*, *lazo*, *expedio*, &c. Of depriving, *privo*, *nudo*, *orbo*, *spolio*, *fraudo*, *emungo*. Of clothing, *vestio*, *amicio*, *induo*, *cingo*, *tego*, *velo*, *corono*, & *calceo*. Of unclothing, *exuo*, *discingo*, &c.

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*. Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves*, sc. *viris*, means the ships. Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescenscentem suam temeritatis implet*. Liv. And also vary their construction; as *Iduit*, *exuit*, *se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case ; as,

<i>Accūsor furti,</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparātur Homēro,</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Doceor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Navis onerātur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold.

So, *Scio homīnes accusātum iri furti*;—*Eos ereptum iri mortī, morte, a* or *ex morte*;—*puēros doctum iri grammaticam*;—*rem celātum iri mihi*, or *me*; *me celātum iri de re*, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases ; as, *Habētur ludārio iis*.

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a* ; as,

*Tu laudāris a me*, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probāri a te*, or *te probāre meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition ; as, *Mare a sole colūcet*. Cic. *Phalāris non a paucis interiit*. Id. So, *Cadēre ab hoste*; *Cessāre a prēliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati furārī aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also, *Venīre ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulāre ab aliquo*, *Exulāre ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs ; as, *Sumēre, petēre, tollēre, pellēre, expectāre, emēre*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs ; as, *Deseror conjūge*. Ovid. *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*. Tacit. *Tubūllā distinguitur undā qui navigat*, sc. *ab undā*, is kept from the water by a plank. Juvenal.

The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A* ; as, *Per me defēsa est respublīca*, or *a me*; *Per me restitūtus*; *Per me* or *a me factum est*. Cic. But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause ; as, *Res agitur per creditōres, a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legāto ejus*. Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets ; as,

*Neque cernitur ulli*, for *ab ullo*. Virg. *Vix audior ulli*. Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for *a Vario*. Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quæruntur*, for *a viris*. Cic. *VIDEOR*, to seem, always governs the dative ; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me : but we commonly say, *Vidéris a me*, You are seen by me ; although not always ; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sorōrum*, for *a me*. Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amīcor, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice ; as, *Induitur vestem* or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice ; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own ; as, *Pugna pugnāta est*. Cic. *Bellum militabitur*. Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely ; as, *Statutur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur*, &c. *a vobis, ab illis*, &c. We are

standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, or ab aliquo*: I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it. Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*. Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugndum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*; *Noctes vigilantur cmara*; *Ocednus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur*. Tacit.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**XXIX.** An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

*Expedit reipublicæ,*

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

*Favetur mihi*, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So, *Noctetur mihi, imperatur mihi*, &c. We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare impëror*; *Ego cur invidetur*, for *imperatur, invidetur mihi*. Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, cæpit, incipit, desinit, debet, and solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

*Non potest creti tibi*, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*. Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi et gloriæ invideri solet*. The praise and glory of others use to be envied. Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*. Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, or de hac re, or hujus rei*, scil. memoria; This thing came into my mind. *Est cura mihi hæc res, or de hac re. Doleo or dolet mihi, id factum esse*.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines*, &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omniibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*. Cic. *Accidit, evenit, configit, ut ibi esset mus*. These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*. Cic. *Eadem licent*. Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciât quod libet, sc. sibi*. Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes, sc. mihi*, I am resolved. Virg.

**EXC. I.** *REFERT* and *INTEREST* govern the genitive; as,

*Refert patris*, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

*Non mea refert,*

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua*, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest* ; or *cujus interest*, from *cujus*, -a, -um.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil*, &c. also with common nouns ; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris* ; as, *Hoc parvi refert* ; *Illud mea magni interest*. Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*. Lucet. *Incessus in gravidâ refert*. Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maximè, vehementer, minimè*, &c. as, *Faciam, quod maximè reipublice interesse judicabo*. Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accus. with the prep. *ad* ; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant ?* Of what importance is it ? &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*. Cic. ; rarely the dative ; as, *Dic quid refert intra naturæ fines viventi*, &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely ; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolabellam*, it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*. Id. *Adeone est fundita leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis refert*. Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*. Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest*, is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua*, &c. likewise agree : as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis*. *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris* : So, *interest mea*, *est inter negotia mea*.

EXC. II. These five, *MISERET, PŒNITET, PUDET, TÆDET* and *PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as,

*Miseret me tui,*

I pity you.

*Tædet me vitæ,*

I am weary of life.

*Pœnitet me peccati,*

I repent of my

*Pudet me culpæ,*

I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined ; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive ; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccavêrim*. The accusative is frequently understood ; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet*, scil. *nos*. Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod*, &c. as, *Ipse sui miseret*. Luor. *Nonne hæc te pudet*. Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*. Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives ; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scil. *secundum* or *quod ad*. Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active ; as, *Mis-*

*Nullam est me tuarum fortunarum.* Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui.* Ter.; *Miseretur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest.* Cic.

**EXC. III. DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT, and OPORTET,** govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere,*  
*Non decet te rixari,*

It delights me to study.  
It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent.* Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat.* Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant.* Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet.* Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

*Sibi quisque consulat oportet.* Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humored. Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nulla esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere.* Cic.

NOTE. *Attinet, pertinet, & spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari.* Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs. Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points. Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

**XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,**

*Cupio discere,*

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi.* Quintil. And it sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla.* Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victum*, scil. *debet*, or *par est.* Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Di-ere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas.* Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidebus docuit*, scil. *canere.* Cic. So, *Discere, scire, fidebus.*

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients, *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own: and it likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Introcinari, fraudare turpe est.* Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores.* Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi* or *cantus.* Virg. 3. In the dative, *Paratus servire*, for *servituti.* Sall. 4. In

the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*. Horat. *Quod faciam suppresst, præter amare, nihil*. Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amöre, or qui amatur*. Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitât ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitâvit an faceret necne*; *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere, or ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias*. *Nunquam pulavi fore ut ad te supplex ventrem*. Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*. Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c.* Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus nuando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

**XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,**

*Amans virtutem*, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive Participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

*Suspectus mihi*, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*. Sall. *Invisus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me; *In dies invisior*. Suet. *Occulta et maribus non invisâ solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen. Cic.

**EXOSUS, PEROSUS**, and often also **PERTÆSUS**, govern the accusative; as, *Tedas exösa jugales*. Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quàm regum perösa erat*. Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with. Suet. *vitam*, weary of. Justin. *levitatis*. Cic.

Verbals in **BUNDUS** govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*. Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*. Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*. Cic. *Insidie consuli*. Sall. *Domum reditiönis spe sublâtâ*. Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*. Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs, *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis, similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo, for compèri*. I have found. Sall. *Effectum dabo, for efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curâbo, et adductum tuam Pamphili, i. e. inveniam et adducam*. Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas, or ad diripiendum*. Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum, or ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum, or ad legendum, &c.*

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conducô, do, tribuo, mitto, &c.* are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus*, instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curâvi, for fieri, or ut fieret*; *Columnas adificandas locâvit*. Cic.

**XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns ; as,**

*Studendum est mihi*, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.  
*Tempus studendi*, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know  
that I must study.

**But more particularly :**

I. The gerund in *DUM* with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

*Legendum est mihi*, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die. So, *Scio legendum esse mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori, or ut moriantur*; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consultandum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*. Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sis mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*. *Juv. Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites est*, sc. *vobis*. *Liv. Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi* or *alteri*. *P. Syr.*

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

*Tempus legendi*, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*. Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*. Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venērunt sui purgandi causâ*. Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*. Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, sc. *femina*. Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; as,

*Charta utilis scribendo,*      Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. Cic.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*. Cic. *Aptus habendo ensem*, for wearing. Virg. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

<i>Promptus ad audiendum,</i>	Ready to hear.
<i>Attentus inter docendum,</i>	Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*. Virg. *Ob absolvendum*. Cic. *Circa movendum*. Quintil.

Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

*Pana a peccando absterret*, Punishment frightens from sinning.

\* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo rugetur*, The memory is improved by exercising it.  
*Defessus sum ambulando*, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperetur*, to receive orders. Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius; sic enim antiqui loquebantur*. Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. Urit *videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*. Virg.

### Gerunds turned into Participles in *dus*.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
<i>Petendum est mihi pacem,</i>	} or more frequently	<i>Pax est petenda mihi.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>		<i>Tempus petendæ pacis.</i>
<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>		<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem,</i>		<i>A petendâ pace.</i>

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Intra sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*. Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiundo labori idoneus*. Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*. Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus* or *habilis*. Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*. Ter. *Litteris dandis vigilare*. Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Liv.

Acc. and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnandâ Caput duces Romanis abstrahere*. Liv. *Oratorem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorum*. Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*. but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in um.*

**XXXVII.** The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion ; as,

*Abiit deambulatum,*

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes praeditum.* Liv. *Nunc venis irritum dominum?* *Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitrator, te id admonitum venio.* Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly ; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction. Ter. This supine with *iri*, taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive ; as, *An credēbas illam sine tuā operā iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved ; *An credēbas iri* (a te or ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum.* Ter. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion ; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum* ; *Cantatum provocemus.* Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam* ; *Divisit copius hūmātum.* Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb ; as, *Venit oratum opem* : or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causā*, or *opis orandæ.* 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem.* 3. *Venit opi-orandæ.* 4. *Venit opem oraturus.* 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem orret.* 6. *Venit opem ordine.* But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. *The Supine in u.*

**XXXVIII.** The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun ; as,

*Facile dictu,*

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So, *Nihil dictu fœdum, vitiq̃ue, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer est.* Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus* ; *Fas or nefas est dictu* ; *Opus est scitu.* Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion ; as, *Nunc obsonātu redeo*, from getting provisions. Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus), from bed, *postrēmus cubitum eat.* Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Difficile cognitu*, *cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum* ; *Res facilis ad credendum.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines, being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood ; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

## 1. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

**XXXIX.** Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs ; as,

*Bene scribit,* He writes well.

*Fortiter pugnans,* Fighting bravely

*Servus egregiè fidelis,* A slave remarkably faithful.

*Satis bene,* Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs sometimes likewise qualify substantives ; as,

*Homérus planè orátor : plane noster, verè Metellus.* Cic. So, *Hodie mane, cras mane, heri mane ; hodie vespèri, &c. tam mane, tam vespère.*

Obs. 2. The adverb, for the most part in Latin, and always in English is placed near to the word which it qualifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative ; as,

*Nec non sensérunt,* Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *et sensérunt*, and they did perceive ; *Non potèram non exanimàri metu.* Cic. So, *non sum nescius*, i. e. *scio.* Cic. Or. 1, 11. *haud nihil est*, i. e. *est aliquid.* Ter. Eun. 4, 2, 13. *nonnulli*, i. e. *aliqui ; nonnunquam*, i. e. *aliquando ; non nemo*, i. e. *quidam ; nemo noq, i. e. quilibet, &c.* Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation : *Neque ego haud committam, ut, si quid peccàtum siet, (te) fecisse dicas de meâ sententiâ,* I will not cause, that, &c. Plaut. Bacch. 4, 9, 114. *Jura, te non nocitûrum homîni hâc de re nemîni, for nulli homîni.* Id. Mil. 5, 1, 18, cf. Epid. 4, 1, 6. & 5, 1, 57. *Nolle succëssum, non Patrîbus, non Consulibus,* They did not wish success either to the Patricians, or the Consuls. Liv. 2, 45. So, *nihil iste nec ausus, nec potuit.* Virg. Æ. 9, 428, add. Virg. E. 4, 53. & 5, 53. Ter. Eun. 5, 9, 47. Heaut. 1, 1, 11. *Nullius rei neque præs, neque manceps factus est.* Nep. 25, 6.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè, admòdum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè, oppidò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive ; as, *Utrique nostràm gratum admòdum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us. Cic. *perquam puerile*, very childish ; *oppidò pauci*, very few ; *perfusile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum ; as, In rebus apertissimis, nimium longi sumus ; parum firmus, multum bonus.* Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives ; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humànâ.* Liv.

*Quàm* is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses ; as, *Quàm difficile est !* How difficult it is ! *Quàm crudelis, or Ut crudelis est !* How cruel he is ! *Flens quàm familiariter*, very familiarly. Ter. So, *quàm sevèrè*, very severely. Cic. *Quàm latè*, very widely. Cæs. *Tam multa quàm, &c.* as many things as, &c. *Quàm maximas potest copius armat*, as great as possible. Sall. *Quàm maximas gratias agit, quàm primum, quàm sapissimè.* Cic. *Quàm quisque pessimè fecit, tum maximè tutus est.* Sall.

*Facile*, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning ; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps, or præcipuus.* *Longè*, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive ; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato.* Cic. *Pedibus longè melior Lycus.* Virg.

2. *Cum*, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter ; *Dum*, whilst, or how long, with the indicative ; as, *Dum hæc aguntur ; Fugròto, dum ànima est, spes esse dicitur.* Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos.* Ovid. *Dum* and *donec*, for *usquèdum*, until, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive

as *Opperior, dum ista cognosco*. Cic. *Haud destnam donec perfectro*. er. So, QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe*; *Quoad tibi æquum videbitur*; *quoad possem & liceret*; *quoad progredi potuerit amenia*. Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonica esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*. Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nuntiaturum erit te fecisse*. Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere*, or *feri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *quoad ejus facere poteris*; *Quoad ejus fieri possit*. Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid*, or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus or animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM OR POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before: SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the indic. and sometimes with the subj.; as, *Antequam dico or dicam*. Cic. *Simulac persensit*. Virg. *Simul ut videro Curionem*. Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*. Liv. *Ubi semel quis perjuraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*. Cic. So, NÆ, truly, as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix*. Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consulisses*. Cic. But NÆ, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Næ jura*. Plaut. *Ne post confers culpam in me*. Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dedæris discrimen*. Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex*. Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti confligunt*. Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*. Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*. Cic. *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*. Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant*. Ter.

6. UT, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit, &c.* ¶ Also, for *quàm, or quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*. Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*. Cic.

7. QUIN, for CUR NON, takes the indic. as, *Quin continētis vocem inditem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay, or but, the indic. or imperat. as, *Quin est paratum argentum; quin tu hoc audi*. Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam factilis res, quin difficilis fiet, quum invitatus facias*. Ter. *Nemo est, quin mallet; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending. *Nihil abest, quin sim miserimus*. Cic.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

*Pridiè ejus diè,*  
*Ubique gentium,*  
*Satis est verborum,*

The day before that day.  
Every where.  
There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea*, *postea*, *inde*, *tunc*, as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi*, and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, *ubivis*, *ubique*, &c. Also, *Eo*, *huc*, *hucctne*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longe*, *ibidem*; as, *Ubi*, *quo*, *quovis*, &c. also, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde terrarum*, or *gentium*; *longe gentium*; *ibidem loci*, *eo audacia*, *recordia*, *miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abundè*, *affatim*, *largiter*, *nimis*, *satis*, *parum*, *minimè*; as, *Abundè gloriæ*, *affatim divitiarum*, *largiter auri*, *satis eloquentiæ*, *sapientiæ parum est illi* or *habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue. Cic. *Instar montis*, like a mountain. Virg. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæ*, *que abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res*, *locus*, or *negotium*, and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridiè*, *postridiè*, *ejus dièi*, seldom *diem*; but *pridiè*, *postridiè Kalendas*, *Nonas*, *Idus*, *ludos Apollinæres*, *natâlem ejus*, *absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendârum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

*En hostis*, or *hostem*; *Ecce miserum hominem*. Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*. Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras,) *tibi*, *Daphni*. Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*. Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

**XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,**

*Omnium optimè loquitur,*  
*Convenienter naturæ,*  
*Venit obviam ei,*  
*Proximè castris* or *castra,*

He speaks the best of all.  
Agreeably to nature.  
He came to meet him.  
Next the camp.

## II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS

### I. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

**AD** *astra*, to the stars; *religari ad assèrem*, to be bound to a plank; *ad diem veniam*, solvam, &c. at or on; *ad portam*, ostium, fores, at, before; *ad urbem*, *Tiberim*, near, at; *ad templa* supplicatio, in; *ad summum*, at most, or to the top; *ad summam*, on the whole. Cic.; *ad ultimum*, extrèmium, at last, finally; *ad or in speciem*, to appearance; *mentis ad omnia* capacitas; an-

nus fatalis *ad interitum*; lenius *ad severitatem*, for, with respect to. Cic.; *ad vivum*, sc. corpus, to the quick; *ad judicem agere*, before; nihil *ad Cæsarem*, in comparison of; *numero ad duodecim*, to the number of; *omnes ad unum*, to a man; *ad hoc*, besides; *ad vulgi opinionem*, according to; *homo ad unguem factus*, an accomplished man; *herbes ad lunam messæ*, by the light

- of. Virg.; ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*. Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*. Cic.; nebula erat ad multum diēi, *for a great part of the day*. Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam debere, *to a furthing, no more and no less*; ad amussim, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*. Liv.
- AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo millia cæsa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*. Liv.
- APUD forum, *at*; apud me cœnabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, iudices, or aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, or valeo apud illum, *I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum. Ter.
- ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.
- ADVERSUS, or -um; CONTRA hostes, *against*; adversus infimos iustitia est servanda, *toward*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*. Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*. Plin.
- CIS or CITRA flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem. Senec.
- CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio. Plin.
- ERGA amicos, *towards*. EXTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjunctionem, *not concerned in*. Sall.
- INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.
- INTER fratres, *among*; inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*. Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*. Cic. Inter diem, *whence interdiu, in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos. Ter.
- INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within*; intra famam est, *less than report*. Quint.
- JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles*.
- OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for de industria, on purpose*. Plaut.
- PENES quem, or quem penes, *in the power of*; Penes te es? *Are you in your senses?* Hor.
- PER agros, *through*; per vim, per scelus, *by*; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of*.
- PONE caput, *behind*.
- POST hoc tempus, *after*; post tergum, *behind*; post homines natos; post hominum memoriam, *since the world began*.
- PRÆTER te nemo, *nobody besides or except*; præter casam fugere, *beyond*; præter legem, morem, sequum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond*; præter ceteros excellere, *lamentari, above*; præter ripam ire, *along, near*; præter oculos, *before*. Cic.
- PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of*; propter aquæ rivum, *near by*. Virg.
- SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to*. Ter. secundum litus, secundum aurem vulneratus est, *near to*; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to*; Prætor secundum me decrevit, *sententiam dedit, for, in my favour*. Cic.
- SECUVS viam, *by, along*.
- SUPRA terram, *above*.
- TRANS mare, *over, beyond*.
- ULTRA oceanum, *beyond*.
- To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE, and VERSUS;
- as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid-day*; prope muros, *near the walls*; usque Puteolos, Tarsum usque, *as far as*; Ori-

entem versus, *towards the east*. But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum.

Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala. Hor. Ad oceanum versus. Cæs. In Italiam versus. Cic.

## 2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from*; a puero, *or* puëris, a pueritiâ, *incunabulis*, tenëris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood*; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper*; a manu, *sc. servus, an amanuensis or clerk*; ad manum, *a waiting man*; a pedibus, *a footman*; a latere principis, *an attendant*. So, a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyâthis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.*; fores a nobis, *for nostræ*. Injuria ab illo, *for illius*. Ter. a cenâ, *after*. Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on or in*; a senatu stare, *for, in defence of*; ab oculis doleo. Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecuniâ & militibus, *imparatus, as to, with respect to*. Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiões ab re, *too careless about money*; a villâ mercenarium vidi. Ter.

ABSQUE causâ, *without*; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, *i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you*. Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre & patrem, (with the acc. or abl.) *without the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence of*.

CUM exercitu, *with*; testis mecum est annulus, *in my possession*. Ter. cum primâ luce, *at break of day*; cum imperio esse, *in*; cum primis, *in primis, in the first place*; cum metu dicere, cum lætitiâ vivere, cum curâ, &c. Cic. *We say, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or eum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.*

DE lanâ caprinâ rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio

nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de or ex improvviso, *unexpectedly*; de or ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expense*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*. Ter. de or ex compacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart*; de or ex ejus sententiâ, consilio, *according to*; quâ or hâc de causâ, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de filio emit, *from*. Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit. Nep. Robur de exercitu. Liv. Adolescens de summo loco. Plaut. De procul aspicere. Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, *or* contrariâ parte, *on the contrary*; e regiõne, *over against*; e republicâ, e re aliqujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fugâ, ex tantâ proferantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*, poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*; Sall.; diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magnâ ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tuâ dignitate or virtute, ex decreto senatûs, e naturâ, *according to*; so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex ore de more, ad or in morem alius: Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prospëris rebus, e viâ languere, ex doctrinâ nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi

*of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*, ex amicis certis certissimus, *of, or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*. Cic. E re natâ, *as the matter stands*. Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo puërum natum, *by*. Id.

PRO gloriâ certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*. Sall. Hoc est pro me. Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro suâ dignitate, sapientiâ, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro suâ quisque parte or facultate, *to one's ability or power*: Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*. Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro ratâ parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as*; so pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concessio, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est. Cic.

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*. Ter. præ lacry-

mis non possum scribere, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempei, *in comparison of*: So the adv. præut; as, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit. Ter.

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causâ, pompâ, molestiâ, querelâ, impensâ, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunâ, sede, &c. Cic. Capulo TENUS, *up to the hilt*.

TENUS is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, Cumârum tenus, as far as Cumnæ: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrôrum, lumborum, crurum tenus, *up to*. We also find Corcyræ tenus, & ostiis tenus. Liv. Colchis tenus. Flor. Pectoribus tenus. Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added PROCU:

as, Procul domo, far from home; but here a is understood, which is also often expressed; as, Procul a patriâ. Virg. Procul ab ostentatione. Quinct. Culpa est procul a me. Ter.



### 3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACC. AND ABL.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; amor in patriam, in te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on*

that head; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputare, *on both sides, for and against*; litura in nomen.

*en.* Cic. potestas in filium, *over*; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum in modum, *after*; in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, *on*; in os laudare, *to, before*; in or inter patres lectus, *into the number of*; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among*; crescit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, *every day*; in diem postèrum, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow*; Est in diem, *will happen sometime after*. Ter. Induciæ in duos menses date, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus in pedem, or in singulos pedes, transigit, *He bargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot*; So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos delisti. Cic.

In portu navigo, in tempore, in; esse in potestate or in potestatem, honore or honorem, mente or mentem: in manu or manibus esse; habere, tenere, *in one's power, on hand*; in amicis, *among*: in oculis, *before*; Occisus est in provinciam, *for in*

provincia. Sall. In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for puer or pueri, when a boy or boys, &c.* Hoc in tempore. Nep. In loco fratris diligere, *for ut fratrem*. Ter.

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under*; sub ipsum funus, *near, just before*. Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vespèram, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. *at the dawn of day, &c.*; sub idem tempus, *about*; sub eas litteras recitatus sunt tuæ, sub festos dies, *after*. Cic.

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under*; sub urbe, *near*. Ter. sub eâ conditione or -em, *on or with*.

SUPER Numidiam, *above, beyond*; super ripas, *upon*; super hæc, *super morbum etiam fames affixit, besides*. Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hæc re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning*; alii super alios trucidantur. Liv. Super cenam, super vinum & epulas, *for inter, during*. Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for*. Virg.

SUBTER terram or terrâ, *under*.

Obs. 1. When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus cellam*, *for intra*. Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*. Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*. Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

*A putre, e regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs* before *q* and *t*; as, *abs te, abs quovis homine*. Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mea est, &c.* Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenire locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*. Virg. *Nunc id prodeco*, scil. *ob* or *propter*. Ter. *Muria aspera juro*, scil. *per*. Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e* or *de*. Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*. Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*. Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper, that is, to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word *to*

which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *adem*. Sall. Round St. Paul's, namely, church; *Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus, civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*. Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*. Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*. Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*. Cæs.

**XLV.** A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

*Adedmus scholam,*  
*Ezedanus scholâ,*

Let us go to the school.  
Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Abire ad scholam*; *Exire ex scholâ*; *Adgrædi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingrædi orationem*, or *in orationem*; *inducere animum*, & *in animum*; *evadere undis* & *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *decedere viâ* or *de viâ*; *expellere*, *ejicere*, *exterminare*, *extrudere*, *exturbare urbem*, & *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari*, *allôqui*, *allatrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So, *Alluere urbem*; *accollere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *præterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratû*, (also, *abdicare magistratûm*;) *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco*; & *a, de, ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem, a, de, or e conspectu*; *Desistere sententiâ, a or de sententiâ*; *Excidere manibus, de or e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

*Egrædi urbe, or urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egrædi extra vallum*. Nep. *Evadere insidiis or insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*. Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*. Virg. *Eâbi ex manibus*; *clâbi pugnam aut vincula*. Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Allôquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

### III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

**XLVI.** The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

*O vir bonus or bone!* O good man! *Heu me miserum!* Ah wretched me!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter. *Heu vanitas humana!* Plin *Hem miserum! e puer!* Virg. *O præclaram custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum!* Cic.

**XLVII.** *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

*Hei mihi!* Ah me!

*Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative as, *Heus Syra*. Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem!* Ter *Proh Sancte Jupiter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot, properly, have either concord or govern

ment. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quàm me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

#### 1. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Emi librum duobus assibus,</i>	I bought a book for two shillings.
<i>Constitit talento,</i>	It cost a talent.

So, *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale, &c. Nocet empta dolore voluptas.* Hor. *Spem pretio non emam.* Ter. *Plurimi auro veneunt honores.* Ovid.

¶ These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris*, are excepted; as,

*Quanti constitit,* How much cost it? *Asse et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere.* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit,* scil. *pretio.* Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optime; malè, pejùs, vilius, vilissimè; vuldè, carè æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quàm æstimabat.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret.* Liv.

#### 2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

<i>Palleo metu,</i>	I am pale for fear.
<i>Fecit suo more,</i>	He did it after his own way.
<i>Scribo calamo,</i>	I write with a pen.

So, *Ardet dolore; palleſcere culpa; astuare dubitatione, gestire voluptate or secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater amore frater;* hence, *Rex Dei gratiâ: Paritur paz bello.* Nep. *Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus*

Juv. *Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede.* Ovid. *Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est.* Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hinc de causâ: Præ mœrore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio;* unless among the poets, who sometimes add a *or ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense.* Ovid.

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio.* Cic.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of, as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum.* Liv. *Floruit acumine ingenii.* Cic. *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis, &c. Figer pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore,* seldom *marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum.* Cic.

### 3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where, or in which.* 2. The place *whither, or to which.* 3. The place *whence, or from which.* 4. The place *by, or through which.*

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

#### 1. The place WHERE.

L. When the place *where, or in which,* is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,  
Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.  
He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,  
Studuit Parisiis,*

He dwells at Carthage.  
He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad or apud Trojam, At or near Troy.*

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed

by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe* or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*; or *in Româ celebri urbe*, or sometimes, *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*? Thus, *At ego aio hoc fieri in Graciâ, et Carthagini*. Plaut. Cas. Prol. 71. *Fuere Sicyôni jamdiu Dionysia*, the feasts of Bacchus were some time ago celebrated at Sicyon. Id. Cist. 1, 3, 8, cf. Ps. 4, 2, 38. *Neglectum Anxuri præsidium*. Liv. 5, 8. *Convento Antonio Tibûri*, having met with Anthony at Tibur. Cic. Att. 16. 3. *Nulla Lacedæmoni tum est nobilis vidua, quæ non ad scenam eat mercède conducta*. Nep. Præf. *Tibûri genitus*. Suet. Cal. 8. add. Id. Claud. 34.—Sometimes, though more rarely, names of towns in the first and second declension are found in the ablative; as, *Rez Tyro decēdit*, for *Tyri*. Justin. 18, 4. *Eâdem die, quâ in Italiâ pugnatum est, et Corintho, et Athénis, et Lacedæmone nunciata est victoria*. Id. 20, 3, f. Add. Vitruv. 3, 2, 7. Præf. 8, 3.

## 2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

<i>Venit Romam,</i>	He came to Rome.
<i>Profectus est Athénas,</i>	He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*. Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome. Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani*. Id. *Messanam litteras dedit*. Cic.

## 3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Discessit Corintho,</i>	He departed from Corinth.
<i>Laodiceâ iter faciebat,</i>	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*. Nep.

## ' Domus and Rus.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

<i>Manet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum revertitur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.

*Vivit rura*, or more frequently *ruri*,  
*Rediit rure*,  
*Abiit rus*,

He lives in the country.  
 He is returned from the country.  
 He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

*Domi et militiæ*, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ*, not *domi paternæ*: So, *Ad domum paternum*: *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, *vester*, *regius*, and *aliénus*; as, *Domi meæ vivit*. Cic. Tusc. 5, 39, 4. *Apud eum sic fui, tanquam domi meæ*. Cic. Fam. 13, 69. *Nonne major sine periculo domi tuæ esse, quam cum periculo aliénæ*. ib. 4, 7. *Me domo meâ expulistis*, Cn. Pompeium domum suam compulstis. Cis. Pis. 7. *Alius alium domos suas invitant*. Sall. Jug. 66. add. Liv. 2, 7. *Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ primu ducuntur, domum regiam comportant*. Sall. Jug. 76.—*RUS* and *rure* in the sing. joined with an adj. are found without a preposition; as, *appropinquante vespère, equum conscendit, et rus urbânium contendit*, sc. ad. Justin. 31, 2; *quantumque apud lapidem suburbâno rure substiterat*. Tac. An. 15, 60.—but never *rura* in the plural; as, *ubi dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra eritis*. Liv. 39, 16.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsâris*.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by,

Ubi? *Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*

Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in or ad urbem, &c.*

Unde? *Rediit ex Italiâ, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*

Qua? *Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Româ*, for *Romæ*; *ad Romam, ex Româ, &c.*

*Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*. Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considere Apollio*. Virg. *Non Lybiæ*, for *in Lybid*; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*. Id. *Æn. iv. 36. Venit Sardiniam*. Cic. *Roma, Numidiaque facinorâ ejus memôrat*, for *et in Numidiâ*. Sall.

#### 4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

*Murus est decem pedes altus*,

The wall is ten feet high.

<i>Urbs distat triginta millia, or tri-</i>	}	The city is thirty miles distant.
<i>ginta millibus passuum,</i>		
<i>iter, or itinēre unius diēi,</i>		

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension ; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus* : *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are, *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch ; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance ; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number ; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative ; or the accusative with the preposition *ad* ; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*. Cæs. *Ad quantum milliarium*, or *milliāre, consedit*. Cic. *Ad quantum lapidem*. Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative ; as,

*Hoc lignum excēdit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est.* Virg. *Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

## 5. TIME.

LVI. Time *when* is put in the ablative ; as,

<i>Venit horā tertiā,</i>	He came at three o'clock.
---------------------------	---------------------------

¶ Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative ; as,

<i>Mansit paucos dies,</i>	He staid a few days.
<i>Sex mensibus absuit,</i>	He was away six months.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative ; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition ; as, *In præsentiā*, or *in præsenti*, scil. *tempore* ; *in* or *ad præsens* ; *Per decem annos* ; *Surgunt de nocte* ; *ad horum destinātiā*, *Intra annum* ; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas solutūros ait*. Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, atātis, temporis, horā, &c.* for *hāc atāte, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante* or some other word ; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributū confērunt*, sc. *tot annis, quot or quotquot*

*hunc. Cic. Prope diem, sc. ad, soon; Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eductum est, expugnatum, sc. post eos dies. Cæsar. Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas litteras, for ais tertio ante. Cic. Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris. Id. Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob. Liv. Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt, sc. quam per. Cic. We find Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque, sc. Atticus; for septemdecim annos natus, seventeen years old. Nep.*

Obs. 3. The abverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*; but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment, or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

*Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.*

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Vir qui,</i>	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Fæmina quæ,</i>	<i>Fæminæ quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui parel,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus parel.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misereor,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus misereor, or miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me misêret,</i>		
<i>cujus or cuja intêrest, &amp;c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a noninative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former ; as,

*Vir qui (vir) legît ; vir quem (virum) amo :* Sometimes the latter ; as, *Quam quisque nôrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat.* Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit.* Ter. sc. *Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed ; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted ; as, *Sunt, quos genus hoc minimè jurat, for sunt homines, quos homines, &c.* Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former ; as,

*Vultus quem dixit chaos.* Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur.* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem.* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est.* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender ; as, *Pompeius se affligit, quod mihi est summo dolori,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere.* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word implied ; as, *Scelus qui, for scelestus.* Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant, scil. negotia.* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moncam,* scil. *negotium.* Ter. *In omni Africâ, qui agebant ; for in*

*omnibus Afris.* Sallust. Jug. 89 *Non diffidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset,* for *quod.* Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*. In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make*, or *maketh*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love;" it should be "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum.* Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt*, scil. *tempora.* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit*: *Tyrî tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*. Virg. Or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuêrant, Romanos invadunt*: for *quique in priore pugna non adfuêrunt*. Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *The man I love*, to wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti*, for *quæ consuesti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consuesti*. Cic. *Restitutus in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo*. Ter. And iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *quâlis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est*,

*qualem decet esse sororum.* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantum urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas.* Cic.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our father, which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *That is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legēris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

*Qui vocare?* Geta, sc. *vocor.* *Quid queris?* Librum, sc. *quæro.* *Quotâ horâ venisti?* Sextâ. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber?* Meus, not mei. *Quanti emptus est?* Decem assibus. *Damnatusne es furti?* Imo alio crimine. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur?* Statur, sc. *a me, a nobis.* *Quis fecit?* Nescio: *Aliunt Petrum fecisse.* *Quomodo vales?* Bene, malè. *Scriptistine?* Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. *An vidisti?* Non vidi, non, minime, &c. *Chærea tuam vestem detrahit tibi?* Factum. *Et ed est indutus?* Factum. Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,  
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quàm, nisi, præter-*

*quam, an* : and also adverbs of likeness ; *as, ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* *as,*

*Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam.* Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.* *Id.*

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence, if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together ; *as,*

*Intèrest mea et reipublicæ ; Constitit asse et pluris ; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epîro ; Decius cum se devovêret, et in mediam aciem irruēbat.* Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summæque industriæ ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis.* Sall. *Tecum habitæ, & nôris, quàm sit tibi curta supellex.* Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec,* are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel,* by *either* ; the first *sive,* by *whether* ; and the first *nec,* by *neither* ; *as,*

*Et legit, et scribit ;* so, *tum legit, tum scribit ;* or *cum legit, tum scribit,* He both reads and writes ; *Sive legit, sive scribit,* Whether he reads or writes ; *Jacere quæ vera, quæ falsa ; Increpare quæ constiles ipsos, quæ exercitum,* To upbraid both the consuls and the army. Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (*as, et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ; *as,*

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti,* Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third ; *as, Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus,* If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. Cic. In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last ; thus, *You and I read ; Cicero and I are well,* but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first ; thus, *Ego et tu legimus.*

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter ; *as, Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui ;* but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied ; *as, Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctôris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* Cic. Where *Athênæ & urbs* are put for the

*learned men of Athens.* So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legāti missi*, i. e. the king and queen. Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*. Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now, the *Genus* or class, which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

*Et ego et Cicero meus fugitabit.* Cic. *Socii et rege recepto.* Virg. *Et ego in culpâ sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpâ*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carnâna, desunt*; or, *nihil hic deest nisi curmîna.* *Omnia, quibus turbâri solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*; *Duo millia et quadringenti casi.* Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Lauream proprium vescor, for vescimur.* Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

*Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt.* Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant.* Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur.* Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions, *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

<i>Lego ut discam,</i>	I read that I may learn.
<i>Utinam sapires,</i>	I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives, as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotiplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdiudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, dum, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quâ, quantopere*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, unne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*, I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubito, an venturus*

*sit Vides ut alta stet nive candidum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ago.* Plaut. *Haud scio, an amat.* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit.* Id. *Vides quàm turpe est.* Cic.

¶ In like manner the relative QUI in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with QUIPPE or UTPOTE; *Neque Antonius procul aberrat, utpòte qui sequeretur,* &c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So, *est qui, sunt qui, est quando* or *ubi,* &c. are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE. *Haud scio an recte dixerim,* is the same with *dico, affirmo.* Cic.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich,* &c.

Obs. 3. ET SI, TAM ET SI, and TAMEN ET SI, QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere they also take the subjunctive; ET IAM SI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, although, always has it; as, *Ut quæras, non reperies.* Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative; SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Odèrint dum metuant.* Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indicative; as, *Quippe vector fatis.*

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi, tametsi, or quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam,—quam; Adeo* or *ita,—ut*: in English, *As,—as, or so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *priùs* or *antè,—quàm*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censco, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est,* and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac, or facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem; Nolo mentiàre; Fac cogites.* Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias.* Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octàvo, quam creàtus erat.* Liv. 4. 47, scil. *post.* And so in English, *See you do it; I beg you would come to me,* scil. *that.*

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *quòd* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause,

and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quòd* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quòd legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.*

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

*Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it: *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*. Ter. *Ut sis vitālis, metuo*. Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not live;—*ne frater moriatur*, will die. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative, (*when it can be translated by than*); as,

*Dulcior melle*, sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*. Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*. Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

*Dulcior quàm mel*, scil. est. *Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illo*, sc. ab.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

*Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, scil. *quàm*. Cæs. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows. Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locunt*, sc. *quàm*. Liv.

*Quàm* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

*Triumphus clarior quàm gratior*. Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numero pugnantium editur*. Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opiniōne, spe, æquo, justo, dicto*; as,

*Credibili opinione major.* Cic. *Credibili fortior.* Ovid, *Fast.* ii. 618  
*Gravius æquo.* Sall. *Dicto citius.* Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus.* Liv  
 They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely  
 Nepos. 2. 1.

*Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

*Nihil vidi quidquam lætius*, for *neminem*. Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius.*  
 Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum.* So, *quid nobis*  
*laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nullā re*, or *quā*  
*pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated, or joined with an ad-  
 verb; as, *Magis magisque*, *plus, plusque*, *minus minusque*, *carior carior-*  
*que*; *Quotidie plus*, *indies magis*, *semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

Obs. 4. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise ex-  
 pressed by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quā ego*, He is  
 as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit.* *Ac* and *atque*  
 are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives;  
 as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc.* Ter.

Obs. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the abla-  
 tive after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, ex-  
 pressed or understood; (or more shortly, the difference of  
 measure is put in the ablative;) as,

*Est decem digitis altior quā frater*, He is ten inches taller than his  
 brother, or by ten inches. *Altēro tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo ma-*  
*ior*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipēde minor*,  
 a foot and a half less; *Altēro tanto*, aut *sesquimāior*, as big again, or a  
 half bigger. Cic. *Ter tanto pejor est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se*,  
*quā prius*. Plaut. *Quingies tanto amplius, quā quantum licitum*  
*sit, civitatibus imperavit*, five times more. Cic. To this may be added  
 many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase  
 its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c. thus,  
*Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they de-  
 sire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque*  
*minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit.* Ovid, *Fast.* ii. 766. We frequently  
 find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherri-*  
*mam eam haberemus.* Sall. *Multo id maximum fuit.* Liv.

#### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put  
 in the ablative, when their case depends on no  
 other word; as,

*Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebrae*, { The sun rising, or while the sun riseth  
 darkness flies away.  
*Opere peracto, ludemus*, { Our work being finished, or when our  
 work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus*; *Nihil amicitia*  
*præstabilis est, excepta virtute*; *Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod*  
*speremus amplius*; *Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatū*  
*puto.* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi coge-*  
*rentur, pugnam initūris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ac ab*  
*auguribus, simul aves ritè admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum*

Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades.* Ovid, *Fast.* iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt.* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered*: 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered*: 3. *By conquering the enemy*: 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy*, &c.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicëro locutus hæc consēdit*, never, *his locūtis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romāni adepti libertatē floruerunt*; or *Romāni, libertatē adeptā, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassâ Minervâ*, without learning. Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ; vivis fratribus; te hortatøre; Cæsare, impulsøre*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Non dum comperto, quâ regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*. Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*. Id. *Excepto quòd non simul esses, cætëra lætus*. Hor. *Parto quod avēbas*. Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell. Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*. Plaut. *Absente nobis* Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid. *Amor.* ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consule fastos*. Lucan. v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*. Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*. Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciōsā libidinē paulisper usus, infirmītas natūræ accusātur*. Sall. Jug. 1

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnābat*. *Opère peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle, in English, independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

## APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

### I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

#### FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ASPIRARE** ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*. Cic. equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labōri ejus, *to favour*; amōrem dictis, *sc. ei, to infuse*. Virg.

**DESPERARE** sibi de se; salutem, salutē, de salute, *to despair of*.

**LEGARE** aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e. testamento relinquere*. N. B. Publice legantur homīnes; qui inde legātī dicuntur: privātū allegantur; unde allegātī.

**DELEGARE** ōs aliēnum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; labōrem altēri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, *i. e. in eum transferre*. Cic.

**LEVARE** metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease*.

**MUTARE** locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliquā re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, *i. e. sordidam togam induere*. Liv. vestem cum aliquo. Ter. fidem, *to break*.

**OBNUNCIARE** comitiis or concilio, *i. e. comitia auspicii impedire, to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consūli or magistratui; *i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat*. Cic.

**PRONUNCIARE** pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*. Cic.

**RENUNCIARE** aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consūlem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ, amicitiam

ei, *to give up*; munēri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium, *to divorce*.

**OCCUPARE** aliquem, *to seize, se in aliquo negotio, to be employed, se ad negotium*. Plaut. pecuniam alicui or apud aliquem grandi fœnōre, *to give at interest*. Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates*. Liv.

**PRÆOCCUPARE** saltum, portas Ciliaciæ, *to seize before hand*. Nep.

**PRÆJUDICARE** aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*. Cic.

**ROGARE** aliquem id, & de eā re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute. Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence, UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing*. Liv.

**ABROGARE** legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

**ABROGARE** id sibi, *to claim*.

**DEROGARE** aliquid legi or de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur. Cic. fidem ei, or de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

**EROGARE** pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on*.

**IRROGARE** inultam ei, *to impose*.

**OBROGARE** legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old*.

**PROROGARE** imperium provin-

ciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off*.

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another*.

SPECTARE orientem, *ad orientem, to look towards*; aliquem ex censu animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of*.

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars cæpti, *sc. opëris, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*. Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi, sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from*.

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiæ, *in or ad rem, to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, *or vacat tibi, if you are at leisure*.

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty*.

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*. Plant. jura, *to prescribe laws*; litëras alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, *or se in fugam, in pedes, to fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; opëram, *to endeavour*; opëram philosophiæ, litëris, palæstræ, *to apply to*; opëram honoribus, *to seek*. Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*. Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c. cognitores honestos, to give good vouchers for one's character*. Cic. aliquid mutuum, *or utendum, to lend*; pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alieni ad docendum. Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctori-

tati senatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*. Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipitem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*. Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a lawsuit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely lethum alicui, to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, *or muneri, to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, *or in militiam, to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*. Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*. Id. aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*; verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum or domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitæque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu Lucr. servos in questionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas, secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery*. Cic. Dat ei bibere. Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*. Virg. Da mihi or nobis, tell us. Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go*; solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*. Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid*. Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, or pro aliquo, *to side with, to be of the same party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*; in sententiâ; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; stare or constare animo, *to be in his senses*: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solva-

tur, *It is not owing to me that, &c.* multorum sanguine ea Pœnis victoria stetit, *cost.* Liv. Mihi stat alere morbum desinere, *I am resolved.* Nep.

ADSTARE mensæ, *to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.*

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to consist of; secum, to be consistent with.* Cic. liber constitit or stetit mihi duobus assibus, *cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right.* Constat, impers. *It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.*

EXTARE aquis, *to be above.* Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, *to remain.* Cic. sepulchra extant. Liv.

INSTARE victis, *to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in the right way; currum Marti, to make speedily.* Virg.; instat factum, *insists that it was done.* Ter.

OBSTARE ei, *to hinder.*

PRÆSTARE multa, *to perform; alicui, or aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant.* Juv. impensas, *to defray;*

iter tutum, *to procure; se incolamem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, or benevolentiam alicui, to show; culpam or damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me eum facturum, I will be answerable.* In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit. *In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial.* Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.

PRÆSTAT, impers, i. e. *it is better* Præsto esse alicui, *adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.*

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near; apud aliquem.* Incubare ovis & ova, *to sit upon; stratis & super strata.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, or inter manus, *to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; iudicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of.* Ter.: fidem alicui, *to trust or believe; curam de or pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem, or rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquid odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; id religioni, to have a scruple about it: So, habere aliquid quaestui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene or*

graviter, *to be well or ill; se parce et duriter, to live.* Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum or pro certo, *to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, or in despiciatui, to despise; excusatum, to excuse; susque deque, to scorn, to slight; Ut res se habet, stands, is; rebus ita se habentibus, in this state of affairs; Hæc habeo, or habui dicere de, &c.* Non habeo necesse scribere quid sim factururus. Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce.*

ADHIBERE diligentiam, celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem *to use, in convivium, or consilium, to admit; remedium vulneri, cura tionem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrôtis, to give; aures veribus to*

*hear with taste*; cultum & preces diis, *to offer*. Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble*.

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass*; regem, *to choose*; aliquem salvare, *to wish one health*; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorē suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced*. Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque linguæ; Latinis & Græcis litēris; Latīnē & Græcē; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, *ad aliquid*; vinum aquā; Plin. cuncta sanguine. Tacit. sacra profanis. Hor. humana divinis. Liv.

VIDERE rem or de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of*. Ter. plus, *to be more wise*. Cic. De hoc tu vidēris, *consider, be answerable for*. Cic. Videor vidēre, *methinks I see*; visus sum audire, *methought I heard*; mihi visus est dicere, *he seemed*; Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please*; videtur fecisse, *guilty, &c.*

INVIDERE honorem ei, or honori ejus; ei, or eum, *to envy*.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, *to foresee*; ei, *to provide for*; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, *rem or de re*.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga benè sedet, *sits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*. Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, *to sit by*. Sall. Assidet insano, *is near or like to*. Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to disagree*.

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, *to sit upon*; locum. Liv. in animo, *memoria, to be fixed*.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command*. Cic. exercitum, Italiam. Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugna, loqui, *to forbear, to give over*.

PENDERE promissis, ab or ex aliquo, *to depend*; de, ex, ab, & in arbore; Opéra pendent interrupta. Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, or in nos, *threatens*.

SPONDERE & despondere filiam alicui, *to betroth*.

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of*. Cic. animo & -is, *to promise, to hope*; animum & -os, *to despair*. Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, litēris ejus, his, ad hæc, *ad nomen, to answer*; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes*; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, or de pace; legem, *to speak in favour of*.

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, or hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiā apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*; lex valet, *is in force*; quid verbum valeat, non video, *signifies*; valet decem talenta, or oftener talentis, *is worth*; vale or valeas, *farewell*; or, ironically, *away with you*.

EMINERE aliquā re, or in aliquā re, inter omnes; super cætēra. Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aquā, or aquam, super undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occasionem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for*.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *sc. in, to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember*; linguam, but not suam, silentium, *se in silentio, to be silent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*. Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*. Cic. causam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of*; terram, portum, metam montes, *to reach*; risum lachrymas, *to restrain*; se ab accusando, quin accuset. Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tenet fama, *pretils*.

ABSTINERE maledictis, or a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*. Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab ali-

quo, *not to treat rigorously*. Liv. Id ad me, ad religiōnem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet. Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for mei fratris est, belongs to*; venæ ad or in omnes corpōris partes pertinent, *reach*.

SUSTINERE persōnam judicis, *nomen consulatūs, to bear the character*; assensiōnem, *or se ab assensu, to withhold assent*; rem in noctem, *to defer*.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiā, in sententiā, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*. Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*. Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*. Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria. Cic. Munera vobis certa manent. Virg.

MERERE laudem; benè, malè de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; fustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

HÆRERE latèri; tergis, *or in terga hostium*. Liv. curru. Virg. alicui in visceribus. Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt* Vide,

ne hæreās, *lest you be at a loss*. Cic.

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærerere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum or jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*. Cic.

FAVETE ore, *or linguis, sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen*.

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, *or ab aliquo, to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui. Cic. sibi ab aliquo *or per aliquem de re aliquā, to get security on*; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veterānis cautum esse volumus. Cic. Cave facias, *sc. ne, see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, *or mea cautio est, I must take care*.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura. Suet. *to wink*; in hominū sceleribus, *to take no notice of*. Cic.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

### Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, *to make*; divortium cum uxore. Cic. bellum regi. Nep. se hilarem, *to show*. Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, *to pretend*. Cic. æs alienum, *or contrahere, conflare, to contract debt*; animos, *to encourage*; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to lose*; naufragium, *to suffer*; sumptum, *to spend*; gratum alicui, *to oblige*; gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault*; gratiam legis, *to dispense with*; justa or funus alicui, *to perform one's funeral rites*; rem, *to make an estate*; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœ-

dus, *or inire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sanctire, firmare, &c. to make a league*; moram alicui, *to delay*; verba, *to speak*; audientiam sibi. Cic. negotium, & facescere, *to trouble*; aliquid missum, *to pass over*; aliquem missum, *to dismiss or excuse*; ad aliquid, *rarely alicui, to be fit or useful*; ratum, *to ratify*; planum, *to explain*; palam suis, *to make known*. Nep. stipendium pedibus or equo, & merere, *to serve in the army*; sacra, sacrificium, *or rem divinam, to sacrifice*; reum, *to impeach*; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play, &c. copiam consilii ei, to offer advice*; copiam or potestatem dicendi legatis, *to grant leave*; fidem,

to procure or give credit; pericūlū, to make trial; potestātem sui, to expose himself. Nep. aliquem loquentem, or loqui, to suppose or represent. Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, to be a pirate; argentariam, medicinam, mercatūram, &c. to be an usurer, a physician, &c. versuram, to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest. Cic. cum or ab aliquo, to side with; contra or adversus, to oppose; nomen, or nomina, to borrow money; and also, to settle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum, & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in liturā, to write it where something was before. Cic. pedem or pedes to trim the sails. Virg. Fac ita esse, suppose it is so; obvius fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum or longa faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move. Cic. Fac velle, sc. me, suppose me to be willing. Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominia, pœnā, morte, leto, &c. to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, to finish, orationes, to compose. Nep. cibum, to chew; argentum, to raise, to get; also, to spend. Cic.; cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hostium, to destroy; alterum Curiatium, to kill. Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, had served out their time. Cic.

DEFICERE animo, to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi or me, fails: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.

INFICERE se vitro, to stain: Infectus, part. stained; infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -ari, -atus, to deny.

OFFICERE alicui, to hinder or hurt; Diogeni apicanti, to stand betwixt him and the sun; auribus, visui, to stop or obstruct; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit. Cic

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, to set over. Proficere alicui, to profit, to do good; in philosophiā, & progressus facere, to make progress.

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, to repair; animum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, to refresh, to recover.

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, to be able to bear; arma or vires alicui, to afford; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, was substituted. Liv. Filius patri suffectus. Tacit. Oculis suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, having their eyes red and inflamed. Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in or de aliqua re, to satisfy; fidei, promissio, to perform.

JACERE aliquem in præcepis; contumelias in eum, to throw; fundamenta, & ponere, to lay; talos, to play at dice; anchoram, to cast.

ADJICERE, to add; oculos alicui rei, to covet; animum studiis, to apply; sacerdotibus creandis. Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedes, or fugam, to fly; cætëra, to conjecture.

INJICERE manus ei, to lay on; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, to inspire; admirationem sui cuius ipso aspectu. Nep.

OBJICERE se hostibus, in or ad omnes causus, to oppose or expose; crimen ei, to lay to one's charge.

REJICERE tela in hostes, to throw back; judices, mala, to reject; rem ad senatum, Romam, to refer; rem ad Idus Febr. to delay. Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, to set an hen; se imperio alicujus, to submit; testamenta, to forge; testes, to suborn; partes or species generibus, ex quibus emanant, to put or class under; aliquid ei, to suggest; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare. odio civium, to expose; bona Pompeii or fortunæ hastæ or voci & sub voce præcônis, to expose to public sale. Cic. sub hastâ venire, to be sold. Liv.

TRAJICERE copias or exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, or trans

fluvium, *to transport*: Marius cum parvâ naviculâ in Africam trajectus est, *passed or sailed over*. Trajectus ferro, *pierced*.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, or auspiciam, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris; terram, *to alight*; insulam, summam, sc. loca, *to reach*; spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*. Sall. de republicâ nihil præter gloriam. Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*; virginem Vestalem, *to choose*; amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*; aliquem, consilio, perfidiâ, *to catch*; nec te Troja capit. Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*. Altëro oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*; capitur locis, *he is delighted with*. Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritatē. Nep. binas litëras eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*. Cic. clamorem de Socrate, *to hear*; id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*; omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum, ac, atque. Ter. rudem or rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene, or malè, *to treat*; eum malè acceptum in Mediam hiematum coëgit redire, *roughly handled*. Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactionem, or excusationem. Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, *popular*.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*. Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, *to entertain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extramuram spiritum cognatorum; san-

guinem patërâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homines excipio, *I except*, virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, *succeeded*; sic excepit regia Juno, *replied*. Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

PRÆCIPERE futura, *to foresee*, gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*. Cæs. lac, *to dry up*. Virg. alicui id, or de eâ re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum tectis, *to entertain*; se or pedem, *to retreat*, se domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again, to recover spiritus*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem sessum, *to give a seat to*. Cic.

RAPERE or trahere in pejorem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to share*. Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*. Horat.

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*. Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: cæteros. Ter. spumas, *to drive or toss*. Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*. Curt. culpam suam or alterius, morte, sanguine, *to expiate, to atone or suffer for*.

ELUERE amicitias reimmisione usûs, *to drop gradually*. Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, or -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to set or place*. Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to settle*; agmen paulisper, *to make to stop or halt*. Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*. Cic. urbem, *to build*.

**Ovid.** Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolved.* Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, *makes, constitutes.* Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, *a good constitution.* Id.

**DESTITUERE** aliquem, *to forsake; spem, to deceive; propositum, to give over.* Ovid. deos pactâ mercède, *to defraud.* Hor.

**INSTITUTE** aliquem secundum heredem filio, *to appoint.* Cic. collegium fabrôrum, *sacra, to institute, to found.* Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis litêris, *to instruct; naves, to build.* Cæs. sermônem, *to enter upon.* Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle; antequam pro Murænâ, dicere instituo, I begin.* Cic.

**PRÆSTITUERE** petitorî, quâ actione illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use.* Cic. tempus ei, *to determine.*

**RESTITUERE** exules; virginem suis, *to restore; oppida vicosque, to repair; aciem inclinatum, to rally; prælium, to renew.* Liv.

**SUBSTITUERE** aliquem in locum ejus, pro altêro, *to substitute or put in the place of.* Cic.

**STRUERE** epûlas, *to prepare; insidias, mendacium, to contrive; odium, crimen alicui, or in aliquem, to raise against.*

### BO.

**SCRIBERE** suâ manu, benè, velocitèr, epistolam alicui, *or ad aliquem; bellum, or de bello; milites, to enlist; supplementum militibus, to recruit them; hæredem, to make one his heir; dicam ei, to raise an action against one; nummos, to give a bill of exchange; de rebus suis scribi cupivit.* Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis. Liv.

**ASCRIBERE** aliquem civitatî, in civitatem, *or -e, to make free.*

**DESCRIBERE** aliquem, *to describe and not to name; partes Italiæ, pecuniam populum ordinibus, to distribute, to divide; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare*

*or constitnere; censôres binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere.* Cic.

**INSCRIBERE** litêras alicui, *to direct a letter; librum, to entitle, or name; ædes mercède, to put a ticket on one's house to let.* Ter.

**PROSCRIBERE** bona alicujus ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale; aliquem, to banish, to outlaw.*

**RESCRIBERE** alicujus, litêris, *or ad litêras, alicui ad aliquid, to write an answer; pecuniam, to pay money by bill; legionem ad equum, to set foot soldiers on horseback.* Cæs.

**SUBSCRIBERE** exemplum literarum, *to write below; causæ, to join or take part in an accusation; Cæsaris iræ, to favour.* Ovid.

### CO.

**DICERE** aliquid, *or de aliquâ re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad or apud aliquem; in aliquem, against; ad aliquid, in answer to; sententiam, to give an opinion; jus, to administer justice, to pronounce sentence; mulctam ei, to amerce or fine; diem ei, to appoint a day for his trial before the people; prodicere, to put it off; causam, to plead; testimonium, to give evidence; non idem loqui est ac dicere, to harangue.* Cic. sacramento, *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath.*

**ADDICERE** aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell; servituti, or in servitutem, to sentence or adjudge to bondage; bona, to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor; se alicui, to devote himself to one's service; aves non addixerunt, or abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen; pretio addictam habere fidem, to be corrupt.* Cic.

**CONDICERE** opêram alicui, *to promise assistance; cœnam alicui, or ad cœnam, to purpose supping with one without invitation.*

**EDICERE** alicui, *to order; de lectum, to appoint a levy; prædam militibus, to promise by an edict,*

justitium, diem comitiis, or comitia consulis creandis, *to appoint.*

INDICERE bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint.* Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon.* Liv. indicare, *to show*; Indictus, an adj. *not said*; causâ indictâ, or non cognitâ, condemnâri, *to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling.* Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid, or aliquâ re; fœminis usum purpûræ, *to forbid or debar from*; ei aquâ et igne or aquam et ignem, *to banish*; malè rem gerentibus bonis paternis Interdici solet. Cic. interdici non potêrat socëro gener, *discharged the company of.* Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliquâ re, id in hac re, *to foretell, to forewarn.*

DUCTERE in carcërem or vincula, *to lead*; exercitum, *to command*; spiritum, animam, vitam, *to breathe, to live*, fossam, murum, sulcum, *to make or draw*; bellum, *to prolong, also to carry on.* Virg. etâtem, diem, *to spend*; uxôrem, *to take a wife*; in jus, *to summon before a judge*; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmôre, &c. *to make a statue*; genus, nomen ab or ex aliquo, *to derive*; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id laudi, laudem, or in laudem, (*oftener the first.*) *to reckon it a praise to him*; in conscientiam, *to impute to a consciousness of guilt*; in gloriâ. Plin. in crimen. Tacit. centesimas, sc. usuras or fœnus centesimis, *to compute interest at one for the hundred a month, or at 12 per cent. per annum*; binis centesimis fœnerâri, *to take 24 per cent. per annum*; Cic. ducere longas voces in fletum, *to draw out.* Virg. ordines, *to be a centurion.* Liv. illa, *to pant like a broken-winded horse.* Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, *to bring to a trial*; in suspiciônem regi. Nep. arcum, *to draw in*; habénas, *to straighten the reins.*

CONDUCTERE aliquem ex loco, *to convey*; navem, domum, coquos, *to hire*; columnam faciendam, *to engage to make at a certain price*, Conducit hoc tunc laudi, in or ad rem, *is of advantage.*

DEDUCERE naves, *to launch* classem in prælium, *to bring.* Nep. equites, *to make to alight.* Liv. eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home*; de sententiâ. Cic. coloniam, *to transplant*; lacum, *to drain.*

EDUCERE gladium e vaginâ, *to draw*; florem Italiæ, *to lead out*; copias in aciem. Cic. filium, *to educate, oftener educare*; in astra, *to extol.* Hor. cœlo. Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, *to bring on.* Cic. animum, or in animum, *to persuade himself*; scuta pellibus, *to cover.* Cæs. soleas pedibus, or in pedes, *to put on*; colorem picturæ, *to varnish.* Plin. nomina, *to cancel or erase, to rub out.*

OBducERE exercitum, *to lead against*; callum dolori, *to blunt it*, sepulchrum sentibus, *to cover.*

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam, alicujus or alicui, aliquid in memoriam, *to bring back to one's remembrance*; in gratiam cum aliquo, *to reconcile*; Vallis reducta, *retired or low.*

PRODUCERE testes, *to bring out*; funus, *to attend*; sermonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue*; rem in hiëmem, *to defer*; servos vendendos, *to bring to market.*

SEDUCERE se a custodibus, *to steal away*; naves, *to draw up on shore*; cibum ei, & deducere, *to take from*; summam, rationes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts.*

PARCERE sibi, labore, *to spare*, &c. a cœdibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis. Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui or re aliquâ, in or ad hoc, *to be accustomed*; mentem pluribus, & assuescere. Hor. Animis bella. Virg. *to accustom.* So, insuesco rei, or re; insuevit hoc me pater. Hor.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree*; hence plebiacitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to assume*; socios sibi, ad societatem scelēria, *to associate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt*.

CONSCISCERE mortem or necem sibi, *to kill one's self*; fugam sibi, *to flee*. Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *or apud aliquem, ex aliquā re, or without ex*: Dediscere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediscere, *to get by heart*.

## DO.

DESCENDERE de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrēma, *to have recourse to*. Cic.

LUDERE aleā, *or -am, to play at dice*; par impar, *at even & odd*; opēram, *to lose one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem; Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -iis, *or ex, to escape*; in murum, *to mount*; Hæc quorsum evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*; Clarus evāsit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure. Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, *or locum, to give place*; vitā, e vitā decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, *ad or in oppidum, to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Cicerōni, sententiæ, *or ad sententiam ejus, to agree with*; ad Cicerōnem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*. Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *is added*. Ter. Robur accessit ætati. Cic. Animi accessere hosti. Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant. Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eò, accedit quod, *is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitā, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come into one's measures*; in conditiones, *to agree to*. Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, *or digitum a re, to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia or inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, *or murum*; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come unto*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causā formulā, in iudicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in or sub sensum, oculis, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere. Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*. Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio. Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus or ad genua, *to fall at*: auribus or ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*. Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiōra, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, *sc. tabernaculum, to pitch a tent*; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*. Virg.

ATTENDO te. Cic. tibi. Plin. de hac re, *ad hanc rem, to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium. Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se; animi, *post. for cum amore, to strive*; causas, *sc. inter se, to compare*. Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, eum aliquo, & alicui.

**COMPREHENDERE** naturam rerum, *to understand*; rem pluribus & luculentioribus verbis, *to express*; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to discover*.

**INTENDERE** animum rei, *ad or in rem, to apply*; Intendi animo in rem. Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem, *or litem alicui or in aliquem, also impingere, to raise a law-suit against one*; telum ei, *or in eum, to shoot at*; manum *or digitum in aliquid, to point at*; aliquo, *sc. ire, to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*. Sall.

**OBTENDERE** velum rei, *or rem velo, to cover, to veil*.

**PENDERE** pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little*.

**SUSPENDERE** aliquem arbôri, *de, in, or ex arbore, to hang*; expectatione, *or suspensum detinere, to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arch a house*; naso adunco, *to sneer at*. Hor.

**ABDERE** se litêris, *in litêras, to hide or shut up one's self among books*; se domum, rus, &c. domo. Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

**CONDERE** urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcêre, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close*. Ov. Jura, *to establish*; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury*.

**DEDERE** se alicui, *in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to surrender*; Deditus præceptôri, & studiis, *fond of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in*. Nep. deditâ opêrâ, *on purpose*.

**EDERE** librum, & in lucem, *to publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, to sing, &c. manus gladiatorum, to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; fœtus, *to bring forth*; extremum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatûs in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture*.

**OBDERE** pessulum foribus, *to bolt the door*.

**PRODERE** arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquid postêris, *or memoriæ, to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interrêgem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*. Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity*. Liv.

**REDDERE** animum, se sibi, *to revive*; animam *or vitam, to die*; Latine, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, *i. e. referre, to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

**SUBDERE** calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

**CREDERE** rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet; Itaque credo, si, &c. *I suppose*. Cic.

**FUNDERE** aquam, *to pour out*; hostes, *to rout*.

**EFFUNDERE** fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to spend*; odium, *i. e. dimittere, to drop*; gratiam collectam, *i. e. perdere*: omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell*.

GO.

**JUNGERE** se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ, *to join*; equos currui, *to yoke*, amnem ponte, *to make a bridge*.

**ADJUNGERE** accessiônem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's house*; animum ad studia, *to apply*.

**STRINGERE** cultrum, gladium, ense, *to draw*; frondes, *to lop off*; glandes, baccas, *to beat down*; rem, *to waste one's fortune*. Hor. littus, *to touch, to brush, or graze upon*. Virg.

**TANGERE** rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head*.

**ATTINGERE** Britanniam navibus, *to reach*; reges, res summas, *to mention*. Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to*; forum, *to reach manhood*. Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns*.

**FINGERE** orationem, *to polish*; oratorem, *to form*; se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt*: Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem. Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam. Nep.

**FRANGERE** *nucem, to break; navem, to suffer shipwreck; fœdus, fidem, to violate; sententiam ejus, to refute. Cic. hostem, to subdue.*

**AGERE** *gratias, to give thanks; vitam, to live; prædas, to plunder; fabulam, to act a play; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliquâ re, to triumph; nugas, to trifle; ambages, to beat about the bush; stationem, custodiam urbis, to be on guard; rimas, to chink, to leak, to be rent; causam, to plead; de re, to speak; radices, to take root; cuniculos, to undermine; undam, to raise a steam; anîmam, to be at the last gasp; alias res, to be inattentive; festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. to keep, to observe; actum, or rem actam, to labour in vain; censum, & habere, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. forum, to hold a court to try causes; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one; hence actor, a plaintiff; in hereditatem, to claim; cum populo, to treat with, to lay before; decimum agit annum, he is ten years old; id agitur, that is the question; libertas agitur, or de libertate, is at stake; actum est de libertate, is lost; actum est, illicit, all is over; actum est de pace, was treated about; cum illo benè actum est, he has been lucky, or well used; hoc age, mind what you are about: Civitas læta agere, for erat. Sall.*

**ADIGERE** *milites sacramento, ad or in jusjurandum, in sua verba, per jusjurandum, to force to enlist; arbitrum, i. e. agere or cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration. Cic.*

**COGERE** *copias, to bring together; ad militiam, to force to enlist; senatum, to assemble; in senatum, sc. minis, pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend; agmen, to rally, to bring up; lac, to curd'e; jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.*

**EXIGERE** *foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require; sarta tecta, sc. et, i. e. sarta*

*et tecta, ut sint benè reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation. Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, to inflict; sua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts; ævum. vitam, annos, to spend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; columnam ad perpendicularum, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight; monumentum, to finish. Hor. tempus & modum, to settle. Virg. comœdiam, to disapprove, to hiss off. Ter.*

**REDIGERE** *aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raise money; hostes sub imperium, to reduce.*

**LEGERE** *oram, littus, to coast along; vela, to furl the sails; halitum, to catch one's breath; milites, to enlist; aliquem in senatum, in Patres, to choose; sacra, to steal, to commit sacrilege. Hor.*

**HO.**

**TRAHERE** *obsidionem, bellum, to prolong; purpuras, to spin; aliquid in religionem, to scruple; navem remulco, to tow.*

**DETRAHERE** *aliquem, to draw down; alicui or de aliquo, de famâ, to detract from, to lessen one's fame; aliquid alicui, to take by force; laudem, or de laudibus: novem partes multæ, to take from the fine. Nep.*

**EXTRAHERE** *diem, to spin out, to spend; certamen, bellum, judicium, to prolong.*

**VEHERE**, *vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. riding in a chariot; invêhi in portum ex alto, to enter; in aliquem, to inveigh against; provêhi longius, to proceed too far.*

**LO**

**CONSULERE** *rem, or de re, to consult about; eum, to ask his advice; ei, to consult for his good, de salute suâ; gravior in aliquem, to pass a severe sentence against; in commune, publicum, medium, to provide for the common good; verba boni, to take in good part; ego consulor, my advice is asked;*

*mihi consultar, my good is consulted; mihi consultum ac provisum est for a me, I have taken care.* Cic.

**APPELLERE** classem in Italiam, *or classem, to land on; se aliquò.* Ter. ad villam nostram navis appellètur. Cic. animum ad philosophiam, *to apply.*

**ANTECELLERE** ei, *rarely eum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliquà re or in re, to excel.*

**TOLLERE** animos suos, *to take courage; animos alicui, to encourage; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, to extol; inducias, to break a truce; clamores, to cry; filium, to educate; de or e medio, to kill.*

### MO.

**ADIMERE** claves uxóri, *to divorce; annulum or equum equiti, to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade.*

**DIRIMERE** litem, controversiam, *to determine.*

**EXIMERE** aliquem servitio, noxæ e vinculis, a culpâ, de numero proscriptorum, obsidiõne, *to free; de dolio, to draw out; diem dicendo, to waste in speaking.*

**INTERIMERE** se, *to kill.*

**REDIMERE** captivos, *to ransom; pecuaria de censoribus, to take or farm the public pastures.*

**SUMERE** in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex or de eo, *to take; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, to punish; pecunias mutuas, to borrow; togam virilem, to put on the dress of a man; sibi inimicitias, to get ill will; opëram in re or in rem insumere, to bestow pains; suino tantum, or hoc mihi, I take this upon me.*

**PREMERE** caseum, *to make cheese; vocem, to be silent; dolorem corde, to conceal; vestigia ejus, to follow; littus, to come near; pollicem, to sue a gladiator; librum in nonum annum, to delay publishing.* Hor.

**EXPRIMERE** succum, *to press out;*

*risum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from; effigiem, to draw to the life; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. to translate word for word.*

**IMPRIMERE** aliquid animo, in animo, *or in animum, to imprint.*

**REPRIMERE** se, & reprehendere or retinere, *to check.*

### NO.

**PONERE** spem in homine or re, & habere; castra, *to pitch; vitem, to plant; vitam, to die; ova, to lay; insidias alicui; panem convivis, not ante; personam amici, to lay aside the character of a friend; prœmia, to propose; pocula, to stake or lay; studium, tempus, multum opëre in aliquà re, to employ, to bestow; aliquid in laude, in vitiiis, in loco beneficii, to reckon; ferocia corda, to lay aside; aliquem in gratiam or gratiâ, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum.* Cic. ventos, *to calm; hominem coloribus, saxo, to paint, engrave.* Hor. pecuniam in sœnore, *to lay out at interest; templa, to build.* Virg. Venti posuere, *are hushed.* Virg. Pone esse victum eum. Ter. Positum sit, *suppose, grant.* Cic.

**COMPONERE** carmen, litëras, &c. *to compose; lites, to settle; bellum, to finish by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare; manus manibus, to join.* Virg.

**DEPONERE** or ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy; imperium, & demittere, to lay down a command.*

**EXPONERE** rem, *to set forth or explain; frumentum, to expose to sale.* Cic. pueros, fetus, *to leave to perish.* Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, *to land.*

**IMPONERE** onus alicui or in aliquem; aliquem in equum, *to set upon; personam or partes duriõres ei, to lay a task or duty on one; alicui, to impose on, to deceive.* Nep. honorem ei, *to confer; vadium ei, to force to give bail; Nep. manum summam or extremam rei alicui, in aliquà re, to fin-*

*ish*; pontem flumini, *to make a bridge*. Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*. Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, *to expose*; pignori, *to pledge*; manum fronti, ante oculos, *to put*. Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before*: edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda effigere; congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money*.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen*; testamentum, or subjicere, *to forge*.

CANERE aliquem, *to praise*; signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle*; receptui, rarely -um, *to sound a retreat*; tibiā, *to play on the pipe*; ad tibiam, *to sing to it*; palinodiam, *to utter a recantation*.

STERNERE lectos, *to spread or cover the couches*; equos, *to harness*; viam, *to pave*; æquora, *to calm*. Virg.

#### PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear*; somnos, quietem, *to sleep*; viam iter, *to go*. Virg. opéra alterius, *to censure*; labores, virtutes, *to diminish or obscure*. Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate*; vocem or silentium, *to speak*. Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenëbris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out*; stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passion*; nubem, *to break*. Virg.

#### RO.

QUERERE bonam gratiam sihi, *to seek or gain*. Cic. sermōnem, *to beat about for conversation*. Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise*; ex aliquo, & in aliquem, *de re aliquā per tormenta, to put to the rack*; in domīnum de servo quæri noluērunt Romani. Cic.

INQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after*; aliquem capitis, or -te, *to accuse or try for a capital crime*

GERERE res, *to perform*; negotium malè, *to manage*; consilium, *to bear, to manage*; se benè or malè, *to behave*; exercitum, *to conduct*. Sallust. morem ei, or inorigerari, *to humour*; civem, se prope, personam alicujus, *to pass for, to bear the character of*; inimicitias or similitatem cum aliquo, *to be at enmity or variance with*.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against*.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest, to hint*; sumptus his rebus, *to supply or afford*: Horatium Bruto, *to choose in place of, to put after*. Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations*.

CONSERERE nianus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage*.

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm*; aliquem manu, ab injuriā, in libertatem, *to free*; in servitūtem, *to reduce*; divinam majestatem, *to claim*.

#### TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, rarely eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco. Cic. *to ask*; urbem Romam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for*; aliquem sagittā, lapide, *to aim at*; consulatūm pœnas ab aliquo, repetere, *to punish*.

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses*; in eum compētit actio, *an action lies against him*. Cic.

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution*; bonā lege, or prosequi, lite, *to recover by law*; castra, oppidum, huc, *to return to*; aliquid memoriā, *to call to mind*; altè, *to trace from the beginning*. Mihi nihil suppēt, multa suppētunt, *I have*; si vita suppētet, *if life shall remain*. Cic.

MITTERE alicui or ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote*; auleum, mappam, *to drop the curtain*; talos, *to throw the dice*; senatum, *to dismiss*; timōrem, *to lay aside*; in acta, *to register, to record*; sanguinem, or emittere, *to let blood*; noxam, *to forgive*; signa timōris, *to show*; vocem, *to utter, to speak*; habēnas, or remittere,

to slacken; manu, or emittère, to free a slave; filium emancipare, to free a son from the power of his father; sub jugum, to make to pass under the yoke; inferias manibus diis, to sacrifice to the infernal gods; rem or de re, to omit; mitto rem, I say nothing of fortune. Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; inisit orare, ut venirem, i. e. aliquem ad orandum. Ter.

AMITTERE litem or causam: vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectum, to lose. Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, to admit; equum immittère, & permittere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admisērunt, have not given a favourable omen. Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, to commit; se alicui or in fidem alicujus, to intrust; praelium, to engage; exercitum pugnae, rem in casum accipitis eventus praelii, to risk a battle. Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance or by the ears; rem eò, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committère, ut, to cause; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek redress by law.

COMPROMITTERE, Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, made a compromise or agreement, &c.

DIMITTERE exercitum, to disband; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium or repudium ad eam remittere, to divorce.

PROMITTERE id ei, to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow. Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, to allow; divis cætèra, to leave. Horat. se in fidei or fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, to give up, to employ. Liv.

REMITTERE animum, to ease; calces, tela, to throw back; ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. to abate; debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive; justitium, to discontinue; pugnam, to slacken, remittit explorare, neglects. Sall.

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, to lower; se or animum, to submit, to humble; percussores alicui, to suborn assassins.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. to pass over.

VERTERE in fugam, to put to flight; terga, to fly; ab imo, to overthrow; solum, to go into banishment; id ei vitio, or crimini, & in crimen, to blame; in superbiam, to impute; Platōnem, Latinè Græcà, Græcà or ex Græcis in Latinum, to translate; pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb; terram, to plough; cratem, to empty. Virg. Stilum, to correct. Horat. Salus or causa in eo vertitur, depends; fortuna vertèrat. Liv. Annus vertens, a whole year. Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, prosper.

ANIMADVERTERE id, to observe; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. to punish.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, to bring up to. Virg. oras, to arrive at; aures, mentes, animum or animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to; in aliquem, ostener animadvertère, to punish.

ANTEVERTERE ei, to come before; damnationem veneno, to prevent; rem rei, to prefer. Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniam, to embezzle, to cheat; candelabrum, to steal, to pilfer; promissum & receptum, sc. Dolabellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit, treacherously withheld. Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, to outstrip; desiderium plebis, to prevent; metum supplicii morte voluntaria. Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, to put before. Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in

judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved.* Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, super eum.

CONSISTERE in digīto, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchōris, ad anchōram, *to ride at anchor*; frigōre, *to be frozen.* Ovid. Spes in velis consistēbat, *depended on*; virtus in actiōne consistit. Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, or viā; in re aliquā, in rem, or rei; in dolos, negotium. Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge.*

OBSSISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose.*

RESISTERE ei, *to resist.*

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still*; sump-tui, *to bear.*

## VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versurā, *to pay a debt by borrowing from another.* Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise, or, according to others, to perform.* Ter. And. IV. 1. 19. litem æstinatam, *to pay the fine imposed on him.* Nep. Votum, *to discharge*; obsidiōnem urbis, or urbem obsidiōne, *to raise a siege*; navem, e portu, *to set sail*; epistōlam, or resignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum, vinculis, *to free from*; solvitur in somnos. Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devincta, *prose*; solve metus, *dismiss.* Virg.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break.*

RESOLVERE vocem, or ora, *to break silence.* Virg. jura, *to violate*, vectigal, *to take off taxes.* Tacit. In pulvērē, *to reduce to.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex or ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de aliquo, *about one, also from one, as, sæpē hoc audi vi de patre, for ex patre.* Cic. Audire benē or malē apud socios, ab omnibus, *to be well spoken of, to have a good character*; rexque paterque audisti, *have been called.* Hor. Antigōnus credit de suo adventu esse auditum. Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, paciōnem, certāmen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspiciōnem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law.* Liv. in circūlum, *into a company.* Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit, *happened.* Nep. Quod in buccam venērīt, scribito, *occurs.* Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei. Plaut. tempus, consilia, & itinēra, *to anticipate.*

CONVENIRE in colloquium, fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to*; ego et frater conveniēmus, copię convenient, *will meet together*; convē-

nit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, *I and my brother are agreed*; sævis inter se convēnit ursis. Juv. Ipsi secum non convēnit, or ipse, *he is inconsistent*; pax convēnit, or conventa est, *is agreed upon*; rein conventuram putāmus. Cic. conditiones non convēnerunt; mores conveniunt, *agree*; calcei pedibus or ad pedes conveniunt, *fit or suit*; hoc in illum convēnit: Catilinam interfectum esse convēnit, *ought to have been slain.* Cic. Convenire in manum, *the usual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called matresfamilias.*

SENTIRE sonōrem, colōrem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; benē or malē de eo, *to think well or ill of him.*

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de or in aliquā re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree.* So dissentire; & ab aliquo, *to disagree*; ne vita oratiōni dissentiat. Senec.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**PROFITERI** philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has*; indicium, *to promise to make a discovery*.

**LOQUI** cum aliquo, inter se; *sometimes alicui, ad or apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliquâ re*.

**SEQUI** feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assèqui, consèqui, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to*

*attain*. Consèqui hereditatem, *to get*. Cic.

**PROSEQUI** aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

**NITI** hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad or in summam, *to aim at*; in vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive*, gradibus, *to ascend*.

**UTI** eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**ESSE** magni roboris, or -no -re; ejus opiniõnis or eâ opiniõne; in maximâ spe; in timore, luctu, opiniõne, itinere, &c.; cum telo, in or cum imperio; magno periculo, or in periculo; in tuto; apud se, in his sensus; sui juris, or mancipii, sui potens, or in suâ potestate, *to be at his own disposal*: Res est in vado, *is safe*. Ter. Est animus, sc. mihi, *I have a mind*. Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause*; bene malè est mihi, *with me*; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*: Quid est tibi, sc. rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see*; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturum sit, ut admisèrit, &c. *for si velit, &c.* Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta sulcis, *it happens*. Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi, *I am resolved*. Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*. Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui bono fuerit: Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*. Cic.

**ADESSE** pugnæ, in pugnâ, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present*; alicui, *to favour, to assist*; scribendo, or esse ad scribendum, & *subscribe*

*one's name to a decree of the senate*. Cic. consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to*. Nep.

**ABESSE** domo, urbe, a domo ab signis, *to be absent*; alicui, or deesse, *to be wanting, not to assist*; a sole, *to stand out of the sun*; sumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*. Liv. abesse a personâ principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*. Nep. Paulum or parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abest ne eneretur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

**INTERESSE** convivio, or in convivio, *to be at a feast*: anni decem interfuerunt, *intervened*; stulto intelligens quid intèrest. Ter. Hoc dominus & pater intèrest. Id. Inter hominem & bel'uam hoc interest. Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference*; multum intèrest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos intèrest, *is between*. Cic.

**PRÆESSE** exercitui, *to command*, comitiis, judicio, quæstioni, *to preside in or at*.

**OBSSE** ei, *to hurt, to hinder*.

**SUPERESSE**, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to survive*; modò vita super

mit, *sc. mihi, if I live*; *sup̄erest, ut, it remains, that.*

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam or viā; res benē eunt. Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis, *it passes.*

ABIRE magistratū, *to lay down an office*; a conspectu, *to retire from company*; in ora hominū, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptiōne, *to retract his bargain*; decem menses abiērunt, *have past.* Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, *i. e. non feres hoc impāne.* Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation.*

ADIRE periculū capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life.*

EXIRE vitā, *e, or de vitā, to die*; sere aliēno. Cic. Verbum exit ex ore. Id. tela, *to avoid.* Virg. Tempus induciārū cum Veienti populo exierat, *had expired.* Liv.

INIRE magistratū; suffragium, ratiōnem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum or ab eo, *to gain his favour*: Ineunte ætate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of*; but we seldom say, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, *from our early years.*

OBIRE diem edicti, or auctiōnis, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through.* Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas. Virg. mortem, or morte; diem suprēmum, or diem, *to die*;

PRÆIRE alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, or sacramentum alicui, *to repeat or read over before*; alicui voce. quid judicet, *to prescribe, or direct by crying.* Cic.

PRODIRE in publicum, *to go abroad*; non prætērit te, *you are not ignorant.* Cic. Dies induciārū prætērit, *is past.* Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses.*

SUBIRE murum or -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; labōrem or -i, onus.

ponam, periculū, crimen, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into.*

VELLE aliquem, *sc. allōqui or conventum, to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causā, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny.* Liv. Quid sibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid rectē curātum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again.* Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, *sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here.* Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose or make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one.* Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*, repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum, hoc fructi, *to reap.* Ter. lætitiā de re, *to rejoice*; prae se, *to pretend or declare openly*; aliēnam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of.* Ter. manus, in praelia, *to engage.* Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr. and Cr.* Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires.*

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in or erga aliquem, *to show*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; opēram, tempus, studium ad or in rem, & impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; onine bellum circa Corinthum. Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in or ad urbem, *to go to*; tri-

**bita**, to pay; **se alicui** or **cum aliquo**, to compare; **neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto**. Cic. **Hæc conferunt ad aliquid**; oratori futuro, **serve, are useful to**. Quint.

**DEFERRE** situlam or sitellam, to bring the ballot-box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word, to tell; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, to confer; in beneficiis ad ærarium, to recommend for a public service. Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, to accuse of bribery; primas, sc. partes ei, to give him the preference. Cic.

**DIFFERRE** or **transferre** rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, to put off; rumores, to spread; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, to differ in character; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, to be distracted or torn asunder. Cic. & Ter.

**EFFERRE** fruges, to produce; verba, to utter; verbum de verbo expressum, to translate. Ter. pedem domo, to go out; corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, to bury; ad honorem, ad cælum laudibus, to praise, to extol; foras peccatum, to divulge.

**INFERRE** bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, to bring upon; signa, se, pedem, to advance; litem, or periculum capiti alicui or in aliquem, to bring one to a trial for his life.

**OFFERRE** se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, to expose, to present.

**PERFERRE** legem, to carry through, to pass.

**PRÆFERRE** facem ei, to carry before; salutem reipublicæ suis com modis & anteferre, antepone, to prefer. Prælatus equo, riding before.

**PROFERRE** imperium, pomerium, terminos, to enlarge; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, to publish; nuptias, diem, to delay; diem Illo, to defer the destruction of. Hor.

**REFERRE** alicui, to answer; se, gradum, or pedem, to retreat; gratiam alicui, to make a requital; par pari. Ter. victoriam ab or ex aliquo, & reportare, to gain; institutum, to renew; judicia ad Equestrem ordinem, to restore to the Equites the right of judging; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, to lay before; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. to mark down; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, to acknowledge one's self indebted; pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomina or summas in codicem accepti et expensi, to mark down accounts; alienos mores ad suos, to judge of by; in or inter ærarios, to reduce to the lowest class; in numerum deorum, in or inter deos, & reponere, to rank among; pugnas, res gestas, to relate; patrem ore, to resemble; amissos colores, to regain. Hor.

**TRANSFERRE** rationes in tabulas, to post one's books, to state accounts; in Latinam linguam, to translate, verba, to use metaphorically, culpam in eum, & rejicere, to lay the blame on him.

## II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent part of a sentence, the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

### 1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is the want of one or more words to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. *homīnes. Abērant bidui*, sc. *iter* or *itinēre. Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, the figure is called *ASYNDĒTON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *ENALLAGE*, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; *ANTIPTŌSIS*, i. e. the putting of one case for another; *HELLĒNISM* or *GRÆCISM*, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; *SYNĒSIS*, i. e. referring the construction, not to the grammatical gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.; thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia* (homīnum) *Samnitium* (fuērunt homīnes) *cæsi*. Liv. So *Servitia immemōres*.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

### 2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is the addition of a word more than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes. *Sic ore locūta est*, Thus she spoke with her mouth. Virg.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, the figure is called *POLYSYNDĒTON*; as, *Unā Eurusque Notusque ruunt*. Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, the figure is called *HENDIADYS*; as, *Patēris libānus et auro*, for *aureis patēris*. Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, the figure is called *PERIPHRĀSIS*; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*. Virg. *Res voluptātum*, for *voluptātes*. Plaut.

## 3. HYPERBATON.

**HYPERBĀTON** is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words, which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are *Anastrōphe*, *Hystēron protēron*, *Hypallāge*, *Synchēsis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthēsis*.

1. **ANASTRŌPHE** is an inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem, &c.* Virg. *Terram sol facit are, for are-facit.* Lucret.

2. **HYSTĒRON PROTĒRON** is the placing in the former part of the sentence that which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet.* Ter.

3. **HYPALLĀGE** is an exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris.* Virg.

4. **SYNCHĒSIS** is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itāli mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itāli vocant aras.* Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruōrem.* Ovid. Fast. ii. 841.

5. **TMESIS** is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens*, for *Septentriōni.* Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque.* Ter.

6. **PARENTHĒSIS** is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Titÿre, dum redeo*, (*brevis est via,*) *pasce capellas.* Virg.

## III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words, which takes place in the two languages

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit De*

*rium*, or *Dartum vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each instance the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*. Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given is to *imitate the CLASSICS*.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

*Artificial* or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis*, or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætaberis.* Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*: 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi*: 3. *sed (tu) persuade tibi ipsi te fore (filium) cariorum (mihi in) multo (negotio)*: 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*: 5. *et (si tu) lætabere talibus præceptis*.

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero: 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me: 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me): 4. if you shall take delight in such writings: 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

*Vale*, scil. *tu*; Fare (thou) well: second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *valeo, valere, valui, valitum*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

*Igitur*, then, therefore; a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

*Mi*, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

*Et*, and; a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 59. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

*Persuade*, scil. *tu*, persuade thou; second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, -dere, -si, -sum*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, -sum*, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

*Tibi*, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

*Esse*, present of infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum, esse, fui*, to be.

*Quidem*, indeed; an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

*Carissimum*, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus, -a, -um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus, -a, -um*, dear: Comparative degree, *carior, carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

*Mihi*, to me; dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

*Sed*, but; an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

*Fore*, the same with *esse futurum*, to be or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem, -res, -ret*, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse and fore*. See Rule 59.

*Multo*, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to Observation 5. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

*Cariorem*, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

*Si*, if; a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. Obs. 2.

*Lætabere*, thou shalt rejoice; second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor*, *lætatus*, *lætari*, to rejoice: Future, *læt-abor*, -abēris or -abēre, -ābitur, &c.

*Tuibus*, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -i, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo*, -ēre, -ui, -itum, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

*Præceptis*, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -i, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *cipio*, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captum*, to take. The *d* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and, in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiorum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you? *Te*. Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadēbunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*. or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadētur* or *persuāsum est illis*; according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadēbitur*, or *persuāsum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded? *Ei persuāsum iri*.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different

subjects ; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought ; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

#### IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three ; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue* ; ) the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum* ; ) and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*.)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style ; as, the *diffuse* and *concise* ; the *feeble* and *nervous* ; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects, and to different kinds of composition ; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies ; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives ; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner* ; as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax : 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions : 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity* : 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate* and *feeble* sentence : 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names :

1. A **BARBARISM** is the using of a foreign or strange word ; as, *croftus*, for *agellus* ; *rigorōsus*, for *rigidus* or *sevērus* ; *alterāre*, for *mutāre*, &c. Or, a transgression of the rules of

Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *stavi*, for *steti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLĒCISM** is a transgression of the rules of Syntax; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIŌTISM** is the using of a manner of expression peculiar to one language in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribĕre*, for *ego sum scriptūrus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me; for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse*? Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. **TAUTOLŌGY** is a useless repetition of the same words, or of the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is the using of high sounding words without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLŌGY** is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romānos vincĕre posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

## V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figūræ* or *schemāta*) are of two kinds; figures of words (*figūræ verbōrum*), and figures of thought (*figūræ sentiārū*.) The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

### 1. TROPEs, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metāphor*, *Metonĭmy*, *Synecdōche*, and *Irōny*.

1. **METĀPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something

to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* or *Adagia*;) thus, *In silvâ ligna ferre*. Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, the figure is called *Catuchrêsis* (*abusio*;) as, *a leaf of paper, of gold, &c.*; *the empire flourished*; *parricida*, for any murderer. Virg. *gregis ipse caper*. Virg. *Altum œdificant caput*. Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*. Ter. *Eurus per Sicûlas equitavit undas*. Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is said to be done by *Syllepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galatœa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*. Virg. *Ego Sardôis videar tibi anarior herbis*. Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:

1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the author for his works; as *Bonum labôres*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; *Ceres*, for *grain* or *bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*. Virg. *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their *works*.

2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra cura*, &c.

3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit patëram*, for *vinum*. Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *his drink*.

4. The sign for the thing signified; as, *The crown*, for *royal authority*; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory*; *Cedant arma*

*toga*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concēdat paci*.

5. An abstract for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*. Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*. Cic. *Vires*, for *strong men*. Hor.

6. The parts of the body for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*; *vir cordatus*, a man of sense. Plaut. But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart*, *a warm heart*.

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, this form of expression is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderāri*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost, or absent*: So, *Fuimus Troes, & ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more. Virg. *Æn.* ii. 325.

3. SYNECDÔCHE (*comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as,

1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortāles*, for *homīnes*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arbōris*; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house. Virg.

2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes, &c.*

3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, the figure is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominatio*;) as the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon*.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelōpis parens*, for *Tantālus*; *Anŷti reus*, for *Socrātes*; *Trojāni bellī scriptor*, for *Homērus*; *Chirōnis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodāni*, for *Gallus*. Hor. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatālis et incestus judex, famōsus hospes*, for *Paris*. Hor.

4. IRŌNY is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *He is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a *SARCASM*; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*. Justin. *Hesperiam metire jacens*. Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is

called **LITÖTES**; as, *He is no fool, for he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier, for nobilis or superba*.

When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, this contrariety is called **ANTIPHRÃSIS**; as, *auri sacra fames, for execrabilis*. Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomĩne dictus, i. e. hospitālis*. Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, the figure is called **EUPHEMISMUS**; as, *Vitā functus, for mortuus*; *conclamāre suos, to give up for lost*. Liv. *Valeant, for abeant*; *mactāre or ferire, for occidēre*; *Fecērunt id servi Milōnis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facēre voluisset, i. e. Clodium interfecērunt*. Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrāsis*.

The **PERIPHRÃSIS**, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, the figure is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, this imitation is called **ONOMATOPŒIA**, (*nomĩnis fctio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know, in general, that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiōre notā Falerni*, with a glass of *old Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicū ducēre*, to bring to a conclusion. Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

## 2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHŌRA*; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilia, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te veniente die, te decedente canēbat.* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTRŌPHE*, or *Conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Rōmānus justitiā viciit, armis viciit, liberalitāte viciit.* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOŌCE*, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Nullus. Quis, &c. Nullus.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANALEPSIS*; as, *Vidimus victoriā tuā præliorum exitu terminatū; gladium vaginā vacuum in urbe non vidimus.* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called *ANADIPLŌSIS*, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senātum venit.* Cic.

When that, which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANŌDOS*, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer improbus ille? Improbis ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater.* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitāte eum ab inferis.* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c.* Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum.* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella.* Id. *Ibimus, ibimus.* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX*, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africāno virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmūlos comparavit.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called *POLYPTŌTON*; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plena sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas.* Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas impræcor, arma armis.* Virg.

To this is usually referred what is called *SYNONYMIA*, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam.* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo.* Id. And also *EXPOSITIO*, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called *ANTANACLASIS*; as, *Amāri jucundum est, si curētur ne quid insit amāri.* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the *PARONOMASIA*, or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo: de oratore arator factus.* Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes.* Ter. This is also called a *PUN*.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called *HOMIOPTŌTON*, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis.* Cic. If the

words have only a similar termination, it is called *HOMOIOTELEUTON*, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter*. Cic.

### 3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbôle*, *Prosopopœia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. *HYPERBÔLE* is the magnifying of a thing above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphêmus*, says, *Ipsæ arduus, altaque pulsât sidëra*. So, *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt*. Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinôsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.\*

2. *PROSOPOPŒIA*, or *Personification*, is a figure by which we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*. Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*. Id.

3. *APOSTROPHE*, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it, as, *Trojæque nunc staret, Priamique arx alta manêres*. Virg.

4. *SIMILE*, or *Comparison*, is a figure by which one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another: as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. *ANTITHESIS*, or *Opposition*; is a figure by which things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54.

6. *INTERROGATION*, (Græc. *Erotêsis*;) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*. Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectiv*; as, *Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus?* minime. Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. **EXCLAMATION** (*Ecphonēsis*) is a sudden expression of some passion or emotion; as, *O nomen dulce libertātis*, &c. Cic. *O tempōra, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divūm uomus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. **DESCRIPTION**, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*), is the painting of any thing in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem vidēre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Vidēre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecōro pulvĕre sordidos.* Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637, &c.

9. **EMPHĀSIS** is a particular stress of voice laid on some word in a sentence; as Hannibal *peto pacem*. Liv. *Proh! Jupiter ibit hic!* i. e. *Æneas*. Virg.

10. **EPANORTHŌSIS**, or *Correction*, is the recalling or correcting by the speaker of what he last said; as, *Filiū habui, ah! quid dixi habēre me? imō habui.* Ter.

11. **PARALEPSIS**, or *Omission*, is the pretending to omit, or pass by, what one at the same time declares.

12. **APARITHMĒSIS**, or *Enumeration*, is the branching out into several parts of what might be expressed in fewer words.

13. **SYNATHROISMUS**, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

—Facies in castra tulissem,  
Implēssemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque  
Cum genere extinxim, memet super ipsa dedissem. Virg.

14. **INCREMENTUM**, or **CLIMAX** in sense, is the rising of one member above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincĕre civem Romānum, scelus verberāre, parricidium necāre.* Cic.

When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called **AUXĒSIS**, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. **TRANSITION** (*Metabāsis*) is an abrupt introduction of a speech; or the passing of a writer suddenly from one subject to another; as, Hor. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a change of person is sometimes used; as, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **SUSPENSIO**, or *Sustentatio*, is the keeping of the mind of the hearer long in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **CONCESSIO** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilĕgus*, &c. *at est bonus imperātor.* Cic. in Verrem, v. 1.

**PROLEPSIS**, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is the starting and answering of an objection.

**ANACONŌSIS**, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*.

**LICENTIA**, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformīdem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario.

**APOSIOPĒSIS**, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*. Virg.

18. **SENTENTIA** (*Gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine litēris mors est*. Seneca. *Aded in tenēris assuescere multum est*. Virg. *Probitas laudatur et alget; Misera est magni custodia census; Nobilitas sola est utque unica virtus*. Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper for the learner to know the parts into which a regular, formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium*, or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation*, or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*

## PROSODY.



1 **PROSODY** is that part of grammar which teaches the proper *accent* and *quantity* of syllables, the right *pronunciation* of words, and the structure of verses.

2. *Accent* is a peculiar stress of the voice on some syllable in a word, to distinguish it from the others.

3. The *quantity* of a syllable is the space of time used in pronouncing it.

4. Syllables, with respect to their *quantity*, are either *long short*, or *common*.

5. A *long* syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a *short* one; as, *tēndērĕ*.

6. A syllable that is sometimes long, and sometimes short, is *common*; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

7. A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

8. In polysyllables, or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*; and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*, or *Antepenult*.

9. When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long, but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *relēgo*, *-tēre*; *relēgo*, *-āre*, &c.

## RULES FOR THE QUANTITY.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short ; as, *Mēus, aliūs* : so *nihil* ; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *create, behave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fio, fiēbam, &c.* unless when followed by *r* : as, *fiēri, fiērem*, thus

Omnia jam fient, fiēri quæ posse negābam *Ovid.*

Exc. 2. *E*, having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long ; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *ācr, diūs, ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi, terrāi, &c.* in *Pompēi Cūi*, and such like words ; but we sometimes find *Pompēi* in two syllables, *Hor. Od. ii. 7. 5.*

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diāna* is common ; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius* ; as, *illiūs, uniūs, ulliūs, nulliūs, &c.* to be read long in prose. *Aliūs*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *aliūs* ; *alteriūs*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

*Sometimes it is short ; as, Danāe, Idēa, Sophiā, Symphonīa, Simōis, Hyādes, Phāon, Deucalion, Pygmalion, Thebāis, &c.*

*Often it is long ; as, Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon ; Amphion, Arion, Ixion, Pandion ; Nais, Lāis, Achāia ; Briseis, Cadmeis ; Latōus & Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerētus, Priamēus ; Achelōtus, Minōtus ; Archelaus, Menelaus, Amphiarāus ; Ænéas. Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Giganteus ; Darius, Basilius, Eugenius, Bacchius ; Cassiopēa, Cæsarēa, Chironēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa ; Clio, Enyō, Elegiā, Iphigeniā, Alexandriā, Thaliā, Antiochiā, idololatriā, litanīa, politia, &c. Lāertes, Dēiphōbus, Dēianira, Trōes, herōes, &c.*

*Sometimes it is common ; as, Choreā, platea, Malea, Nereides, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, edus, &c.* So in foreign words, *Michael Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.*

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short ; as, *Orphēa, Salmonēa, Capharēa, &c.* but sometimes long ; as, *Idomenēa, Ilionēa. Virg.* Instead of *Elegia, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegiā, Cythēria. Ovid.* But the quantity of Greek words cannot properly be understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened ; as, *science, idea.*

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by position, as it is called*;) as, *arma, fālo, āxis, gāza, mājor*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bījūgus, quadrījūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

*Ferte citi flammās, date telā, scandite muros.* Virg.

A short vowel at the end of a word, when followed by a word beginning with *sc, sp, sq, st*, is usually lengthened.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ*; thus,

*Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris.* Ovid.

*Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras.* Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. 1. The vowel must be naturally short; 2. the mute must go before the liquid; and, 3. be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *putris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salubris, ambulācrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salutis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abūo, &c.* is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

*L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as, *Nil*, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibiicen*; *īt*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bījūgæ*; *scīlicet*, for *scire licet, &c.*

IV. A diphthong is always long; as, *Aurum, Cæsar, Eubæa, &c.* Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus*; thus,

*Nec totā tamen ille prior præeunte carinā.* Virg. *Æ.* 5, 186.

*Stipitibus duris agitur sudibusque præustis.* Ib. 7, 524.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

—— *cū vacuus domīno præiret Arion.* Theb. 6, 519.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## I FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.*

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vici*.

Except *bībi, scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli, dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vīsum, cūsum, mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro* ; *cītum*, from *cieo* ; *lītum*, from *lino* ; *sītum*, from *sīno* ; *stātum*, from *sisto* ; *ītum*, from *eo* ; *dātum*, from *do* ; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo* ; *quītum*, from *queo* ; *rātus*, from *reor*.

*Preterites which double the first Syllable.*

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short ; as,

*Cēcidi, tētigi, pēpūli, pēpēri, dīdici, tūtūdi* : except *cēcidi*, from *cædo* ; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo* ; and when two consonants intervene ; as, *fēfelli, tētēdi, pēpendi, mōmordi*, &c.

Other verbs of two syllables in the preterite and supine retain the quantity of the present ; except *pōsui, pōsitum*, from *pōno* ; *pōtui*, from *possum* ; *sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum*, from *solvo* and *volvo*.

## INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative ; as, *rex, rēgis* ; *sermo, sermōnis* ; *interpres, interprētis*. Here *re, mo, pre*, is each called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a *crement*.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one ; as, *iter, itinēris* ; *anceps, ancipītis*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener, genēri* ; *genērōrum* ; *regibus, sermonibus*, &c.

Except nouns of the *first, fourth, and fifth* declensions, which do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another ; as, *fructus, fructūi* ; *res, rēi* ; and falls under Rule I. These nouns are considered as increasing in the plural, and come under Rule IX.

Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the crement; as, *tener, tenēri*; *vir, vīri*; *duumvir, -vīri*; *satur, satūri*; except *Iber*, a Spaniard, *Ibēri*; and its compound *Celtibēri*.

## CREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i, and u* short; as,

*Pietātis, honōris; muliēris, lapīdis, murmuris*

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive of the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

## A.

Nouns in A shorten *ātis*, in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ātis; poema, -ātis*.

## O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Curdo, -inis; Virgo, -inis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis*. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macēdo, -ōnis; Saxo, -ōnis*. So, *Lingōnes, Senōnes, Teutōnes*, or *-ōni, Vangtiōnes, Vascōnes*. Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettiōnes*. *Brittones* is common; it is shortened by Juvenal, 15, 124, and lengthened by Martial, 11, 21, 9.

## I. C. D. L.

I shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromēli, -itis*. *Ec* lengthens *ecis*; as, *Halec, -ecis*.

Nouns in D shorten the crement; as, *David, -idis; Begud, -ūdis*.—Ecclesiastical poets often lengthen *Davidis*.

Masculines in AL shorten *alis*; as, *Sul, sālīs; Hannibal, -ālīs; Hasdrūbal, -ālīs*; but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal, -ālīs*.

*Sōlis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -elis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as *Vigil, -ilis; consul, -ūlis*.

## N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ōnis; Actæon, -ōnis*.

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen, -inis; tibicen, -inis*. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titan, -ānis*: EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren, -ēnis*: IN *inis*; as, *delphin, -inis*: YN *ynis*; as, *Phorcyn, -ynis*.

## R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar, -aris*. Except the following: *bacchar, -aris; jubar, -aris; nectar, -aris*: Also the adjective *par, -aris*, and its compounds, *impar, -aris, dispar, -aris, &c.*

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive; *Nar, Nāris*, the name of a river; *fur, fūris; ver, vēris*: Also *Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris*, proper names; and *Ser, Sēris; Iber, -ēris*, names of people or states.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -ēris; character, -ēris*. Except *æther, -ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor*, -*ōris*. Except neuter nouns as, *marmor*, -*ōris*; *aquor*, -*ōris*: Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector*, -*ōis*; *Actor*, -*ōris*; *rhetor*, -*ōris*. Also, *arbor*, -*ōris*, and *memor* -*ōris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *ōris*, masc.; as, *Cæsar*, -*āris*; *Hamīlcar*, -*āris*; *lar*, *lāris*. ER *ēris* of any gender; as, *aēr*, *aēris*; *mulier*, -*ēris*; *cadāver*, -*ēris*; *iter*, anciently *itīner*, *itīnēris*; *verberis*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *ūris*; as, *vultur*, -*ūris*; *murmur*, -*ūris*. YR *ŷris*; as *Martyr*, -*ŷris*.

## AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas*, -*ātis*; *Mæcenas*, -*ātis*. Except *anus*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *adis*, *ātis*, and *ānis*; thus *Pallas*, -*ādis*; *artocreas*, -*eātis*; *Melus*, -*ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vādis*; *mas*, *māris*. But *vas*, *vāsis* is long.

## ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, -*itis*; *Ceres*, -*ēris*; *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locuples*, -*ētis*; *quies*, -*ētis*; *mansues*, -*ētis*; *hæres*, -*ēdis*; *merces*, -*ēdis*; also Greek nouns; as, *lebes*, -*ētis*; *Thales*, -*ētis*.

## IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, -*idis*; *sanguis*, -*inis*; *Phyllis*, -*idis*; *cinis*, *cinēris*.

Except *Glis*, *gliris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *litis*; *dis*, *ditis*; *Quiris*, -*itis*; *Samnis*, -*itis*. But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charitis*.

The following also lengthen the crement: *Crenis*, -*idis*, *Psophis*, -*idis*, *Nesis*, -*idis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*, as, *Salāmis* or *-in*, *Salaminis*.

## OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos*, -*ōtis*; *flos*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis*; *compos*, -*ōtis*; and *impos*, -*ōtis*.

## US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, -*ōris*; *vellus*, -*ēris*; *tripus*, -*ōdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis*; as, *incus*, -*ūdis*; *jus*, *jūris*; *salus*, -*ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, -*ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius*, -*ōris*.

## YS.

YS shortens *ŷdis* or *ŷdos*; as, *chlamys*, -*ŷdis* or -*ŷdos*; and lengthens *ŷnis*; as, *Trachys*, -*ŷnis*.

## BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as *cælebs*, -*ibis*; *inops*, -*ōpis*; *hiems*, *hiēm̃is*; *auceps*, *aucūpis*; *Dolops*, -*ōpis*; also *anceps*, *ancīpitis*; *biceps*, *bicīptitis*; and similar compounds of *caput*.

Except *Cyclops*, -*ōpis*; *seps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grŷphis*; *Cercops*, -*ōpis*; *plebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrops*, -*ōpis*.

## T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -*itis*: so *sinīput*, -*itis*.

X.

1 Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, -*ūgis*; *remex*, -*īgis*; *Allobrox*, -*ōgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; *vertex*, -*icis*: except *vibex* or *vibix*, -*icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pux*, *pācis*; *radix*, -*icis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, -*ācis*, &c.

Except *fūcis*, *nēcis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calīcis*, *cūlcis*, *pīcis*, *fornīcis*, *nīvīs*, *Cappadōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onychis*, *Erȳcis*, *mastīx*, -*ychis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or mastich tree; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, -*ācis*, or -*icis*; *Sandyx*, -*icis*, or -*icis*; *Bebryx*, -*ȳcis*, or -*ychis*.

*Increase of the Plural Number.*

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

*musārum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgibus*, *portūbus*; except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement*: for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third increase*.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* short; as,

*Amāre*, *docēre*, *amūtōte*; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēderunt* and *stētērun*t; and lengthen *rimus* and *rtis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as — *transieritis aquas*. Ovid. DO, with its compounds, is the only verb of the first conjugation that shortens the first crement, but not the second; as, *dāre*; *dāmus*, *dābam*, &c. *circumdāre*, -*āmus*, -*ātis*, -*ābam*, -*ābāmus*, -*ābo*, -*ārem*; -*āris*, -*ātur*, &c. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

*Remarks on the Quantity of the Penult of Words.*

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelides*, *Tydidēs*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achais*, *Ptolemais*, *Chryseis*, *Æneis*, *Memphitis*, *Latōis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerine*, *Acrisiōne*. Except *Thebais*, and *Phocais*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academīcus*, *lepīdus*, *legitīmus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissīmus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *apricus*, *pudīcus*, *mendīcus*, *antīcus*, *positīcus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fīdes*, is short,) *bīnus*, *quadrīnus*, *patrīnus*, *matrīnus*, *opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īnus*, *prīmus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *astīvus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agīlis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *herīlis*, &c. To these add, *exīlis*, *subtīlis*; and names of months, *Aprīlis*, *Quīntīlis*, *Sextīlis*: Except *humīlis*, *parīlis*; and also *simīlis*. But all adjectives in *atīlis* are short; as, *versatīlis*, *volatīlis*, *umbratīlis*, *plicatīlis*, *fluviatīlis*, *saxatīlis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracīnus*, *crocīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *oleagīnus*; *adamantīnus*, *crystallīnus*, *crastīnus*, *pristīnus*, *perendīnus*, *carīnus*, *annotīnus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus*, *canīnus*, *leporīnus*, *bīnus*, *trīnus*, *quīnus*, *austrīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *Latinus*, *marīnus*, *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM*; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus*, *filīola*, *musæolum*; *lectūlus*, *ratiuncūla*, *corcūlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*. Except *affatīm*, *perpētīm*, and *stātīm*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*, *esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*, &c.

## PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

*The following proper names lengthen the penult:* Abdëra, Abydus, Adönis, Æsöpus, Ætölus, Ahäla, Alaricus, Alcides, Amyclæ, Andronicus, Anübis, Archimëdes, Ariaräthes, Ariobarzanes, Aristüdes, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabänus; Brachmanes, Busiris, Buthrötus; Cethägus, Chalcëdon, Cleobulus, Cyrëne, Cythëra, Curëtes; Darici, Demonicus, Diomëdes, Diöres, Dioscuri; Ebüdes, Eriphyle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrates, Eumëdes, Euripus, Euxinus; Gargänus, Gætölus, Granicus; Heliogabalus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippönax, Hispanus; Irëne; Lacýdas, Latöna, Leucata, Lugdünum, Lycöras; Mandäne, Mausölus, Maximinus, Meleager, Messäla, Messäna, Miletus; Nasica, Nicänor, Nicëtas; Pachýnus, Pandöra, Peloris & -us, Pharsälus, Phönice, Polites, Polyclëtus, Polynices, Priäpus; Sardanapalus, Sarpëdon, Seräpis, Sinöpe, Stratonice, Suffetes; Tigränes, Thessalonica; Veröna, Verönica

*The following are short:* Amäthus, Amphipölis, Anabäsís, Anticyra, Antigönus & -ne, Antiöchus, Antiöchus, Antiöpa, Antipas, Antipäter, Antiphänes, Antiphätes, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anytus, Apulus, Areopägus, Arimínus, Arnënus, Athësis, Attälus, Attica; Bitürix, Bructeri; Caläber, Callicrates, Callisträtus, Candäce, Cantäber, Carneades, Chërilus, Chrysostömus, Cleombrötus, Cleomënes, Corýcos, Constantinopölis, Cratërus, Cratylus, Cremëra, Crustumëri, Cybële, Cyclädes, Cyzicus, Dalmätæ, Damöcles, Dardänus, Dejoces, Dejotärus, Democritus, Demipho, Didymus, Diogënes, Drepanum, Dumnörix; Empedöcles, Ephësus, Evërgëtes, Eumënes, Eurymëdon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryönes, Gyärus; Hecyra, Heliopölis, Hermiöne, Herodötus, Hesiodus, Hesiöne, Hippocrätes, Hippotämos, Hypäta, Hypänis; Icärus, Icëtas, Illyris, Iphitus, Ismärus, Ithäca; Laodice, Laomëdon, Lampäcus, Lamýrus, Lapithæ, Lucetilis, Libänus, Lipäre or -a, Lysimachus, Longinänus; Maräthon, Mänälus, Marmärica, Massagëtæ, Matröna, Megära, Melitus & -ta, Metropölis, Mutina, Mycönus; Neöcles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphäle; Patära, Pegäsus, Pharnäceæ, Pisisträtus, Polydämus, Polyxëna, Porsëna or Poisenna, Praxitëles, Puteöli, Pylädes, Pythagöras; Sarmätæ, Sarsina, Semële, Semirämis, Sequäni & -a, Sisýphus, Sicöris, Socrätes, Sodöma, Sotädes, Spartäcus, Sporädes, Strongyle, Stymphälus, Sybäris; Taygëtus, Telegönus, Telemachus, Tenëdos, Tarräco. Theophänes, Theophilus, Tomýris; Urbicus; Venëti, Vologësus, Volüsus; Xenocrätes; Zoilus, Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batävi*. Lucan. *Batävi*. Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*. Hor. *Fortuitas*. Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*. Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

## A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musä*, *templä*, *Tydeä*, *lampädä*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musä*, *Ænëä*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Ænëä*, *O Pallä*

*A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long ; as, *Amā, frustrā, prætereā, ergā, intrā*.

Exc. *Itā, quā, ejā, postea, putā*, (adv.), are short ; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā, ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta* ; as, *trigintā, &c.* *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

## E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short ; as, *Natē, sedilē, ipsē, carrē, possē, nempē, antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long ; as, *mē, tē, sē* ; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quē, vē, nē* ; and these syllabical adjections, *ptē, cē, tē* ; as, *suaptē, hujuscē, tutē* ; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declensions are long ; as, *Calliōpē, Anchisē, fidē*. So, *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridē, postridiē, quotidie* : Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē* ; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *Docē, manē* ; but *cave, vale, and vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long ; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē* : To these add *fermē, ferē, and ohē* ; also all adverbs of the superlative degree ; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē* : But *benē* and *malē, infernē, supernē*, are short.

## I.

XIII. *I* final is long ; as, *Domīnī, patrī, doceri*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase, is common ; as, *Pallādī, Minōidī*.

*Mihī, tibi, sibi*, are also common : So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which is seldom the case. *Sicūtī, sicūbī, and necūbī*, are always short.

## O.

XIV. *O* final is common ; as, *Virgo, cmo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative singular of the second declension are

long; as, *lǫbrō*, *dominō*: Also Greek nouns, as *Didō*, *Sapphō*, and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos*; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō*, *falsō*, *paulō*. To these add *quō*, *cō*, and their compounds, *quōvis*, *quōcunque*, *adeō*, *ideō*; likewise *illō*, *idcirco*, *citrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egō*, *sciō*, *cedō*, a defective verb, *homō*, *citō*, *illīcō*, *immō*, *duō*, *ambō*, *mōd̄*, with its compounds, *quomōdō*, *dummōdō*, *postmōdō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

### U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū*; *Mol̄y*.

### B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *āb*, *apūd*, *sem̄l*, *precōr*, *capūt*.

The following words are long; *sāl*, *sōl*, *nīl*, *pār* and its compounds, *impār*, *dispār*, &c.; *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, *cūr*, *fūr*; also nouns in *ēr* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr*, *vēr*, *Ibēr*; likewise *aēr*, *āthēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb*, *Daniēl*; but *David*, *Bogud*, &c. are common.

*M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Miltūm octo* Ennius. But, by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' octo*; except in compound words; as, *circūmāgo*, *circūmeo*.

### C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *āc*, *sīc*, *illīc*; *splēn*, *ēn*, *nōn*, &c.

So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān*, *Sirēn*, *Salāmīn*; *Enēān*, *Anchīsēn*, *Circēn*; *Lacedēmōn*, &c.

The following words are short; *nēc* and *donēc*: *Forsītān*, *īn*, *forsān*, *tamēn*, *ān*, *vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *īnis* in the genitive; as *carmēn*, *crimēn*; also the nom. and accus. sing. of Greek nouns in *on*, when written with a small *o* (*ο μικρόν*), as, *Ilhōn*, *Pylōn*, *Erotiōn*; and the accusative, if the termination of the nominative be short; as, *Maiān*, *Ægīnān*, *Orpheōn*, *Alexīn*, *Ibīn*, *chelīn*: so the dative plural in *īn*; as, *Arcāsīn*, *Troāsīn*.

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

## AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word, are long, as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs*.

The following words are short; *anās, ěs*, from *sum*, and *penēs*; *ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās*, *herōās*, *Phrygēs*, *Arcādōs*, *Tenēdōs*, *Mēlōs*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cērēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

## IS, US, YS.

XIX. IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word, are short; as,

*Turrīs, legīs, legīmūs, annūs, Capjys*.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, libris, nobīs, omnīs*, for *omnes*, *fructūs, manūs*; also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short; as, *florībūs, fructībūs, rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inīs, or entis*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Salāmīs, Simōīs*: To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vis*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audīs, abīs, possīs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is lengthened by Ovid, Fast. 1, 17. but it is always shortened by Horace, Od. 4, 7, 20. Sat. 1, 4, 41. 2, 3, 220. 2, 6, 39. Art. 47.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis, or ōdis*; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, Amāthūs, tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o*; as, *Cliūs, Sapphūs, Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs*:—so *Iēsūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys* or *Phorcyn*, and *Trachys* or *Trachyn*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

## THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

## I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus,	from	āmo.	Decōro,	from	decus, -ōris.
Auctionor,		auctio, -ōnis.	Exūlo,		exul, -ūlis.
Auctōro,		auctor, -ōris.	Pāvidus,		pāveo.
Auditor,		auditum.	Quirito,		Quiris, -itis.
Auspicoz,		auspex, -icis.	Radicitus,		radix, -icis.
Caupōnor,		caupo, -ōnis.	Sospito,		sospes, -itis.
Compētitor,		compētītum.	Natura,		nātus.
Cornīcor,		cornix, -icis.	Maternus,		māter.
Custōdio,		custos, -ōdis.	Lēgēbam, &c.		lēgo.
Decōrus,		decor, ōris.	Lēgēram, &c.		lēgi.

## EXCEPTIONS.

## 1. Long from Short.

Dēni, from	dēcem.	Suspīcio, from	suspīcor.	Mōbīlis, from	mōveo.
Fōmes,	fōveo.	Sēdes,	sēdeo.	Humor,	hūmus.
Hūmānus,	hōmo.	Sēcūs,	sēcus.	Jumentum,	jūvo.
Rēgūla,	rēgo.	Pēnūria,	pēnus.	Vox, vōcis,	vōco, &c.

## 2. Short from Long.

Arēna and ārista, from	arēo.	Lūcerna, from	lūceo.
Nōta and nōto,	nōtus.	Dux, -ūcis,	dūco.
Vādum,	vādo.	Stābilis,	stābam.
Fīdes,	fīdo.	Ditio,	dis, dītis.
Sōpor,	sōpio.	Quāsillus,	quālus, &c.

## II. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*Dēdūco*, of *dē* and *dūco*. So *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāro*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *ēnōdo*, *ērūdīo*, *exsūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *prægrāvo*, *prænāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prægrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*; *diffīdit* from *diffīndo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*; *indīco*, -āre, and *indīco*, -ēre; *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*; *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so, *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cædo*; *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Un-

less the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *admitto*, *percello*, *dēoscūlor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, *nihilum*, *semisōpītus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dico*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*; *ambitus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Obs. 1. The preposition *PRO* in Greek words, for *ante*, before, is short; as, *prōphēta*, *prōlōgus*: *PRO* in Latin words is long; as, *prōdo*, *prōmitto*, &c. but it is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōncptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfectus*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock, or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propāgo*, to propagate; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpina*.

Obs. 2. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello*; except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmīto*, *rēfēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Obs. 3. *I* and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word, are usually shortened; as, *Capricornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricola*, *significo*, *biformis*, *aliger*, *Trīvia*, *tubicen*, *naticinor*, *architectus*, *bimēter*, *trimēter*, &c. *duōdēcim*. *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, *Arctōphylax*, *Argōnauta*, *bibliōthēca*, *philōsōphus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrīfacio*, *siquis*, &c.—or when a contraction is made by *Crasis* or *Syncōpe*; as, *trīgæ*, for *trījūgæ*; *īlicet*, for *ire licet*, &c.—So in the compounds of *dies*, as, *bīduum*, *trīduum*, *merīdies*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*; but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotīdie* & *quotīdiānus*. *Idem* in the masc. is long, (in the neuter short;) also *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubīvis* and *ubīcunq̄ue*, the *i* is doubtful.

*O* is lengthened in the compounds of *intro*, *retro*, *contro*, and *quando*; as, *intrōdūco*, *intrōmitto*, *retrōcēdo*, *retrōgrādus*, *contrōversus*, *contrōversia*, *quandōque*, *quandōcunq̄ue*; but *quandōquīdem* has the second syllable short. *O* is also long in *aliōquin*, *cāterōquin*, *utrōbīque*: So likewise in Greek words, written with a large *o*, or *ω μέγα*; as, *geōmētra*, *Minōtaurus*, *lagōpus*.

Obs. 4. *A* in the former compounding part of a word is long; as,

*quāre, quāpropter, quācūque* ; So, *trādo, trādūco, trāno*, for *transno*, &c. *Eddem* is short, except in the abl. sing. *cādem*.

*E* is short ; as, *nēfas, nēfastus, nēfundus, nēfurius, nēque, nēqueo* ; *trēdecim, trēcenti, ēquidem, sēlibra, vulēdico, madēfacio, tēpēfacio, patēfacio*, &c. *hujuscēmōdi, ejuscēmōdi*—Except *sēdecim, sēmōdius, nēquis, nēquam, nēquātia, nēquando, nēmo, crēdo, mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum* ; *venēficus, vidēlicet*.

*U* also is short ; as, *dūcenti, dūpondium* ; *quadrūpes, centūplum, Trojūgēna, cornūpēta* ; but *jūdico* is long.—*Y* likewise in Greek words is short ; as, *Poljdōrus, Poljdāmas, Poljpkēmus, Dorjphōrus*.

## VERSE.

A **VERSE** is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, both to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, and to regulate its pronunciation.

## FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsūra*, which is commonly a long syllable.

### 1. Feet of two Syllables.

*Spondēus*, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.

*Pyrrhichius*, two short ; as, *dēūs*.

*Iambus*, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.

*Trochæus* or *Chorēus*, a long and a short ; as, *sērvūs*.

### 2. Feet of three Syllables.

*Dactylus*, a long and two short ; as, *scribērē*.

*Anapæstus*, two short and a long ; as, *piētās*.

*Amphimæcer*, a long, a short, and a long ; as *chārītās*.

*Tribrächys*, three short ; as, *dōminūs*.

The following are not so much used :

*Molossus*, *dēlectānti*.  
*Amphibrächys*, *hōnōrē*.  
*Bacchius*, *dōlōrēs*.  
*Antibacchius*, *pētūntūr*.

*Dispondēus*, *ōrālōrēs*.  
*Dijambus*, *āmāntās*.  
*Choriambus*, *pōntificēs*.  
*Dichorēus*, *Cāntilēnā*.  
*Antispastus*, *Alēxānder*.  
*Ionicus minor*, *prōpērābānt*.  
*Ionicus major*, *cālcāribus*.

### 3. Feet of four Syllables.

*Proceleusmaticus*, *hōmīnībūs*.

Pæon primus,	<i>tēpōribūs.</i>	Epitritus primus,	<i>vōlapētes.</i>
Pæon secundus,	<i>pōtēntiā.</i>	Epitritus secundus,	<i>pēnitēntēs</i>
Pæon tertius,	<i>ānīmātūs.</i>	Epitritus tertius,	<i>discōrdiās.</i>
Pæon quartus,	<i>cēlertās.</i>	Epitritus quartus,	<i>fortūnātūs.</i>

## SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse : if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus* : if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalecticus*, or *Hypermætor*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausula*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

## 1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee ; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees ; as,

Ludērē | quæ vel- | lēm cālā- | mō pār- | mīsit ā- | grēsti. *Virg.*  
Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnā jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondæic* ; as,

Carā Dē- | am sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnām Jōvis | incrē- | mētum. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it ; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel ; as,

Omniā | Mercūrī- | ō sīmī- | lis vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque.  
Et flavos crines—

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately ; as,

Ludere, quæ vellem, calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*  
Pinguis et ingrata premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees ; as,

Tityre, tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi. *Virg.*

It is esteemed a great beauty in a hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*

Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*

Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning hexameter verse, is the *CÆSURA*.

*Cæsura* is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rē-ginā grā-vī jam-dudum, &c.

The *cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris*: when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*: when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneemimēris*.

All these different species of the *cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illē lā-tus nīvē-nūm mōl-lī fūl-tus hŷā-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *cæsura* is the *penthemim*; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading a hexameter verse thus composed; whence they call it the *cæsural pause*; as,

Tityre, dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mœnīā tērrūt impīgēr Hannibāl armis. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just

pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse, as has been before observed.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

## 2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third, always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Natū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quīs- | quē sūæ. *Propert.*  
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsūra; the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsūra; thus,

Natū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | æ.  
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē- | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

## 3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadæan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībūs. *Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsūra; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ātā- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

## 4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tībī crē- | dītūm. *Hor. Od. 1, 3, 5.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Nāvīs | quæ tībī | crēdītūm.

## 5. SAPPHIC AND ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, a spondee, a dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intā- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 22, 1.

An Adonian, or Adonic verse consists only of a dactyle and a spondee; as,

Jupītēr | ūrgēt. *Hor. ibid.* v. 20.

## 6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, a dactyle, and a spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquōrēs | - - - - - *Hor. Od.* 1, 5, 7.

## 7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Summūm | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ōptēs. *Martial*, 10, 47. f.

## 8. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcāic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsūra, then two dactyles; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | sē | nesciā | sordīdēs  
Intā- | mīnā- | tīs | fulgēt hō- | nōribūs. *Hor. Od.* 3, 2, 17.

## 9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or an iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsūra; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aut | pōnit | sēcū- | rēs. *Hor. ibid.*

## 10. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcāic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbītrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ. *Ibid.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named

from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochæic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

### 11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimëter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimëter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimëter *quaternarius*, and the trimëter *senarius*.

Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

*Dimëter*, Inar- | sīt æ- | stūō- | sūs. *Hor.*

*Trimëter*, Sūs | ēt i- | psā Rō- | mā vi- | ribus | rūit. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrächys. We also find a tribrächys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

*Dimëter*, Canidī- | ā trāc- | tāvīt | dāpēs. *Hor.*

Vidē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmum. *Id.*

*Trimëter*, Quōquō | scēlēs- | tī rūl- | tīs aut | cūr dēx- | tēris. *Id.*

Pavidum- | quē lepō- | r' aut ad- | vēmām | lāquēō | grēm. *Id.*

Alitī- | būs at- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cīd' Hēc- | tōrēm. *Id.*

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetramëter* or *Octonarius*

### FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synærësis*, *Diærësis*, *Systôle*, and *Diastôle*.

1. *SYNALÆPHA* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Conticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs In- | tētū- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbant.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah, hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*  
 Credinus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*  
 Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto. *Id.*  
 Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam. *Id.*  
 Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ. *Id.*

2. *ECTHLIPSIS* is the cutting off of *m*, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ô quān- | t' æst īn | rēbūs īn- | anē.

Sometimes the *Synalæpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cælumque  
 Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*  
 Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum  
 Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit; r' Ardua*.

3. *SYNÆRESIS* is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crisis*; as, *Phæthon* for *Phaëthon*. So *ei* in *Thesei, Orphei, deinde, Pompei*; *ui* in *huic, cui*; *oi* in *proinde*; *ëa* in *aurea*; thus, -

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*  
 Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—*Virg.*  
 Filius huic contrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*  
 Aurea percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antëhac, eadem, alvearia, deest, deërit, vehëmens, antet eodem, alveo, graveolentis, omnia, semianimis, semihomo, fluviorum, totius, promontorium, &c.* as,

Unâ eademque viâ sanguis animusque sequuntur. *Virg.*  
 Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*  
 Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*  
 Divitis uber agri, Trojæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*  
 Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*  
 Te semper antet dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor. Od. 1, 35, 17.*  
 Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refuit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. *Virg.*  
 Inde ubi venère ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*  
 Bis patriæ cecidère manus: quîn protinus omnia. *Id.*  
 Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*  
 Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*  
 Fluviorum rex Eridanus, canisposque per omnes. *Id.*  
 Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*  
 Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as, in *genva*, *tenvis*, *arjêtat*, *tenvia*, *abjête*, *pitvita*, *parjetibus*, *Nasidjênus*; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c.; as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tenuis. *Lucr.*  
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*  
 Arjetat in portas et duros oojice postes. *Id.*  
 Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*  
 Edificant, sæctaque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*  
 Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*  
 Parjetibusque premunt arcotis, et quatuor addunt. *Virg.*  
 Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati? *Hor.*

4 DIERËSIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*; *Troia*, for *Trojæ*; *Persæus*, for *Perseus*; *milîus*, for *milvus*; *solûit*, for *solvit*; *volûit*, for *volvit*; *âqûæ*, *sûetus*, *sûasit*, *Sûevos*, *relangûit*, *reliqûas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c.; as,

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*  
 Stamina non ulli dissolvenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*  
 Debuerant fufos evolvîsse suos. *Id. Ovid.*  
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*  
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque stætæ. *Hor.*  
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque student. *Lucr.*  
 Fundat ad extremo flavos Aquilone Sûevos. *Lucan.*  
 Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. *Ovid.*  
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. SYSTÖLE makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulêrunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulêrunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E. 4. 61.*

6. DIASTÖLE makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Considant, si tantus amôr, et mœnia condant. *Virg. Æ. 11. 323.*

To the above may be added the following, which, though

chiefly used by the poets, often occur in prose; and are called

## FIGURES OF DICTION.

1. *Prosthesis*\* prefixes a letter or syllable; as, *gnavus* for *navus*. In Latin there are but few examples of this, but in Greek they abound; as, *ἐσιπς* for *εἴπς*, *δῶρα* for *ῶρα*.

2. *Epenthesis*† inserts something in the middle; as, *rettūlit* for *retūlit*, *μαχεσάμενος* for *μαχέσάμενος*.

3. *Paragoge*‡ adds to the end; as, *dicier* for *dici*, *τοῦτονι* for *τοῦτον*.

4. *Aphæresis*§ takes away from the beginning; as, *conia* for *ciconia*. Of this, also, examples are rare in Latin, but frequent in Greek; as, *ἦ* for *ἐφη*. II. 1. 219.

5. *Syncope*|| takes out something from the middle; as, *peccasse* for *peccavisse*, *ἔσαν* for *ἐξήσαν*.

6. *Apocope*¶ takes from the end; as *pecūli* for *peculii*, *δῶ* for *δῶμα*. II. 1. 426.

7. *Metathesis*\*\* transposes letters; as *pistris* for *pristis*, *ἐδάραον* for *ἐδαρχον*, 2. a. of *δέλω*.

8. *Antithesis*†† changes one letter for another; as *faciundum* for *faciendum*, *olli* for *illi*, *ξύν* for *σύν*.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poëma* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an *EPITHALAMIUM*; on a mournful subject, an *ELFGY* or *LAMENTATION*; in praise of the Supreme Being, a *HYMN*; in praise of any person or thing, a *PANEGYRIC* or *ENCOMIUM*; on the vices of any one, a *SATIRE* or *INVECTIVE*; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an *EPITAPH*, &c.

2. A short poem, adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an *ODE*, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: a poem in the form of a letter is called an *EPISTLE*; a short witty poem playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an *EPIGRAM*; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram is called its *Point*. A poem expressing

\* *Πρόσθεσις*, *adjectio*; προστίθαι, *addo*, to prefix.

† *Ἐπένθεσις*, *insertio*; ἐπεντίθαι, *inséro in medium*, to insert.

‡ *Παραγωγή*, *productio*; παράγω, *produco*, to lengthen out.

§ *Ἀφαίρεσις*, *ablatio*; ἀφαίρω, *aufero* to take away

|| *Συνκοπή*, from *συνκρίνω*, *concido*, to cut out.

¶ *Ἀποκοπή*, *amputatio*; ἀποκόπτω, *amputo*, to cut off.

\*\* *Μετάθεσις*, *transpositio*; the change of places.

†† From *ἀντί*, *instead of*, and *τίθαι*, to place.

the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an *ÆNIGMA* or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following of our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cæl I,  
E xpellit tenebras E toto Phæbus ut orb E;  
S ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,  
V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V,  
S olem justitiæ S ese probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle,) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue; to which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or *BUCOLICS*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great, illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

### COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphoses, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use the Hexameter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem, which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *MONOCOLON*, sc. *poëma* or *carmen*; or *MONOCŌLOS*, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, *DICOLON*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *TRICOLON*.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is

called *Dicōlon Distrōphon*;\* as when a single *Pentamēter* is alternately placed after an *HEXAMETER*; which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiācum*,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, solve capillos;  
Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by *Ovid* in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by *Tibullus*, *Propertius*, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrōphon*; when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetratrōphon*; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem  
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti  
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendā  
Sobrius aulā. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricōlon Tristrōphon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricōlon Tetratrōphon*; as, when after two greater dactylic *Alcaic* verses are subjoined an *Archilochian iambic* and a lesser dactylic *Alcaic*, which is named *Carmen Horatiānum*, or *Horatian verse*, because it is frequently used by *Horace*; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori  
Cælum, negatā tentat iter viā;  
Cætusque vulgares, et udam  
Spernit humum fugiente pennā.

#### THE VARIOUS COMBINATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT METRES USED BY HORACE.

*HORACE* uses *twenty* different species of metre, combining them in *nineteen* different ways, and of course forming *nineteen* different stanzas. These are as follow, arranged according to the order of preference given them by the poet:—

No 1. The stanza of four lines. The first two are *greater Alcaic*,† measured thus: a spondee or iambus, an iambus with a cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Vidēs ūt alta stāt nīvē candīdūm.

|   |   |   |

\* A *Strophe* or *Stanza* includes as many lines as are necessary to show all the different kinds of measure in an ode. It is called *Strophe*, which in Greek literally means *a turning*, because at the end of it, you turn back to the same kind of verse with which you began.

† From *Alcæus*, a famous poet of Lesbos, whom *Horace* frequently celebrates.

The third line is *Archilochian*,\* measured thus: the first and third feet are spondees or iambi; the second and fourth, iambi, with a cæsura remaining; as,

Silvæ laborantes gēlæque.

The fourth line is *lesser Alcaic*, measured by two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Flamīnæ cōnatitērint ætæto.

This is called the HORATIAN STANZA, because Horace delighted in it above all others. More than one third of his odes are in this stanza.

No. 2. The stanza of four lines. The first three lines are *Sapphic*,† measured by a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and then two trochees; as,

Jam satis terris nivis atque diræ.

The fourth line is *Adonic*, consisting of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Terruit urbem.

No. 3. The stanza of two lines. The first is *Glyconic*,‡ measured by a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Sic te Divæ potens Cypri.

The second is *Asclepiadæan*,§ consisting of a spondee, two choriambi, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Sic fratres Hellenas lucida sidera.

Or thus,

Sic fratres Hellenas lucida sidera.

No. 4. The stanza of two lines. The first has six iambi, the second has four. But sometimes a spondee, dactyle, anapest, or tribrachys, is admitted into the odd places; that is, in the first, third and fifth. A tribrachys is also found in the even places. The first ten epodes are in this stanza.

No. 5. The stanza of four lines; three Asclepiads and one Glyconic. See No. 3.

\* Invented by *Archilochus*, a poet of Paros.

† Invented by *Sappho*, the celebrated poetess of Lesbos.

‡ From *Glycon*, the inventor.

§ From *Asclepias*, the inventor.

No. 6. The stanza of four lines. The first two are *Asclepiadæan*, the third is *Pherecratian*, consisting of a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; as,

Grātō Pyrrhā sūb antrō.

The fourth line is *Glyconic*, No. 3.

No. 7. The stanza of one line. *Asclepiadæan*, measured by a spondee, two choriambi, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcenas k̄avis edit̄s rēgib̄s.

No. 8. The stanza of two lines. A *hexameter*, and the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Laudabunt alī clāram Rhōdōn aut Mītylēnē.

Aut Ephēsūm bīmārīsvē Cōrīnθi.

No. 9. The stanza of one line, measured by a spondee, three choriambi, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Tū nē quæsiēris scīrē nēfās quēm mīhī quēm tibi.

No. 10. The stanza of two lines. The first is hexameter; the second has four iambs, and sometimes spondees, &c. in the odd places.

No. 11. The stanza of one line, containing six iambs, or other feet in the odd places.

No. 12. The stanza of two lines. The first is measured by a choriambus and bacchius; the second, by three choriambi and a bacchius.

Lydiā dic p̄r om̄nēs,

Tē Dēōs ōrō Sybārīn cūr prōp̄rēs amandō.

Observe, however, in the second line, that the first choriambus is imperfect, having its third syllable long instead of short.\*

No. 13. The stanza of two lines; the first line hexameter, the second containing six iambs, admitting other feet in the odd places.

\* Attilius, a learned grammarian, remarks, that Horace was guilty of this error from being inexpert in this kind of measure, and that, having once begun it, he chose to persevere in it to the end. Some, however, call the first foot an *Epitritus*, others divide it into a trochee and spondee.



Descende cœlo .....	No. 1	Nullus argento .....	No 2
Dianam teneræ .....	6	Nunc est bibendum .....	1
Diffugère nives .....	14	O crudelis adhuc .....	9
Dive quem proles .....	2	O Diva gratum .....	1
Divis orte bonis .....	5	O fons Blandusiæ .....	6
Donarem pateras .....	7	O matre pulchrâ .....	1
Donec gratus eram .....	3	O nata mecum .....	1
Eheu fugaces .....	1	O navis referent .....	6
Est mihi nonum .....	2	O sæpe mecum .....	1
Et thure et fidibus .....	3	O Venus regina .....	2
Exegi monumentum .....	7	Odi profanum .....	1
Extremum Tanaim .....	5	Otium Divos .....	2
Faune nympharum .....	2	Parcius junctas .....	2
Festo quid potius die .....	3	Parcus Deorum .....	1
Herculis ritu .....	2	Parentis olim .....	4
Horrida tempestas .....	15	Pastor quum traheret .....	5
Ibis Liburnis .....	4	Persicos odi puer .....	2
Ipse beatis .....	1	Petti nihil me .....	16
Ille et nefasto .....	1	Phœbe, silvarumque .....	2
Impios parræ .....	2	Phœbus volentem .....	1
Inclusam Danaen .....	5	Pindarum quisquis .....	2
Intactis opulentior .....	3	Poscimus siquid .....	2
Integer vitæ .....	2	Quæ cura patrum .....	1
Intermissa Venus diu .....	3	Qualem ministrum .....	1
Jam jam efficaci .....	11	Quando repōstum .....	4
Jam pauca aratro .....	1	Quantum distet ab Inacho .....	3
Jam satis terris .....	2	Quem tu Melpomene .....	3
Jam veris comites .....	5	Quem virum aut heroa .....	2
Justum et tenacem .....	1	Quid bellicosus .....	1
Laudabunt alii .....	8	Quid dedicatum .....	1
Lupis et agnis .....	4	Quid fles Asterie .....	6
Lydia dic per omnes .....	12	Quid immerentes .....	4
Mæcenæ avitis .....	7	Quid obseratis .....	11
Malâ soluta .....	4	Quid tibi vis .....	8
Martiis cœlebs .....	2	Quis desiderio .....	5
Mater sæva Cupidinum .....	3	Quis multa gracilis .....	6
Mercuri facunde .....	2	Quo me Bacche .....	3
Mercuri nam te .....	2	Quo, quo scelesti ruitis .....	4
Miserarum est .....	19	Rectius vives .....	2
Mollis inertia .....	10	Rogare longo .....	4
Montium custos .....	2	Scriberis Vario .....	5
Motum ex Metello .....	1	Septimi Gades .....	2
Musis amicus .....	1	Sic te Diva potens .....	3
Natis in usum .....	1	Solvitur acris hiems .....	17
Ne forte credas .....	1	Te maris et terræ .....	8
Ne sit ancillæ .....	2	Tu ne quæsieris .....	9
Nolis longa feræ .....	5	Tyrrhena regum .....	1
Nondum subacta .....	1	Ulla si juris .....	2
Non ebur neque aureum .....	18	Uxor pauperis Ibyci .....	3
Non semper imbres .....	1	Velox amœnum .....	1
Non usitata .....	1	Vides ut alta .....	1
Non vides quanto .....	2	Vile potabis .....	2
Nox erat .....	10	Vitas hinnuleo .....	6
Nullam Vare sacra .....	9	Vixi choreis .....	1

## APPENDIX.

---

*Of Punctuation ; Capitals ; Abbreviations ; Division of the Roman Months ; Tables of Roman Coins, Weights, and Measures ; Golden, Silver, and Brazen Ages of Roman Literature.*

THE different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, Punctum, or full stop (.)

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence, in this way of considering it ; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end ; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon ; the colon double of the semicolon ; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthêsis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthêsis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions.

The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (\*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§) *Quotation* (""); *Crotchets* [ ]; *Brace* ( < ); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (^); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decius*, or *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintus*, or *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senātus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romānus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senātus Populusque Romānus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimum dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; \* LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætëra*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperātor*; Impp. *Imperatōres*.

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*, that is; e. g. *exempli gratiā*, for example; v. g. *verbi gratiā*.

---

\* Two capitals in this way denote the plural number; as, L. D. *Legis Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*

*Division of the Roman Months.*

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by \**Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or, by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the *ides*, which were marked *Idibus Decembris*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *ides*, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the *nones*, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembris*, or *Decembris*: the day before the *nones*, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;

Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;

At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.

Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.

Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,

Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.

Omnes post idus lucas dic esse kalendas,

Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *November*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

In *Leap year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii*, or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

\* *Kalends*, or *Calends*, is derived from *Calo*, -*are*, to call. In the inf. c/ of Rome, a priest summoned the people together in the Capitol, on the first day of the month, or of the new moon, and called over the days that intervened between that and the *Nones*. In later times the *Fasti*, or Calendar, used to be put up in public places.

The *Nones* [*Nona*] are so called, because they are nine days from the *Idea*. *Idea*, [*Idus*] from the obsolete verb *Iduare*, to divide, because they divide the month nearly equally.

TABLE.

	Mar. Mai. Jul. Oct.	Jan. Aug. Dec	Apr. Jun. Sep. Nov.	Februarius.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	6 <sup>o</sup> Nonas.	4 <sup>o</sup> Nonas.	4 <sup>o</sup> Nonas.	4 <sup>o</sup> Nonas.
3	5 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.
4	4 Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	3 Nonas.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Nonas.	8 <sup>o</sup> Idus.	8 <sup>o</sup> Idus.	8 <sup>o</sup> Idus.
7	Nonæ.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.
8	8 <sup>o</sup> Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.
9	7 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.
10	6 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.
11	5 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.
12	4 Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	3 Idus.	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.	19 <sup>o</sup> Kalendas.	18 <sup>o</sup> Kalendas.	16 <sup>o</sup> Kalendas.
15	Idus.	18 Kal.	17 Kal.	15 Kal.
16	17 <sup>o</sup> Kalendas.	17 Kal.	16 Kal.	14 Kal.
17	16 Kal.	16 Kal.	15 Kal.	13 Kal.
18	15 Kal.	15 Kal.	14 Kal.	12 Kal.
19	14 Kal.	14 Kal.	13 Kal.	11 Kal.
20	13 Kal.	13 Kal.	12 Kal.	10 Kal.
21	12 Kal.	12 Kal.	11 Kal.	9 Kal.
22	11 Kal.	11 Kal.	10 Kal.	8 Kal.
23	10 Kal.	10 Kal.	9 Kal.	7 Kal.
24	9 Kal.	9 Kal.	8 Kal.	6 Kal.
25	8 Kal.	8 Kal.	7 Kal.	5 Kal.
26	7 Kal.	7 Kal.	6 Kal.	4 Kal.
27	6 Kal.	6 Kal.	5 Kal.	3 Kal.
28	5 Kal.	5 Kal.	4 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.
29	4 Kal.	4 Kal.	3 Kal.	
30	3 Kal.	3 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.	
31	Pridie Kalendas.	Pridie Kalendas.		

The Romans, counting *in* the day on which they dated, called the *second* day before the Kalends, Nones or Ides, *tertio*, and so on. And, as the Kalends are not the last day of the current month, but the first day of the month following; we must take this additional day into consideration in accommodating our calendar to their dates; according to the following method:

**RULE.** Add *one* to the number of the Nones and Ides, and *two* to the number of days in the month for the Kalends; then subtract the number of the day: e. g. to find the Roman date of the 21st July; to 31, add 2, = 33; from this take 21, the day of the month, and the remainder, 12, is the Roman date, 12mo. Kal. Aug.

THE  
DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE,  
WITH REFERENCE TO THE  
PURITY OF THE LANGUAGE.

---

The *golden* age is generally computed from the time of the second *Punic* war to the latter end of the reign of *Augustus Cæsar*, and comprehends the oldest authors in the *Latin* tongue now extant, excepting the fragments of *Livius Andronicus*; though, for a considerable time after the commencement of this period, the language was but yet forming, and by gradual improvements afterwards arrived at its most perfect state under *Augustus*.

The *silver* age is reckoned to have commenced on the death of *Augustus*, and continued to the end of *Trajan's* reign.

The *brazen* age began at the death of *Trajan*, and lasted till the time that *Rome* was taken by the *Goths*, about four hundred and ten years after the birth of *Christ*.

The *iron* age commenced from the sacking of *Rome* above mentioned; after which, the purity and beauty of the *Latin* tongue declined very much, and many base words were introduced into the language, especially by the ecclesiastical and medical writers, the use of which ought to be carefully avoided by all persons studious of writing in a good *Latin* style; the surest way of obtaining which is carefully to read, make observations upon, and imitate, the purest *Latin* writers, especially those who come the nearest to *Cicero*, to whose valuable writings this language is very much indebted.

THE LATIN WRITERS,

*Arranged according to the Ages in which they flourished.*

The golden age begins at the time of the second *Punic* war, and extends to the latter end of the reign of *Augustus*; extending from the 514th to the 767th year after the foundation of *Rome*, or the 14th year of our Lord.

## Writers of the GOLDEN AGE.\*

P. Nigidius Figulus.  
 C. Decius Laberius.  
 M. Verrius Flaccus.  
 P. Syrus.  
 M. Accius Plautus.  
 P. Terentius Afer.  
 M. Portius Cato.  
 T. Lucretius Carus.  
 C. Valerius Catullus.  
 C. Julius Cæsar.  
 Cornelius Nepos.  
 M. Tullius Cicero.  
 Sex. Aurelius Propertius.  
 C. Sallustius Crispus.  
 M. Terentius Varro.  
 Albius Tibullus.  
 Publius Virgilius Maro.

T. Livius.  
 M. Manilius.  
 P. Ovidius Naso.  
 Q. Horatius Flaccus.  
 C. Pedo Albinovanus.  
 Gratius Faliscus.  
 T. Phædrus.  
 C. Cornificius.  
 Aulus Hirtius, or Oppius [One of whom completed the Commentaries of Cæsar.]  
 P. Cornelius Severus. [He lived during the reign of Augustus, but the poetry attributed to him is said by critics to have been written by a certain Maximianus, a man of a weak mind.]

Fragments only of the following lawyers remain in the Digests.

Q. Mutius Scævola.  
 Alfenus Varus.

M. Antistius Labeo.  
 Masurius Sabinus.

## Writers of the SILVER AGE.

Cornelius Celsus.  
 M. Fabius Quintilianus.  
 P. Velleius Paterculus.  
 M. Annæus Seneca.  
 L. Annæus Seneca.  
 M. Annæus Lucanus.  
 T. Petronius Arbitr.  
 C. Plinius Secundus.  
 C. Silius Italicus.  
 C. Valerius Flaccus.

M. Valerius Martialis.  
 C. Julius Solinus.  
 D. Junius Juvenalis.  
 D. Papinius Statius.  
 Sex. Julius Frontinus.  
 C. Cornelius Tacitus.  
 C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus.  
 L. Annæus Florus.  
 C. Suetonius Tranquillus.

## Of an uncertain Age.

Q. Curtius Rufus.  
 Val. Probus, [a grammarian,  
 Sulpitia, [a noble Roman poetess, whose satire against Domitian is still extant.]

Scribonius Largus.  
 L. Fenestella.

---

\* Of the following only fragments remain.

Livius Andronicus.  
 C. Nævius.  
 Statius Cæcilius.  
 Q. Ennius.  
 M. Pacuvius.

L. Attilius.  
 C. Lucilius.  
 L. Afranius.  
 L. Cornelius Sisenna.

These authors are ranked among the writers of the golden age, but rather on account of their antiquity than their elegance. Their writings contain much wisdom and instruction, but are often deficient in the qualities of a finished style.

Noltenius ranks among the writers of the Silver Age,

Phædrus, [who perhaps more  
properly belongs to this than  
to the golden age.]  
Valerius Maximus.  
Palladius Rutilius Taurus.

Justinus.  
Aulus Gellius.  
Æmilius Macer.  
Terentianus Maurus.

### Writers of the BRAZEN AGE.

Aulus Gellius.  
L. Apuleius.  
Q. Septimius Tertullianus.  
Q. Serenus Sammonicus.  
Censorinus.  
Cæcilius Cyprianus.  
T. Junius Calpurnius.  
M. Aurelius Nemesianus.  
Ælius Spartianus.  
Julius Capitolinus.  
Ælius Lampridius.  
Vulcatius Gallicanus.  
Trebellius Pollio.  
Flavius Vopiscus.  
Cælius Aurelianus.  
Flavius Eutropius.  
Rhemnius Fannius.  
Arnobius Afer.  
L. Cælius Lactantius.

Ælius Donatus.  
Commodianus.  
C. Vettus Juvenius.  
D. Hilarius.  
Julius Firmicus.  
Fab. Marius Victorinus.  
Sextus Rufus.  
Festus Historicus.  
Ammianus Marcellinus.  
Fl. Vegetius Renatus.  
Aurel. Theod. Macrobius.  
Q. Aurelius Symmachus.  
Dec. Magnus Ausonius.  
Sex. Aurelius Victor.  
D. Ambrosius.  
Aur. Prudentius Clemens.  
Cl. Claudianus.  
Marcellus Empiricus.  
Proba Falconia.

Lawyers, fragments of whose writings remain in the Digests

Licinius Proculus  
Neratius Priscus.  
P. Juvencius Celsus.  
Priscus Jabo'senus.  
Domitius Ulpianus.  
Herennius Modestinus  
Salvius Julianus.  
Julius Cæus.

Callistratus.  
Æmilius Papilianus.  
Julius Paulus.  
Sextius Pomponius.  
Venuleius Saturninus.  
Ælius Marcianus.  
Ælius Gallus, and others

Laurentius Valla praises exceedingly the pure Latinity of these authors, and affirms, that the Latin language, if it had perished, could be revived by means of the writings of the ancient lawyers alone.

The following are of a somewhat uncertain age.

Valerius Maximus.  
Justinus.  
Fest. Avianus or Avianus.

Terentianus Maurus.  
Minutius Felix.  
Sompater Charisius.

ROMAN COINS REDUCED TO FEDERAL MONEY.

BRASS.

		\$	cts.	
*1½	A Quadrans,† or teruncius, is equal to	0	60,35	of a cent.
1½	A Triens . . . . .		,47	"
2	A Semissis, or semi-æs . . . . .		,71	"
	An As, or æs . . . . .		1,43	"

SILVER.

2	A Teruncius is equal to . . . . .	,35	of a cent
2	A Sembella . . . . .	,71	"
2½	A Libella . . . . .	1,43	"
2	A Sestertius, or Nummus, marked L. L. S.		"
	or IIS, commonly written HS. . . . .	3,57	"
2	A Quinarius, or Victoriātus, marked V. . . . .	7,17	"
	A Denarius, marked X. . . . .	14,35	"

GOLD.

An Aureus, or aureus nummus . . . . \$3 58,79 of a cent.  
 The gold is reckoned at £4 sterling, (\$17 77½) and the silver  
 at 5 shillings, (\$1 11½) an ounce.

GREEK COINS MENTIONED BY ROMAN AUTHORS.

6	An Obölus is equal to . . . . .	2,39	of a cent.
4	A Drachma . . . . .	14,35	"
25	A Tetradrachma or -um . . . . .	57,40	"
	according to Livy, . . . . .	43,05	"
60	A Mina . . . . .	\$14 35,18	"
	A Talentum . . . . .	\$861 11½	"

The Romans usually computed sums of money by *sestertii*, or *sestertia*. *Sestertium* is the name of a sum, not of a coin. When a numeral adjective is joined with *sestertii*, it means just so many sesterces; thus, *decem sestertii* = ten sesterces: but when it is joined with *sestertia*, it means so many thousand *sestertii*; thus, *decem sestertia* = 10,000 sesterces.

\* These numbers show how many of each denomination it takes to make one of the next following, nearly.

† *Quadrans* signifies a *quarter* of the as; *triens*, a *third*; *teruncius*, *three uncii* of brass, (12 of which made an as,) or a silver coin of that value; *libella*, a diminutive of *libra*, being equivalent to the as, which originally weighed a *pound*; *sembella*, *semi-libella*; *sestertius*, *semis tertius*, or *three asses less a half* (after the Greek idiom *ἑμισ ἑπτά*, for *ὀκτώ ἑμισ*); *quinarius*, *five asses*, called also *victoriātus*, from the image of *Victory*, its usual device; *denarius*, *ten asses*.

If a numeral adjective of another case is joined with the genitive plural, it denotes so many thousand; as, *decem sestertium*, 10,000 sestertii. If a numeral adverb is joined, it denotes so many hundred thousand; as, *decies sestertium*, ten hundred thousand sestertii. If the numeral adverb stands by itself, the signification is the same.

### ROMAN LONG MEASURES REDUCED TO ENGLISH.

		Eng. Paces.	Ft.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Hordei granum, or barley corn, is equal to	0	0	0	,181 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Digītus transversus, or finger's breadth	0	0	0	,725 $\frac{1}{4}$
3	1 Uncia, thumb's breadth, or inch	0	0	0	,967
4	1 Palmus minor, or hand's breadth	0	0	2	,901
1 $\frac{1}{4}$	1 Pes, or foot	0	0	11	,604
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Palmipes, a foot and hand's breadth	0	1	2	,505
1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1 Cubitus	0	1	5	,406
2	1 Gradus	0	2	5	,010
126	1 Passus, or pace	0	4	10	,020
8	1 Stadium, or furlong	120	4	4	,5
	1 Milliære, mille passus or passuum	967	0	0	,0

### ANCIENT ROMAN LAND MEASURE.

100	Square Roman feet equal	1	Scrupulum of land.
4	Scrupula	1	Sextulus.
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	Sextulus	1	Actus.
6	Sextuli, or 5 Actus	1	Uncia of land.
6	Unciæ	1	Square Actus.
2	Square Actus	1	Jugërum.
3	Jugëra	1	Heredium.
100	Heredia	1	Centuria.

### ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY FOR LIQUIDS, REDUCED TO ENGLISH WINE MEASURE.

			Gal.	Pts.	Sol.	In.	Dec.
4	1	Ligūla is equal to	0	$\frac{1}{8}$	0	,117	$\frac{1}{2}$
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	Cyāthus	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	,469	$\frac{3}{4}$
2	1	Acetabūlum	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	0	,704	$\frac{1}{2}$
2	1	Quartarius	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	,409	
2	1	Hemīna	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	2	,818	
6	1	Sextarius	0	1	5	,636	
4	1	Congius	0	7	4	,942	
2	1	Urna	3	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	5	,33	
20	1	Amphōra	7	1	10	,66	
	1	Culeus	143	3	11	,095	

The *quadrantal* is the same with the *amphōra*; *congiarius*, *dolium*, and *cadus* mean no certain measure, but a *cask* or *keg*.

The Romans divided the *sextarius*, as well as the *libra*, into twelve equal parts, called *cyāthi*; and therefore they called their *calices* either *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, or *trientes*; according to the number of *cyāthi* they contained.

The *cyāthus* corresponded, in use and size, nearly to our wine glass.

ROMAN DRY MEASURE REDUCED TO ENGLISH CORN MEASURE.

		Pk.	Gal.	Pt.	Sol.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligūla is equal to . . . . .	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{48}$	0	0	,01
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Cyāthus . . . . .	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{12}$	0	0	,04
4	1 Acetabūlum . . . . .	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{8}$	0	0	,06
2	1 Hemīna . . . . .	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{2}$	0	0	,24
8	1 Sextarius . . . . .	0	0	1	0	0	,48
2	1 Semi-modius . . . . .	0	1	0	3	0	,84
1	1 Modius . . . . .	1	0	0	7	0	,68

GRECIAN AND ROMAN WEIGHTS REDUCED TO ENGLISH TROY WEIGHT.

		lbs.	oz.	dwt.	grs.
4	1 Lens is equal to . . . . .	0	0	0	0 $\frac{85}{112}$
3	1 Silīqua . . . . .	0	0	0	3 $\frac{1}{28}$
2	1 Obōlus . . . . .	0	0	0	9 $\frac{3}{28}$
3	1 Scriptūlum . . . . .	0	0	0	18 $\frac{3}{14}$
1 $\frac{1}{8}$	1 Drachma . . . . .	0	0	2	6 $\frac{2}{14}$
1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 Sextūla . . . . .	0	0	3	0 $\frac{6}{7}$
1 $\frac{1}{3}$	1 Sicilicus or -um . . . . .	0	0	4	13 $\frac{4}{7}$
3	1 Duella . . . . .	0	0	6	1 $\frac{6}{7}$
12	1 Uncia . . . . .	0	0	18	5 $\frac{4}{7}$
1	1 Libra . . . . .	0	10	18	13 $\frac{4}{7}$

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON ROMAN MONEY.

In the preceding tables of money the authority of Dr. Adam, as given in his "Roman Antiquities," has been followed. And perhaps no one could in general be followed with more safety. But on some few points he differs from writers of great respectability. Forcellinus and Eckhel agree in resolving HS, not into LLS, but into IIS; that is, *two* asses and a half; giving the letters or lines II their usual numerical power. This solution seems much more satisfactory than the

former, and is supported by strong probabilities. We find, for example, on ancient coins, HVIR, for DUUMVIR; and an X standing for *ten*, has sometimes a mark drawn across it thus,  $\frac{V}{\Lambda}$ ; as it is frequently found on the denarius, where it evidently stands for *ten asses*

The following account of the Roman mode of reckoning by sesterces is taken from a treatise on the subject by Mr. Raper, in the Philosophical Transactions, vol. LXI.

“ The Romans reckoned by *Asses* before they coined silver, after which they kept their accounts in Sesterces. The word *Sestertius* is an adjective, and signifies two and a half of any substantive to which it refers. In money matters its substantive is either *As*, or *pondus*; and *Sestertius As* is two *Asses* and a half; *Sestertium pondus*, two *pondëra* and a half [of silver], or 250 *Denarii*.

“ When the *Denarius* passed for ten *Asses*, the Sesterce of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *Asses* was a quarter of it; and the Romans continued to keep their accounts in these Sesterces long after the *Denarius* passed for sixteen *Asses*; till, growing rich, they found it more convenient to reckon by quarters of the *Denarius*, which they called *Nummi*, and used the words *Nummus* and *Sestertius*, indifferently, as synonymous terms, and sometimes both together, as, *Sestertius nummus*; in which case, the word *Sestertius*, having lost its original signification, was used as a substantive; for *Sestertius nummus* was not two *Nummi* and a half, but a single *Nummus* of four *Asses*.

“ They called any sum under 2000 Sesterces so many *Sestertii*, in the masculine gender; 2000 Sesterces they called *duo* or *bina Sestertia*, in the neuter; so many quarters making 500 *Denarii*, which was twice the *Sestertium*; and they said *dena vicëna*, &c. *Sestertia*, till the sum amounted to a thousand *Sestertia*, which was a million of Sesterces. But, to avoid ambiguity, they did not use the neuter *Sestertium* in the singular number, when the whole sum amounted to no more than 1000 Sesterces, or one *Sestertium*.

“ They called a million of Sesterces *Decies nummum*, or *Decies Sestertium*, for *Decies centëna millia nummorum*, or *Sestertiörum* (in the masculine gender), omitting *centëna millia*, for the sake of brevity; they likewise called the same sum *Decies Sestertium* (in the neuter gender), for *Decies centies Sestertium*, omitting *Centies* for the reason above mentioned; or simply *Decies*, omitting *centëna millia Sestertium*,

or *centies Sestertium*; and with the numeral adverbs *Decies*, *Vicies*, *Centies*, *Millies*, and the like, either *centēna millia*, or *centies*, was always understood."

The learned, while they agree as to the substance of the foregoing rules, and arrive at the same results in applying them to sums of money mentioned in the classics, yet differ widely with respect to the grammatical construction of the word *sestertius*. Forcellinus\* contends, that *sestertium* is always the contracted genitive plural of the masculine *sestertius*; that the use of *sestertia* in the neuter, is confined to the poets, who form the word by a metaplasm, for the sake of the metre; and that, where it is found in printed editions of prose writers, it has been arbitrarily substituted for the sign HS in the original manuscript, which sign stands in every such instance for *sestertiūm*, the genitive plural of *sestertius*.

Eckhelt considers the numeral adverbs *decies*, &c. as taking the nature of neuter substantives, as in the expressions *hoc decies*, *decies plenum*, &c. which occur in ancient authors; and since *sestertius* is in its nature an adjective (e. g. *sestertius pes*, *sestertius nummus*), he regards *decies sestertium*, *decies plenum*, &c. as phrases of similar construction. Hence we find the adjective *sestertius* varied through almost all the cases, as in the following examples: *Decem arbuscularum umbram tricies sestertii summā compenses*. Val. Max. *Eis et vicies millies sestertium donationibus Nero effuderat*. Tac. *Sexagies sestertio margaritam mercatus es*. Sueton.

---

\* Totius Latinitatis Lexicon.

† Doctrina Numerorum Veterum, vol. v. p. 21.

# GENERAL RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.\*

TO BE LEARNED BY BEGINNERS.

---

**RULE I.** CONSTRUE the nominative case first (with the words thereto belonging, if any;) then the verb; then the word or words governed of the verb; lastly the preposition, (if any,) with the word depending on it.

**II.** A genitive case is usually construed after another noun, or a verbal adjective.

**III.** An infinitive mode is generally construed after another verb, or a participle.

**IV.** An adjective or participle, if no other word depend on it, must be construed before its substantive.

**V.** If an adjective or participle govern a word after it, it must be construed after its substantive.

**VI.** In an ablative absolute, construe the participle or adjective last, i. e. after the substantive or word with which it agrees.

**VII.** If two adjectives or participles agree with the same substantive, they must not be construed one before, and the other after that substantive; but either both before, by Rule IV. or both after, by Rule V.

**VIII.** Let the relative *and its clause* be construed as soon as possible after the antecedent.

---

\* The following Rules are from Lyne's Latin Primer.

IX. Certain adverbs and conjunctions are construed before the nominative case and verb; i. e. they are construed first in their own clause or sentence: so is the relative *qui*; and so are *quis* the interrogative, *quantus*, *quicunque*, and such like words, (*with their accompaniments*,) in whatever case.

X. When a question is asked, construe the nominative case (*unless it be the interrogative quis, quotus, quantus, uter, &c.*) after the verb, or else between the English verb and its auxiliary, expressing the auxiliary first.

XI. After the verb *sum*, a verb passive, and a verb neuter, a nominative case is sometimes construed; but then there is usually another nominative case, expressed or implied, to come before.

XII. An adverb is not to be construed with a substantive, but rather with a verb, or an adjective, or participle.

XIII. After a preposition, constantly look for an accusative, or ablative case.

XIV. The word governed must be construed after (*generally immediately after*) that word which governs it; except such words as Rule IX. specifies; and even they must be construed after prepositions.

XV. When in a sentence there is no finite verb, but only an infinitive, with a nominative case, expressed or understood, construe such an infinitive like an indicative, or some other finite mode, the nominative being construed in its proper place.

XVI. When there occur an accusative case and an infinitive mode, *quod* or *ut* being left out, construe the accusative first, with the word *that* before it, because it is there virtually a nominative, and should therefore, with its adjuncts, be construed like a nominative before the verb.

XVII. Words in apposition must be construed as near to each other as possible.

XVIII. All correspondent words must be construed as near to each other as possible.

**XIX.** Generally construe every word in any clause you have entered on after the nominative case, before you proceed to another clause; beginning each clause, as you pass from one to another, with the nominative case and verb, if there be such in it, and finishing it according to Rule I.

**XX.** An oblique case, unless it be an adjunct to the nominative, should be construed after the verb; and when more obliques than one depend on the same word, construe accusatives before datives, datives before ablatives, and genitives immediately after the words which govern them.

**XXI.** When *sum* is put for *habeo*, the English nominative is expressed in Latin by a dative, and the accusative by a nominative: in this case construe the dative first, like a nominative; then the verb, as if declined from *habeo*; and then the nominative after the verb, like an accusative.

**XXII.** By a very common ellipsis, the verb *sum* may be understood in any mode or tense; when it is so, it must be supplied in construing, as the sense requires.

**XXIII.** By a most elegant ellipsis, any finite verb may be understood, and inferred by reflection from another verb of like import, actually expressed within the period.

**XXIV.** Adjectives are often elegantly used as adverbs; and are then joined with verbs in the construction, and rendered adverbially.

**THE**  
**POSITION OF WORDS**  
**IN**  
**LATIN COMPOSITION.**

---

**THE** great mystery of the position of words in the Latin tongue lies principally in these two points, viz.

1. *That the word governed be placed before the word which governs it.*
2. *That the word agreeing be placed after the word with which it agrees.*

These two may be termed the maxims of position; and from them result various rules, which may be conveniently divided into two classes, viz.

1. Rules resulting from the government of words.
2. Rules resulting from the agreement of words.

To which add a third class, viz.

3. Miscellaneous rules, not reducible to either of the two classes foregoing.

---

**RULES OF POSITION.**

**CLASS I.**

**RULES RESULTING FROM THE GOVERNMENT OF WORDS.**

**RULE I.** A **VERB** in the infinitive mode (if it be governed) is usually placed before the word which governs it.

II. A noun in an oblique case is commonly placed before the word which governs it; whether that word be a verb, or another noun-substantive, adjective, or participle.

III. Dependent clauses, as well as single words, are placed before the principal finite verb, on which such clauses do mainly depend.

IV. The finite verb is commonly placed last in its own clause.

V. Prepositions usually precede the cases governed by them.

## CLASS II.

### RULES RESULTING FROM THE AGREEMENT OF WORDS

VI. *First Concord.* The finite verb is usually placed after its nominative case, sometimes at the distance of many words.

VII. *Second Concord.* The adjective or participle is commonly placed after the substantive with which it agrees.

VIII. *Third Concord.* The relative is commonly placed after the antecedent with which it agrees.

IX. *Third Concord.* The relative is placed as near to the antecedent as possible.

## CLASS III.

### MISCELLANEOUS RULES.

X. *Adverbs.* Adverbs are placed before rather than after the words to which they belong.

XI. *Adverbs.* Adverbs are in general placed immediately before the words to which they belong; no extraneous words coming between.

XII. *Igitur, autem, enim, etiam,* are very seldom placed first in a clause or sentence. The enclitics, *que, ne, ve,* are never placed first.

XIII. *Tamen* is very often and elegantly placed after the first, second, or third word of the clause in which it stands.

XIV. Connected words should go together; that is, they may not be separated from one another by words that are extraneous, and have no relation to them.

XV. *Cadence*. The cadence, or concluding part of a clause or sentence, should very seldom consist of monosyllables.

XVI. So far as other rules and perspicuity will allow, in the arrangement and choice of words, when the foregoing ends with a vowel, let the next begin with a consonant; and *vice versa*.

XVII. In general a redundancy of short words must be avoided.

XVIII. In general a redundancy of long words must be avoided.

XIX. In general there must be no redundancy of long measures.

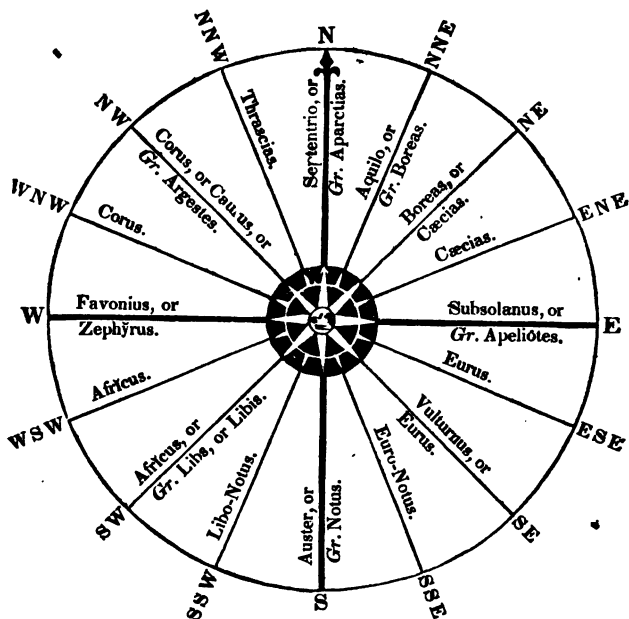
XX. In general there must be no redundancy of short measures.

XXI. The last syllables of the foregoing word must not be the same as the first syllables of the word following.

XXII. Many words, which bear the same quantity, which begin alike or end alike, or which have the same characteristic letter in declension or conjugation, (many such words,) may not come together.

THE END.

# NAMES OF THE VARIOUS WINDS.



HILLIARD, GRAY AND CO.

HAVE RECENTLY PUBLISHED,

**VIRGIL**, for the Use of Schools, with English Notes, a Key for Scanning the most difficult Verses, and Questions on the Subjects of the Text: and the Notes, with a copious Index; by B. A. GOULD, Principal of the Public Latin School of Boston.

EXTRACTS FROM THE NORTH AMERICAN REVIEW, FOR JULY, 1826.

"We have the utmost confidence in the correctness of the text of the edition of *Virgil* now before us."—"We have discovered no typographical error, and no inconsistency in the orthography."

"The notes are various in their kind; and not among the least frequent or useful are those of a philological character. The editor will not be accused of superfluity or prolixity in this part of his work; and his reasons for brevity are such as every person of similar experience will accept without hesitation."—"We rejoice to find this edition of *Virgil* excluding the order of construction or the interpretation, which has so long disfigured our school *Virgil* and other Latin Poets."

It is found by experience, that boys, taught to study without the artificial aid of interpretations, or of orders of construction, never feel the want of them, and read Horace and Juvenal with as much facility as they do Cicero and Tacitus.

This work is published on a fine paper, and a beautiful type, and is altogether far superior to any other edition of *Virgil* in use in our schools.

Also, by the same Editor, **SELECTIONS FROM OVID**, with English Notes and Questions.

Likewise **HORACE**, with English Notes, for the Use of Schools and Colleges, on the same plan with the *Virgil* and *Ovid*, and by the same Editor



some straight  
have gone line for the

is like

LB 25







**This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building**

JUN - 7 1920

AUG 15 1947

CT 13 1917

 $\sqrt{1/6}$ 

2.11. -

214 -

1948. 8. 8

11-7